This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Digitized by Google

Educ T 918.86.301

Walter J. Drake
255 Mill St.
Springfield
Mass.

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

THE

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON

Longum iter est per praecepta, breve et efficax per exempla

SENECA

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

Digitized by Google

Educ T 918.86.301

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

COPYRIGHT, 1886, BY
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

365

The Athenæum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE

THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and, to a less degree, for speaking Latin. It is designed primarily for boys and girls who are to begin the study of Latin at an early age; but as all who would get from Latin the best mental discipline, or lay a broad and firm foundation for Latin scholarship, must traverse pretty much the same road, and as Latin is begun in this country by most learners before any other foreign language is studied, a beginner's Latin book for those who take up the study at the age of ten or twelve need not be essentially different from one designed for learners of fourteen or fifteen. The most important difference would lie in the knowledge of the terminology and principles of English grammar that might be deemed an indispensable prerequisite. As a matter of fact, children come to the study of Latin with all degrees of ignorance of English grammar, and the minimum of necessary knowledge for the beginner is unquestionably very small. What minimum is considered essential for those who use this book, is indicated on page 6. It is hoped, therefore, that the contents of the book will justify its title; that it does not assume too much, and is not too difficult, for the least mature who are likely to use it, and that it will not be found too much simplified for those who begin Latin in high schools and academies. Simplicity, clearness, and directness have been studied throughout. The system of inflected forms, which is seldom mastered, but the mastery of which is an indispensable condition of further pleasant, successful, and profitable study, is slowly but

Digitized by Google

very fully developed, with the addition of abundant and varied exercises. For convenience, as well as on educational grounds, the paradigm of the verb is given in one block, instead of in fragments detached and dispersed, and everywhere the active and passive forms are placed side by side, to be compared, and learned as they are treated, simultaneously.

The idea underlying and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin must be more of art than science, — more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

The book contains, —

1. A brief introduction explaining the Roman and English methods of pronunciation, the necessary paradigms, an outline of the most important principles of syntax, and a large number of exercises for translation into English and into Latin, accompanied by short explanatory notes.

2. About twenty-five simple Latin dialogues, added to as many chapters. Some of these are on subjects of the lessons, and include a good many grammatical terms; some are on various topics of school and holiday life; and others on subjects historical and mythological.

3. Easy selections for translation, consisting, besides a number of fables, of extracts from Viri Romae, Nepos, Ovid, Catullus, Cæsar, and Cicero, some interspersed with the lessons, others added at the end of the book.

Those who seek in a first Latin book a complete presentation of the facts and principles of the Latin language, will not be satisfied with this volume. But, in the opinion of the authors, there is no error in elementary instruction in Latin more common and more deplorable than that of failing to discriminate between the relatively important

Digitized by Google

and unimportant; between what is suited to the beginning and what to the more advanced stages of the study. It is not too much to say that a very great part of the barrenness and futility of the teaching and study of Latin in schools is due to this lack of discrimination, and to a false conception of thoroughness. It is not intended to imply that a hard and fast line can be drawn, still less is this book offered as in this respect a realization of the ideal. The ideal is never realized. But it has been the constant aim to make just this distinction: to determine everywhere, in the light of much observation and reflection and of long experience, what should be made the subject of immediate study, and what should be postponed; what is entitled to prominence, and what ought to be subordinated. Some excellent teachers think that the subjunctive mood should have no place in a preparatory Latin book; and undoubtedly the syntax of the subjunctive does involve too many and too great difficulties for such a work, if anything more than an outline of some commoner uses is attempted. On the other hand, the learner can hardly read any Latin without encountering forms of the subjunctive. The best way then seems to be to construct a large number of very short sentences for practice on the forms, which shall exhibit, in the briefest compass, some important and most frequently recurring uses of the mood, more especially because the ways of translating the subjunctive cannot be illustrated from the isolated forms in the paradigms, as in the other moods. This idea has been worked out in part in Chapter LIV, the forms having been previously left untranslated.

The *colloquia* have been added, not as an integral and necessary part of the lessons, but to serve as an incentive to the moderate use of Latin orally in recitation, and to afford convenient exercises for training the ear and for enlarging the vocabulary of the learner. The grammatical

Digitized by Google

terms have been drawn chiefly from the *Institutiones* of Rudimann. The *colloquium* on page 5 has been borrowed from Dr. H. Meurer's *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, and suggestions and parts of the materials for a very few others have been derived from the same source; also two or three of the passages for translation, and here and there some sentences in the exercises. Whoever examines these *colloquia* with a critical eye, will find some words which are confined to the vocabularies of grammarians and commentators, and a very few others employed in senses for which it would be embarrassing to be required to cite classical authority. For example, the word *pensum* is used often in the sense of *a schoolboy's task, something to be done or learned, a lesson.* This word doubtless meant strictly *a spinner's task.* But in classical Latin it had already approached the meaning *task* in general, and it is but a very slight extension of its application to employ it as it is in the *colloquia.* Such a moderate decanting of new wine into old bottles, it is hoped may be excused. Still, if any teacher thinks that the Latinity of his pupils will be injured by the use of the *colloquia*, it is optional with him to omit them altogether, without losing the continuity of the lessons.

The complaint is very common, and its justice must be acknowledged, that first Latin books are often excessively and needlessly arid and wooden. Accordingly an effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin by means of the *colloquia*, the choice of extracts for translation (introduced as early as possible), and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words, and to the construction of many of the exercises.

Usage is not fixed in respect to the so-called principal parts of verbs, a few of the later school manuals giving

Digitized by Google

the nominative masculine of the perfect participle instead of the supine, except in the case of neuter or intransitive verbs. It has been thought better in this book to follow the prevailing practice, only to treat the form that has been called the supine in this connection, not as the supine, — which in most cases it is not and cannot be, since, as is well known, only about two hundred and thirty verbs can be proved to have a supine, — but as the neuter of the perfect participle.[1] Thus the learner is guarded against errors and is spared the perplexity of having to memorize now one, now another form.

It is hoped that this book can be finished and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and that the transition then to Viri Romae, Nepos, or Cæsar will not prove too difficult. More than two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of Cæsar, and only a trifle less than two-thirds to that of Nepos. In the case of young pupils it may be advisable to omit the translation of the English exercises into Latin, beginning with Chapter LV, till after the selections for translation at the end of the book have been read.

It remains to acknowledge the generous assistance of several scholars. Professor George M. Lane, of Harvard University, Professor George L. Kittredge, of Exeter Academy, N.H., George F. Forbes, A.M., and D. O. S. Lowell, A.M., both of the Roxbury Latin School, and Marshall W. Davis, A.B., of Thayer Academy, Braintree, read and criticised the work in manuscript. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Lowell also read the proof-sheets and made important suggestions and corrections. The authors feel especially indebted to John Tetlow, A.M., Head-Master of the Boston Girls' High and Latin Schools, and author of *Inductive Lessons in Latin*, for critically reading the proof-sheets,

[1] This plan has been followed by Dr. R. F. Leighton in his *First Steps in Latin*.

Digitized by Google

and for materially contributing to the improvement of the book by the correction of errors, and by the suggestions of his conscientious and exact scholarship.

WM. C. COLLAR.
M. GRANT DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 1, 1886.

The authors desire to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Caroline O. Stone, of the Roxbury Latin School, and to Professor E. M. Wallank of Fort Worth, Texas, for the correction of errors that had been overlooked in the first editions.

1889.

The making of a new set of plates has enabled the authors to make occasional improvements in phraseology, typography, and punctuation. Such changes, however, are very few. Certain vowel quantities, particularly in Gallic proper names, have been changed, as also a considerable number of "hidden quantities" in cases where authorities are now in better accord than they were sixteen years ago. In the General Vocabulary a good many "more or less remotely" derived words have been added. The book is, notwithstanding, substantially the same book that it has always been.

December, 1902.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGES
I.	Introductory: Alphabet; Syllables; Quantity; Accent; Cases; Gender	1–6
II.	First Declension. — Direct Object. — Possessive Dative. — Indirect Object	7–12
III.	Second Declension: Words in *us* and *um*. — Predicate Noun	13–17
IV.	First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — *Colloquium*, 58	17–19
V.	Second Declension: Words in *er*. — Ablative of Agent	20–21
VI.	Second Declension: Words in *er*. — Paradigms of Adjectives of First and Second Declensions	22–24
VII.	The Verb **Sum**: Paradigm	25–26
VIII.	The Verb **Sum**: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — *Colloquium*, 80	27–29
IX.	The Verb **Sum**: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — *Colloquium*, 85	30–31
X.	First Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb **Amō**	32–34
XI.	First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Ablative of Means. — *Colloquium*, 95.	35–38
XII.	First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive	39–41
XIII.	Third Declension: Mute Stems. — *Colloquium*, 111	41–43
XIV.	Second Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb **Moneō**	44–46
XV.	Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive	46–49
XVI.	Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — *Colloquium*, 126	49–52

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER PAGES

XVII. Review of First and Second Conjugations. — Ablative of Separation. — *Colloquium*, 133 53–55

XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — Ablative of Time. — *Colloquium*, 139 56–58

XIX. Third Declension: Sibilant Stems. — Ablative of Manner. — *Colloquium*, 148 59–62

XX. Third Declension: Stems in *i*. — Apposition. — *Colloquium*, 162 62–67

XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems; Rules of Gender. — *Colloquium*, 173 68–72

XXII. Third Declension: Review of Third Declension . 72–73

XXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb **Regō** . 74–76

XXIV. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — *Colloquium*, 187. — Passage for Translation, 188. 76–80

XXV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — *Colloquium*, 195 80–84

XXVI. Review. — Passage for Translation, 199 84–86

XXVII. Irregular Adjectives. — *Colloquium*, 204 86–89

XXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of the Comparative. — Ablative with Comparatives. — Passage for Translation, 215 89–92

XXIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — *Colloquium*, 222 93–96

XXX. Fourth Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb **Audiō** 96–98

XXXI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive 99–100

XXXII. Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — *Colloquium*, 234 101–103

XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb **Capiō** 104–105

XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō*, — Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive 106–107

XXXV. Review of the Four Conjugations. — *Colloquium*, 242 108–110

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER		PAGES
XXXVI.	Fourth Declension	110–112
XXXVII.	Fifth Declension. — Ablative of Specification. — *Colloquium*, 261	112–115
XXXVIII.	Special Paradigms. — Passage for Translation, 263	115–116
XXXIX.	Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive Pronouns. — *Colloquium*, 269	117–119
XL.	Determinative Pronouns. — *Colloquium*, 274	120–122
XLI.	Demonstrative Pronouns	123–125
XLII.	Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative	126–130
XLIII.	Review of Pronouns. — *Colloquium*, 290. — Passage for Translation, 291	130–134
XLIV.	Compounds of **Sum**. — Cases with Compounds of **Sum**	134–137
XLV.	Deponent Verbs: First and Second Conjugations. — *Colloquium*, 302	137–140
XLVI.	Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations. — Ablative with **Ūtor**, etc. — Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting	140–142
XLVII.	Numerals. — Accusative of Extent	143–146
XLVIII.	Irregular Verbs: **Volō**, **Nōlō**, **Mālō**. — Passage for Translation, 320	146–149
XLIX.	Irregular Verbs: **Ferō** and its Compounds	149–152
L.	Irregular Verbs: **Eō**, **Fīō**. — *Colloquium*, 332	152–156
LI.	Prepositions. — Expressions of Place. — Passage for Translation, 339	156–160
LII.	Partitive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative and Genitive. — Dative with Intransitives. — Dative of Service	160–161
LIII.	Derivation. — Comparison of Words	162–164
LIV.	The Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses; Forms; Purpose Clauses with **Ut** and **Nē**	164–171
LV.	The Subjunctive: Relative of Purpose	171–172
LVI.	The Subjunctive: Result Clauses with **Ut** and **Nē**; Clause after Verbs of Fearing	173–174

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER PAGES

LVII. The Subjunctive: **Cum** Temporal; **Cum** Causal and Concessive. — Passage for Translation, 378 175–178

LVIII. The Subjunctive: Indirect Questions 178–180

LIX. The Subjunctive: Wishes and Conditions. — *Colloquium*, 388 180–184

LX. The Hortatory Subjunctive and Imperative. — Passage for Translation, 394 184–187

LXI. The Infinitive 187–188

LXII. Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Discourse; Tenses of Infinitive. — Passage for Translation, 407 189–194

LXIII. Participles 194–196

LXIV. Participles: Ablative Absolute 197–199

LXV. Impersonal Verbs: **Miseret**, etc. — Intransitive Verbs in Passive. — Passage for Translation, 421 200–203

LXVI. Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of Agent . . 204–207

LXVII. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine 208–210

READING LESSONS: Letters; Fables; Cæsar's Gallic War . 211–222

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 225–260

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 261–274

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM 275–277

INDEX 279–285

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

It is suggested to teachers who are much pressed for time, that the following sections may be omitted without too serious loss: —

93, II; 118, II; 124; 127; 143, II; 160; 171; 173; 178; 185, II; 193, II; 196; 197; 220, III; 263; 274; 277, II; 285; 288; 330; 345; 394; 421; 428.

Attention is also called to the note introductory to Chapter LV. Should it be necessary to curtail still more, it is recommended that it be done by occasionally omitting alternate sentences in the exercises to be translated into Latin.

W. C. C.
M. G. D.

BOSTON, June, 1891.

Digitized by Google

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

It is suggested to teachers who are not experienced in teaching Latin that this chapter may, perhaps, be most profitably used for reference. Pupils will catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher; and as they make mistakes, they will be interested in being referred to the rules of pronunciation. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together. In the same way the teacher might then construe literally.

1. ALPHABET. — The Latin alphabet has no *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. VOWELS. — Vowels may be long (marked thus, ¯), short (marked thus, ˘), or common[1] (marked thus, ˘¯). The long vowel occupies double the time of the short in pronouncing.

3. CONSONANTS. — Of the consonants

The mutes are:	P-mutes . . .	**p, b, f**
	T-mutes . . .	**t, d**
	K-mutes . . .	**k, c, g, q (u)**
The liquids are	. . . . .	**l, m, n, r**
The sibilant is	. . . . .	**s**
The double consonants are	. . .	**x = cs,[2] z = ds.**

[1] That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

[2] Also represents the combinations **hs, qus, gs, vs.**

Digitized by Google

4. Sounds of the Letters, Roman Method.

Vowels

ā	is sounded	like	the last *a* in *papä'*.
ă	"	"	the first *a* in *papä'*.
ē	"	"	*e* in *they*.
ĕ	"	"	*e* in *met*.
ī	"	"	*i* in *machine*.
ĭ	"	"	*i* in *pin*.
ō	"	"	*o* in *holy*.
ŏ	"	"	*o* in *wholly*.[1]
ū[2]	"	"	*oo* in *boot*.
ŭ	"	"	*oo* in *foot*.

Diphthongs

ae	is sounded	like	*ai* in *aisle*.
au	"	"	*ou* in *our*.
ei	"	"	*ei* in *eight*.
oe	"	"	*oi* in *boil*.
eu	"	"	*eu* in *feud*.
ui	"	"	*we*.

Consonants

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following: —

c	is sounded	like	*c* in *come*.
g	"	"	*g* in *get*.
j	"	"	*y* in *yes*.
s	"	"	*s* in *sun*.[3]
t	"	"	*t* in *time*.[4]
v	"	"	*w* in *wine*.
ch	"	"	*k* in *kite*.

[1] That is, as the word is commonly pronounced; the sound heard in *holy*, shortened.

[2] In *qu* and also commonly in *gu* and *su* before a vowel **u** is a semivowel or consonant, and is pronounced like *w*.

[3] Never like *z*. [4] Never like *sh*.

Digitized by Google

5. Syllables

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **ae-gri-tū′-dō**, *sickness.*

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā′-bi-lis**, *amiable.*

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im′-pro-bus**, *bad;* **ho′-spes**, *guest.*

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: **ab′-est** (**ab**, *away;* **est**, *he is*), *he is away.*

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the one next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

6. Quantity

1. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*, also probably before *nt* and *nd*: **pŏ-ē′-ma**, *poem;* **grā′-tĭ-ae**, *thanks;* **nĭ′-hil**, *nothing;* **a′-mănt**, *they love;* **mo-nĕn′-dus**, *to be advised.*

2. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, vowels resulting from contraction, and vowels followed by *nf*, *ns*, *j*, and commonly *gn*, are long: **in-ī′-quus** (**inaequus**), *unequal;* **cō′-gō** (**cŏăgō**), *collect;* **cōn′-fe-rō**, *bring together;* **mēn′-sa**, *table;* **hū′-jus**, *of him;* **mā′-gnus**, *great.* In this book only long vowels are marked, unless for some special reason.

Digitized by Google

3. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vō′-cēs,** *voices;* **ae′-dēs,** *temple.*

4. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: **sunt,**[1] *they are;* **tem′-plum,** *temple;* **dux,**[1] *leader.*

5. A syllable is common if it has a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: **te′-nĕ-brae,** *darkness.* The vowel is pronounced short.

The above statements are useful in determining the place of the accent.

7. ACCENT

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: **tu′-ba,** *trumpet.*

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **prae-dī′-cō,** *foretell;* **prae′-di-cō,** *declare;* **ille′-cĕ-brae,** *snares;* **pa-ter′-nus,**[2] *paternal.*

(1) Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are **ne,** the sign of a question, and **que,** *and,* are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the **ne** or **que**: **amat′-ne,** *does he love?* **dōna′-que,** *and gifts.*

8. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.—By this method the above rules relating to syllables (5) and accent (7) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final **es** is sounded as in English *ease,* and final **ōs** (acc. plur.) as in *dose.*

[1] **u** pronounced like *oo* in *foot.*

[2] Here, though the *vowel* of the penult is short, the *syllable* is long by 6, 4.

Digitized by Google

The following *colloquium* may be used, if the teacher wishes, for practice, and to illustrate the foregoing statements. See introductory note, page 1.

9. COLLOQUIUM

Augustus. Quid tibi vīs?	*What do you wish (for yourself)?*
Iūlus. Tēcum ambulāre velim.	*I should like to take a walk with you.*
A. Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.	*I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.*
I. Cūr māvīs?	*Why do you prefer (that)?*
A. Ego et Frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.	*My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.*
I. Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?	*Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?*
A. Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ārdōre.	*Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.*
I. At jam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī.	*But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.*
A. Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplus sit et lacum silvamque contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Sī vīs, nōbīscum venī.	*What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.*

10. CASES

1. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative*, *vocative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *ablative*.

Digitized by Google

2. The vocative is the case of address, but it does not differ in form from the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in *us* of the second declension, and hence is not elsewhere given separately in the paradigms.

3. Another case, the *locative*, which denotes the place of an action, is mostly confined to proper names, and has the form of the ablative (sometimes dative) singular or plural, or of the genitive singular.

Gender

11. The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males are *masculine:* **agricola,** *farmer;* **Cicerō,** *Cicero.*

2. Nouns denoting females are *feminine:* **rēgina,** *queen;* **Tullia,** *Tullia.*

3. Names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine:* **Padus,** *Po;* **aquilō,** *north wind;* **Jānuārius,** *January.*

4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are *feminine:* **Āfrica,** *Africa;* **Rōma,** *Rome;* **Sicilia,** *Sicily;* **pirus,** *pear tree.*

5. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter:* **fās,** *right.*

Other rules of gender will be given under the several declensions.

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate, case, mood, tense, voice, declension, conjugation,* etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II

FIRST DECLENSION

12. The stem[1] ends in *a*.

13. GENDER. — The gender is feminine; but see general rules, **11.**

14. PARADIGM

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.V.	tub**a**, *a trumpet.*	N.V.	tub**ae**, *trumpets.*
G.	tub**ae**, *of a trumpet.*	G.	tub**ārum**, *of trumpets.*
D.	tub**ae**, *to* or *for a trumpet.*	D.	tub**īs**, *to* or *for trumpets.*
Ac.	tub**am**, *a trumpet.*	Ac.	tub**ās**, *trumpets.*
Ab.	tub**ā**,[2] *with a trumpet.*	Ab.	tub**īs**, *with trumpets.*

1. For the reason why the vocative case is not given separately in the paradigm see **10.** 2.

2. Examples of the locative case (**10.** 3) in this declension are: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **Athēnīs**, *at Athens.*

15. TERMINATIONS. — These consist of case-endings, joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case-ending.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
N.V.	**a**	**ae**
G.	**ae**	**ārum**
D.	**ae**	**īs**
Ac.	**am**	**ās**
Ab.	**ā**	**īs**

[1] The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

[2] The ablative is variously rendered, according to its connection. It is therefore recommended that, in declining words, no translation of the ablative be given till its use has been illustrated. See p. 20, n. 1.

Digitized by Google

16. Observe that the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike; also the dative and ablative plural.

17. The pupil should commit to memory the table of terminations.

18. In Latin there is no article: **tuba** may be translated *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, or *trumpet*.

19. VOCABULARY

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES [3]
aquila, F., *eagle.*	**alba**, *white.*
cauda, F., *tail.*	**bona**, *good.*
columba, F., *dove.*	**dūra**, *hard.*
fīlia,[1] F., *daughter.*	**lāta**, *wide, broad.*
puella, F., *girl.*	**longa**, *long.*
rēgīna, F., *queen.*	**māgna**, *large.*
rosa,[2] F., *rose.*	**mala**, *bad.*
via, F., *road, street, way.*	**parva**, *small, little.*

VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is.*	**habet**, (*he, she, it*) *has.*
sunt, (*they*) *are.*	**habent**, (*they*) *have.*

20. Observe that in the above verb-forms the singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*.

Nominative and Accusative

21. EXERCISES

I.[4] 1. Viae lātae. 2. Via lāta. 3. Viās lātās. 4. Viam lātam. 5. Cauda longa. 6. Caudās longās. 7. Caudam longam. 8. Caudae longae. 9. Columbās parvās. 10. Columbae parvae. 11. Columba parva. 12. Columbam

[1] **Fīlia** and **dea**, *goddess*, have a dative and ablative plural in *ābus*, but this is mostly confined to legal and religious language.

[2] CAUTION: Do not pronounce *s* like *z*, if you use the Roman method. See page 2, note 3.

[3] The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connection with nouns of the second declension.

[4] Observe that the adjective takes the case and number of the noun to which it belongs.

Digitized by Google

parvam. 13. Rosam albam. 14. Rosae albae. 15. Rosa alba. 16. Rosās albās. 17. Rēgīna mala. 18. Rēgīnās malās.

II. In like manner give the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *little girl*, *great eagle*, *good queen*, *wide street*. Decline together **rosa alba, via longa, bona puella.**

22. EXERCISES

I. 1. Via est longa. 2. Dūra est via. 3. Puellae rosās habent. 4. Rēgīna columbam habet. 5. Rosae sunt albae. 6. Cauda est alba. 7. Caudae sunt longae. 8. Aquila caudam habet. 9. Puellae tubās habent. 10. Aquilae sunt māgnae.

II. 1. Via dūra est longa. 2. Puella bona rosam habet. 3. Columba caudam parvam habet. 4. Rēgīnae albās rosās habent. 5. Rosa parva est alba. 6. Aquila magna est alba. 7. Tubae māgnae sunt longae. 8. Puella tubam longam habet. 9. Fīliae bonae columbās habent. 10. Aquila māgna lātam caudam habet.

23. Notice the order of the words in the above sentences (II. 1–10), and see wherein it differs from the order in English. You will find that —

1. The adjective is commonly placed after its noun. When placed before the noun it is for emphasis.
2. The verb commonly comes at the end of the sentence, but **est** and **sunt** are less frequently so placed.
3. The object commonly comes before the verb.

24. Observe that the subject is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number, as in English.

25. Observe that the verb **habet** (**habent**) is transitive, and has its object in the accusative.

26. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.**

Digitized by Google

27. EXERCISES

I. 1. The roads are broad. 2. The streets are long. 3. Queens have doves. 4. The girl has a rose. 5. Eagles have tails. 6. The dove is white. 7. The girl has a trumpet. 8. The eagle is large. 9. The rose is white. 10. The girls are small.

II. 1. The long way is hard. 2. Good girls have roses. 3. Doves have small tails. 4. Great eagles have broad tails. 5. The good queen has a dove. 6. The little girls have large trumpets. 7. The little dove is white. 8. The queen is good. 9. The good queen has a little daughter. 10. A little girl has a white rose.

28. *Answer the following in Latin:*[1]—

1. Estne[2] via lāta? 2. Habetne puella rosam? 3. Habentne aquilae caudās longās? 4. Quid (*what*) habet rēgīna bona? 5. Quid habent puellae bonae? 6. Habentne columbae caudās?

29. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

āla, F., *wing*.
Britannia, F., *Britain*.
Cornēlia, F., *Cornelia*.
Galba, M., *Galba*.
hōra, F., *hour*.
lūna, F., *moon*.

ADJECTIVES

multa, *much* (pl. *many*).
plēna, *full*.
prīma, *first*.
secunda, *second*.

VERBS

amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves*.
amant, (*they*) *love*.
dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives*.
dant, (*they*) *give*.

CONJUNCTION

et, *and*.

ADVERB

nōn, *not*.

[1] Every answer should form a complete sentence. To the question **est-ne via longa?** the answer should be **via est longa**.

[2] The particle **ne** is appended to some word in a sentence, often the verb, as a sign of a question, and is not to be translated by any separate word.

Digitized by Google

Genitive and Dative

30. EXERCISES

I. 1. Lūnae plēnae. 2. Lūnārum plēnārum. 3. Lūnīs plēnīs. 4. Hōrārum prīmārum. 5. Hōrīs prīmīs. 6. Fīlia Galbae.[1] 7. Fīliīs Cornēliae. 8. Rosīs albīs. 9. Columbae parvae. 10. Aquilārum ālārum.

II. 1. The queen's daughter. 2. The queens' daughters. 3. For the girl's rose. 4. Of the wings of the dove. 5. For Cornelia's daughter. 6. Of Britain. 7. For eagles. 8. Of the long streets. 9. For the little girls. 10. To the small trumpet.

31. EXERCISES

I. 1. Puellae (*dative*) est rosa. 2. Puella rosam habet. 3. Rēgīnīs sunt columbae. 4. Rēgīnae columbās habent. 5. Rosa puellae est alba. 6. Rosae puellārum sunt albae. 7. Galba fīliae[2] columbam dat. 8. Cornēlia puellīs rosās dat. 9. Galba Cornēliae aquilam dat. 10. Galba et Cornēlia fīliās habent.

II. 1. Fīliae Cornēliae rosās albās habent. 2. Cornēlia puellae parvae rosam māgnam dat. 3. Est[3] hōra prīma lūnae plēnae. 4. Hōra est[3] secunda et lūna est plēna. 5. Māgna est rosa puellae parvae. 6. Galba puellae tubam parvam dat. 7. Columbae albae sunt fīliae bonae. 8. Multae et longae sunt Britanniae viae. 9. Britannia rēgīnam bonam habet. 10. Galba fīliīs bonae rēgīnae rosās multās dat.

32. The first sentence in I is literally translated *to the girl is a rose.* Evidently the meaning is *the girl has a rose*, the same as that of the second. The dative thus used with **est** or **sunt** is called the Dative of the Possessor, or the Possessive Dative.

[1] *Galba's daughter.* The genitive is often to be translated by the English possessive.

[2] Translate *his daughter.*

[3] *It is.*

Digitized by Google

33. Examine the seventh sentence in I. The transitive verb **dat** has a direct object, **columbam**; but it also has a dative limiting it, **filiae**. This dative is called an INDIRECT OBJECT. Find other illustrations of the following:

34. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The indirect object is put in the dative.**

35. EXERCISES

1. Before turning the following sentences into Latin, translate mentally 2, 6, and 10, in **31.** II, taking the words as they stand. Observe that the indirect object precedes the direct.

2. In the following exercises try to cast each sentence into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words. Thus, the sixth sentence will take the form, *the girl to the queen a rose gives;* and the eighth, *to a girl little is a rose little*, or *a girl little a rose little has.*

I. 1. It[1] is the first hour. 2. There[2] is a full moon. 3. The moon is full. 4. The dove is small. 5. The tail of the eagle is broad. 6. The girl gives the queen[3] a rose. 7. The queen's roses are white. 8.[4] A little girl has a little rose. 9. The first hour is a long one.[2] 10. Galba gives the girls some[2] roses.

II. 1. The queen's daughter has a white rose. 2. The queen of Britain gives the girl a great rose. 3. It is the second hour of the full moon. 4. The daughters of Cornelia are small girls.[5] 5. The daughters of Cornelia are good little[6] girls.[5] 6. The little dove's tail is a long one. 7. The wings of eagles are long and broad. 8. Eagles have long, broad[7] wings. 9. The little dove has a white tail. 10.[4] Many doves have white tails.

[1] Omit. Compare **31.** II. 3 and 4.

[2] Omit.

[3] That is, *to the queen.* Compare **31.** I. 7, 8, and 9; and **31.** II. 2, 6, and 10.

[4] Translate in two ways, like **31.** I. 1 and 2, 3 and 4.

[5] Nominative.

[6] In Latin, *good and little.*

[7] *Long and broad.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER III

SECOND DECLENSION

36. The stem ends in *o*.

37. GENDER. — Nouns ending in *um* are neuter; most others are masculine; but see general rules for gender, **11.** 4.

38. PARADIGMS[1]

	Hortus, *garden*			**Bellum**, *war*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.V.	hort **us, ŏ**	hort **ī**	N.V.	bell **um**	bell **a**
G.	hort **ī**	hort **ōrum**	G.	bell **ī**	bell **ōrum**
D.	hort **ō**	hort **īs**	D.	bell **ō**	bell **īs**
Ac.	hort **um**	hort **ōs**	Ac.	bell **um**	bell **a**
Ab.	hort **ō**	hort **īs**	Ab.	bell **ō**	bell **īs**

39. The vocative singular of nouns in *us* of this declension ends in *ĕ*.

1. As these are the only Latin nouns having a form for the vocative different from the nominative, this peculiarity is best regarded and treated as an exception.

40. Examples of the locative case (**10.** 3) in this declension are: **Corinthī**, *at Corinth;* **Thūriīs**, *at Thurii.*

41. TERMINATIONS

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*
N.V.	**us, ŏ**	**um**	**ī**	**a**
G.	**ī**	**ī**	**ōrum**	**ōrum**
D.	**ō**	**ō**	**īs**	**īs**
Ac.	**um**	**um**	**ōs**	**a**
Ab.	**ō**	**ō**	**īs**	**īs**

42. Although the stem ends in *o*, the *o* does not appear except in the dat. and abl. singular and in the gen. and acc. plural.

[1] For peculiarities of nouns in *ius* and *ium* see **79.**

Digitized by Google

43. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Masculine	*Neuter*
amīcus, *friend.*	**bracchium,** *arm* **(79).**
cibus, *food.*	**dōnum,** *gift.*
discipulus, *pupil.*	**ōvum,** *egg.*
dominus, *lord, master.*	**pīlum,** *javelin.*
equus, *horse.*	**pōculum,** *cup.*
servus, *slave* or *servant.*	**vīnum,** *wine.*

ADJECTIVES	VERBS
dēfessus, -a, -um, *tired.*	**laudat,** (*he, she, it*) *praises.*[1]
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*	**laudant,** (*they*) *praise.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*	**portat,** (*he, she, it*) *carries.*
novus, -a, -um, *new.*	**portant,** (*they*) *carry.*

44. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: **bonus,** masculine; **bona,** feminine; **bonum,** neuter. The feminine of the adjective is declined like **tuba,** the masculine like **hortus,** and the neuter like **bellum.** The full declension of **bonus** is given on page 24.[2]

1. Form the masculine and neuter of all the adjectives in **19** and **29.**

Nominative and Accusative

45. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amīcī bonī. 2. Amīcus bonus. 3. Amīcōs bonōs. 4. Amīcum bonum. 5. Pōculum novum. 6. Pōcula nova. 7. Equus dēfessus. 8. Equum dēfessum. 9. Equōs dēfessōs. 10. Equī dēfessī. 11. Pōcula māgna. 12. Servōs malōs.

[1] **Laudat** may be translated *praises, is praising,* or *does praise.* So of the other verb-forms.

[2] In declining adjectives, it will be found advantageous to decline each gender separately.

Digitized by Google

II. In like manner form the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *long*[1] *javelin*, *hard master*, *small horse*, *good wine*. Decline together **bonus cibus, servus malus, vīnum novum.**

46. Examine the following sentences: —

Galba est amīcus, *Galba is a friend.*
Galba et Cornēlia sunt amīcī, *Galba and Cornelia are friends.*

1. Observe in these examples that the subject and predicate nouns are in the same case, just as in English.

47. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **A noun in the predicate referring to the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.**

48. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dōnum est grātum. 2. Servus bonus est dēfessus. 3. Amīcus pīlum portat. 4. Discipulus ōvum dūrum habet. 5. Equus dēfessus cibum portat. 6. Dōna sunt pōcula parva. 7. Discipulus bracchia longa habet. 8. Dominī servōs laudant. 9. Dominus servum laudat. 10. Servī pōcula parva portant. 11. Novum equum laudat. 12. Equōs novōs laudant.

II. 1. The servant has the cup. 2. The servants have the cups. 3. The pupil has wine and eggs. 4. The master has good food. 5. The gifts are long javelins. 6. The master and the slave are good friends. 7. The little horses are tired. 8. The new pupil has a big[2] cup. 9. They praise the second horse. 10. He is praising the good master. 11. They have some[3] good friends. 12. The slave carries the cups and wine.

[1] The adjective must be of the same gender as the noun.

[2] See page 19, note 1.

[3] Omit.

Digitized by Google

Genitive and Dative

49. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amīcīs bonīs. 2. Amīcō bonō. 3. Amīcī bonī. 4. Amīcōrum bonōrum. 5. Pōculō novō. 6. Pōculōrum novōrum. 7. Pōculīs novīs. 8. Equī dēfessī. 9. Equīs dēfessīs. 10. Equōrum dēfessōrum. 11. Equō dēfessō. 12. Servīs bonīs.

II. In like manner, form the genitive and dative in both numbers of the words meaning *long javelin, hard master, small horse, good wine.* Decline together **bonus amīcus, discipulus malus, dōnum grātum.**

50. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dōnum amīcī bonī est grātum. 2. Servī bonī dominōrum malōrum sunt dēfessī. 3. Amīcīs discipulī dat[1] pīla multa. 4. Amīcō bonō discipulī sunt pīla multa. 5. Amīcī bonōrum discipulōrum pīla multa habent. 6. Equus dēfessus cibum dominī portat. 7. Longa sunt bracchia servī bonī. 8. Dōna dominī servīs sunt grāta. 9. Puellīs parvīs ōva alba dant.[1] 10. Servī rēgīnīs ōva aquilārum dant.

II. 1. The gift is pleasing to the good friend. 2.[2] The slave has the master's cup. 3.[2] The servants have the masters' cups. 4. The master gives the slave[3] a hard egg. 5. The food of the master is wine and eggs. 6. The master praises the little pupil's cup. 7. The tired horses are carrying gifts for the friend. 8. The girl has many new[4] friends. 9. The broad cup is pleasing to the new pupil. 10. The eagle's eggs are gifts of the good servant.

[1] When there is no subject expressed in the sentence, how is the verb to be rendered?

[2] Translate in two ways. See **32**.

[3] Not accusative.

[4] *Many and new.*

Digitized by Google

51. *Answer the following in Latin:*[1]—

1. Quid portat Jacōbus (James)? 2. Portatne dominō[2] vīnum et ōva? 3. Nōnne[3] portat ōva columbae albae? 4. Laudatne caudam longam equī albī? 5. Quid, Jacōbe, habet dominī fīlia in (*in*) pōculō?

Form and answer five other questions in Latin.

CHAPTER IV

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

52. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Masculine[4]

agricola, -ae, *farmer.*
nauta, ae, *sailor.*
poēta, -ae, *poet.*
carrus, -ī, *wagon.*
rēmus, -ī, *oar.*
ventus, -ī, *wind.*

Neuter

frūmentum, -ī, *grain.*
pābulum, ī, *fodder.*

ADJECTIVES

clārus, -a, -um, *famous.*
perītus, -a, -um, *skilful.*
quartus, -a, -um, *fourth.*
quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth.*
tertius, -a, -um, *third.*
validus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy.*

PREPOSITION

in (with ablative), *in, on.*
in (with accusative), *into, to.*

53. In the preceding exercises an adjective qualifying a noun has had the same termination as the noun. Now observe the following examples: **agricola bonus,** *a good farmer;* **agricolae bonī,** *of a good farmer;* **agricolae bonō,** *to* or *for a good farmer,* etc. Here the adjective has a different termination from the noun. Since **agricola** is masculine, the adjective that goes with it must have the masculine form, as well as the same number and case.

[1] See page 10, note 1.

[2] *for,* not *to, the master.*

[3] When **ne** is appended to **nōn,** the answer *yes* is expected. See page 10, note 2. So in English, a question asked with *not* expects the answer *yes.*

[4] See 11. 1.

Digitized by Google

54. Rule of Syntax. — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

55. EXERCISES

I. 1. Agricolae validī. 2. Agricolam validum. 3. Agricolās validōs. 4. Agricola validus. 5. Agricolae validō. 6. Agricolārum validōrum. 7. Agricola valide.

II. 1. A skilful sailor (*nom. and acc.*). 2. Skilful sailors (*nom. and acc.*). 3. Of a skilful sailor. 4. For a skilful sailor. 5. Skilful sailor (*voc.*). 6. For skilful sailors. 7. Of a famous poet. 8. Of famous poets. 9. Pleasing poets. 10. A pleasing poet (*nom. and acc.*).

56. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hortus agricolae māgnus est. 2. Agricola validus hortum māgnum habet. 3.[1] Agricolae (*dat.*) est hortus māgnus. 4. Nautae rēmus longus est. 5. Poēta vīnum bonum agricolae perītī laudat. 6. Hōra est quarta. 7.[2] Lūna est plēna. 8. Pābulum equī albī est frūmentum. 9. Dominus servum perītum laudat. 10.[3] Nautae (*dat.*) grāta sunt ōva et vīnum agricolae bonī.

II. 1. Ō[4] agricola valide, carrus est plēnus frūmentī. 2. Domine bone, secunda hōra est, et discipulus est dēfessus. 3. Hortōs agricolārum perītōrum laudant. 4. Pōculum māgnum est vīnī plēnum. 5. Agricola bonus equō validō dat pābulum.

[1] See **32**.

[2] We may translate, *there is a full moon*, *it is a full moon*, or *the moon is full*. There is nothing in Latin answering to our *it* and *there* used in this way at the beginning of a sentence.

[3] Translate this sentence without changing the order of the words, and you will feel the emphasis imparted to **nautae** from its position.

[4] Ō sometimes accompanies the vocative.

Digitized by Google

57. EXERCISES

I. 1. The poet likes[1] the farmer's wine. 2.[2] Farmers have large wagons and strong horses. 3. Skilful sailors like a good breeze. 4. In the garden there[3] are many roses. 5. The poet and his[3] daughter are in the wagon. 6. The horse carries the farmer's grain. 7. There is wine in the little girl's cup. 8. There are many small[4] girls in the street. 9. Galba carries fodder for the horses. 10. The food of the little dove is grain.

II. 1. My (*Ō*) good friend, the master's cup is full. 2. The servant gives the queen[5] a large cup. 3. The strong sailors are carrying javelins in their[3] arms. 4. In the strong wagon is good fodder for the farmer's horses. 5. In the poet's gardens there are many friends. 6. Farmers have horses, wagons, doves, eggs, and[3] wine.

58. COLLOQUIUM

Datne[6] Carolus (*Charles*) amīcō cymbam (*boat*)?
Carolus amīcō cymbam et rēmōs dat.
Quid in cymbā habet Carolus?
Carolus rēmum et pīlum in cymbā habet.
Quota (*what*) hōra est?[7] Hōra est quīnta.
Quid in carrō habet rūsticus (*countryman*) validus?
Quid in pōculō dēsīderat (*wants*) rūsticus dēfessus?

[1] Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but by a little thought the pupil will understand what Latin word is meant.

[2] Translate in two ways.

[3] Omit.

[4] *Many and small.*

[5] Not accusative.

[6] Remember that ne is appended as the sign of a question.

[7] *What time is it?* or, *What is the time of day?*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER V

SECOND DECLENSION

59. PARADIGM

	Puer, *boy*.		TERMINATIONS	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	puer	puer ī	—	ī
G.	puer ī	puer ōrum	ī	ōrum
D.	puer ō	puer īs	ō	īs
Ac.	puer um	puer ōs	um	ōs
Ab.	puer ō [1]	puer īs	ō	īs

60. VOCABULARY

gener, -ĕrī, M., *son-in-law*.
līberī, -ōrum, M. (pl.), *children*.
socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law*.
vir, virī, M., *man, hero*.

asper, -era, -erum, *rough*.
līber, -era, -erum,[2] *free*.
miser, -era, -erum, *poor, wretched*.

tener, -era, -erum, *tender*.
sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*.

ā (ab), prep. w. abl., *by, away from*.

amātur, (*he, she, it*) *is loved*.
amantur, (*they*) *are loved*.
laudātur, (*he, she, it*) *is praised*.
laudantur, (*they*) *are praised*.

puerī, general word for *children*.
līberī, *children* of free parents.

61. *The farmer is praised by the queen* would be expressed in Latin thus: **Agricola ā** (or **ab**) **rēgīnā laudātur**; and *The queen is praised by the farmer*, thus: **Rēgīna ab** (not **ā**) **agricolā laudātur.**

Observe that in the first sentence, **rēgīnā**, and in the second, **agricolā**, denotes the person by whom the thing is done (the agent); also, that these words are in the ablative, and are preceded by **ā** or **ab**. The ablative thus used, together with the preposition, answers the question *by whom?* and is called the ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

[1] To translate **puerō**, "*with, from, by a boy*," as is commonly done, is wholly wrong. *With a boy* would be **cum puerō**; *from*, or *by a boy*, **ā puerō**. See page 7, n. 2.

[2] Decline the masculine of adjectives in *er* in this lesson like **puer**. The full declension is given on page 24.

Digitized by Google

62. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The agent with passive verbs is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, — *ab* before vowels or *h*, *ā* or *ab* before consonants.**

63. Read again **53** and **54**, then add the proper terminations of the adjectives, and translate the following: —

I. 1. Generī bon-, gener bon- (*nom. and voc.*). 2. Vir māgn-, ā virō māgn-. 3. Ab agricolā dēfess-, agricolae miser-. 4. Ā rēgīnā tener-. 5. Puerī asper-.

II. 1. By the bad father-in-law. 2. By the rough sailor. 3. By the children of the hero. 4. The free men (*nom. and acc.*). 5. Of the wretched sons-in-law.

64. EXERCISES

I. 1. Gener virī servus est. 2. Puer bonus ab amīcō laudātur. 3. Līberī ā nautā asperō amantur. 4. Puella tenera columbās parvās amat. 5. Columbae parvae ā puellā tenerā amantur. 6. Miserī servī ā dominō bonō laudantur. 7.[1] Lātā in viā sunt puerī multī et asperī. 8. Equī validī agricolae ā līberīs laudantur. 9. Fīlia socerī est misera. 10. Virī fīliās poētae laudant.

II. 1. The sons-in-law of the men are farmers. 2. Good men are praised by their[2] friends. 3. The boy is loved by the rough sailors. 4. The sixth boy is a new one.[2] 5. The tired children are in the farmer's wagon. 6. The tender dove is loved by the little girl. 7. Poor slaves are not praised by their rough masters. 8. The strong man is in the poet's garden. 9. The heroes are praised by the pupils. 10. They love the daughter of the poor sailor.

[1] Adjective, preposition, noun, is often the order where, as here, the three are combined. What is the English order? [2] Omit.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VI

SECOND DECLENSION

65. PARADIGM

	Ager, *field.*		TERMINATIONS	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	ager	agrī	—	ī
G.	agrī	agrōrum	ī	ōrum
D.	agrō	agrīs	ō	īs
Ac.	agrum	agrōs	um	ōs
Ab.	agrō	agrīs	ō	īs

Observe that the above terminations are the same as those on page 20. Wherein does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

66. VOCABULARY

aper, aprī, M., *boar.*
culter, cultrī, M., *knife.*
faber, -brī, M., *smith.*
liber,[1] **-brī,** M., *book.*
magister, -trī, M., *master.*
minister, -trī, M., *servant.*
aeger, aegra, aegrum,[2] *sick.*
niger, nigra, nigrum, *black.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful, handsome.*
ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red.*
septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*

magister, *a superior, director;* hence, *master* of a school, etc.
dominus (43), *master* of a household, slaves, etc.
minister, *an inferior, attendant, servant.*
servus (43), *a serving man, slave.*

67. Most nouns in *er* are declined like **ager**, and most adjectives in *er* like **aeger**. The most important nouns and adjectives that keep the *e* before *r* in all the cases were given in the vocabulary, **60**, and should now be committed to memory.

68. Decline together **equus niger, bonus faber, aper asper, vir aeger.**

[1] Distinguish **līber**, *free*, from **liber**, *book.* [2] See page 24.

Digitized by Google

69. EXERCISES

I. 1. Socer est faber. 2. Magister est discipulī amīcus. 3. Generī virī sunt ministrī. 4. Culter puerō est grātus. 5. Librī magistrī discipulīs sunt grātī. 6. Vīnum rubrum ā fabrō dēfessō amātur. 7. Librī poētae ā magistrō amantur. 8. Puellae pulchrae virīs rosās rubrās dant. 9. Nauta cultrum longum habet. 10.[1] Librōs multōs in bracchiīs portat puer.

II. 1. The fathers-in-law are smiths.[2] 2. The masters are loved by their pupils. 3. The man's son-in-law is a servant. 4. The knives are pleasing to the little boy. 5. The pretty[3] cups are liked by the boys and girls. 6. A girl gives a man[4] a beautiful rose. 7. The sailors have many long knives. 8. The children of the master are carrying[5] the books in their arms. 9. The smith's son-in-law has children. 10. There is a rough boar in the farmer's field.

70. *Answer the following in Latin:—*

1. Quis (*who*) est amīcus poētae? 2. Quis est socer Carolī? 3. Ubi (*where*) sunt discipulī magistrī? 4. Amantne hodiē (*to-day*) pēnsum (*task*)? 5. Nōnne Carolus columbae frūmentum hodiē dat? 6. Quae (*who, fem.*) rosās rubrās habet? 7. Quis bracchia longa habet? 8. Quis est vir līber? 9. Ubi est equus rūsticī? 10. Quae puellās pulchrās habet? 11. Rēgīnane puellās pulchrās habet? 12. Ubi sunt Jacōbī amīcī?

[1] What is peculiar in the order of the words? Translate as the words stand, and see what word is made emphatic by its position.

[2] What case is used after est and sunt? Compare the first three sentences in I. See rule, 47.

[3] See page 19, note 1.

[4] Not accusative.

[5] Not passive. See page 14, n. 1.

Digitized by Google

Adjectives: First and Second Declensions

71. **PARADIGMS**

Bonus, *good.*

		MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Sing.	N.V.	bon **us, ĕ**	bon **a**	bon **um**
	G.	bon **ī**	bon **ae**	bon **ī**
	D.	bon **ō**	bon **ae**	bon **ō**
	Ac.	bon **um**	bon **am**	bon **um**
	Ab.	bon **ō**	bon **ā**	bon **ō**
Plur.	N.V.	bon **ī**	bon **ae**	bon **a**
	G.	bon **ōrum**	bon **ārum**	bon **ōrum**
	D.	bon **īs**	bon **īs**	bon **īs**
	Ac.	bon **ōs**	bon **ās**	bon **a**
	Ab.	bon **īs**	bon **īs**	bon **īs**

Līber, *free.*

Sing.	N.V.	līber	līber **a**	līber **um**
	G.	līber **ī**	līber **ae**	līber **ī**
	D.	līber **ō**	līber **ae**	līber **ō**
	Ac.	līber **um**	līber **am**	līber **um**
	Ab.	līber **ō**	līber **ā**	līber **ō**
Plur.	N.V.	līber **ī**	līber **ae**	līber **a**
	G.	līber **ōrum**	līber **ārum**	līber **ōrum**
	D.	līber **īs**	līber **īs**	līber **īs**
	Ac.	līber **ōs**	līber **ās**	līber **a**
	Ab.	līber **īs**	līber **īs**	līber **īs**

Aeger, *sick.*

Sing.	N.V.	aeger	aegr **a**	aegr **um**
	G.	aegr **ī**	aegr **ae**	aegr **ī**
	D.	aegr **ō**	aegr **ae**	aegr **ō**
	Ac.	aegr **um**	aegr **am**	aegr **um**
	Ab.	aegr **ō**	aegr **ā**	aegr **ō**
Plur.	N.V.	aegr **ī**	aegr **ae**	aegr **a**
	G.	aegr **ōrum**	aegr **ārum**	aegr **ōrum**
	D.	aegr **īs**	aegr **īs**	aegr **īs**
	Ac.	aegr **ōs**	aegr **ās**	aegr **a**
	Ab.	aegr **īs**	aegr **īs**	aegr **īs**

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Sum* (stems es, fu), *I am*

72. Principal parts, **sum, esse, fuī.**

73. For convenience the inflection of **sum** is given in full. Directions will be given from time to time as to what parts are to be learned.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. s **um**,[1] *I am.*	s **umus**, *we are.*
2. es, *thou art.*[2]	es **tis**, *you are.*
3. es **t**, *he (she, it) is.*	s **unt**, *they are.*

Imperfect

1. er **am**,[3] *I was.*	er **āmus**, *we were.*
2. er **ās**, *thou wast.*	er **ātis**, *you were.*
3. er **at**, *he was.*	er **ant**, *they were.*

Future

1. er **ō**,[4] *I shall be.*	er **imus**, *we shall be.*
2. er **is**, *thou wilt be.*	er **itis**, *you will be.*
3. er **it**, *he will be.*	er **unt**, *they will be.*

Perfect

1. fu **ī**, *I have been, was.*	fu **imus**, *we have been, were.*
2. fu **istī**, *thou hast been, wast.*	fu **istis**, *you have been, were.*
3. fu **it**, *he has been, was.*	fu **ērunt**, *or* fu **ēre**, *they have been, were.*

Pluperfect

1. fu **eram**, *I had been.*	fu **erāmus**, *we had been.*
2. fu **erās**, *thou hadst been.*	fu **erātis**, *you had been.*
3. fu **erat**, *he had been.*	fu **erant**, *they had been.*

[1] **Sum** for **esum.**

[2] Or, *you are*, as in the plural. But in translating into Latin be careful to use the singular form of the verb, if by *you* one person only is meant.

[3] **Eram** for **esam.**

[4] **Erō** for **esō.**

Digitized by Google

Future Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fu erō, *I shall have been.*	fu erĭmus, *we shall have been.*
2. fu erĭs, *thou wilt have been.*	fu erĭtis, *you will have been.*
3. fu erit, *he will have been.*	fu erint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE[1]

	Present		Imperfect	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	s im	s īmus	es sem	es sēmus
2.	s īs	s ītis	es sēs	es sētis
3.	s it	s int	es set	es sent

	Perfect		Pluperfect	
1.	fu erim	fu erĭmus	fu issem	fu issēmus
2.	fu erĭs	fu erĭtis	fu issēs	fu issētis
3.	fu erit	fu erint	fu isset	fu issent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
2. es, *be thou.*	es te, *be ye.*

Future

2. es tō, *thou shalt be.*	es tōte, *ye shall be.*
3. es tō, *he shall be.*	s untō, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE

Present, es se, *to be.*
Perfect, fu isse, *to have been.*
Future, fu tūrus esse, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE

fu tūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

[1] No meanings that are not misleading can be given of forms of the subjunctive. It is therefore better left untranslated until its use has been illustrated. The subjunctive is treated on pages 164–186.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VIII

THE VERB *Sum*

74. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive.

75. EXERCISES

I. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Erō, eram, sum. 5. Erās, es, eris. 6. Estis, eritis, erātis. 7. Es, este. 8. Esse.

II. 1. I am, we are, I was, we were, I shall be, we shall be. 2. He was, they were, he is, they are, he will be, they will be. 3. You (*sing.*) will be, are, were. 4. You (*plur.*) will be, are, were. 5. Be ye, be thou. 6. To be.

From this point the vocabularies follow the exercises, and it is recommended that the pupil go through the exercises mentally, referring to the vocabularies for the meanings of words. Before *writing* the translations into Latin the vocabularies should be reviewed, but the task of committing to memory will then be found an easy one.

76. EXERCISES

I. 1. Inimīcus pīlum habet. 2. Inimīcō est pīlum. 3. Somnus puerō erit grātus. 4. Līberī agricolae erunt dēfessī. 5. Minerva āram in oppidō habēbat. 6. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 7. In (*on*) terrā virī, in aquā rānae sunt. 8. Inimīcī erāmus incolārum malōrum. 9. Oculī dominī dūrī erant māgnī et nigrī. 10.[1] Dominō dūrō erant oculī māgnī et nigrī. 11.[1] Dominus dūrus oculōs māgnōs et nigrōs habēbat. 12. Cōnsilium fabrī perītī bonum erat.

[1] What word is better left untranslated, though needed in the Latin?

Digitized by Google

II. 1.[1] The farmer had a wagon. 2. I shall be the man's friend. 3. There[2] is a large town on[3] the island. 4. There was a red egg on the table. 5. Children were carrying the food of the men. 6. A boy gave a smith[4] some[2] javelins. 7. In the town are enemies of the inhabitants. 8. They were praising the words of the sturdy farmer. 9. The poet's gifts will be pleasing to Minerva. 10. Boys, be strong and skilful.

77. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eritis validō in carrō agricolae perītī. 2. Erās nōnus discipulus et fīlius poētae erat octāvus. 3. Ō miser serve, tū (*thou*) es inimīcus pulchrae Minervae. 4. Amīcus erō Minervae māgnae. 5.[5] Agricolīs arātra dūra et valida dabant virī. 6. In Britanniā sunt oppida multa et māgna. 7. Puer bone, es amīcus equī miserī.

II. 1. A girl gave a sick sailor[6] some wine and water. 2. The wine she carried in a pretty[7] cup. 3. He praised the maiden's[7] pretty cup and the ruddy wine. 4. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants of Britain. 5. Britain is a large island, and has handsome towns.

78. VOCABULARY

aqua, -ae, F., *water.*
āra, -ae, F., *altar.*
arātrum, -ī, N., *plough.*
cōnsilium, -ī, N., *advice, plan.*
incola, -ae, M. & F., *inhabitant.*
inimīcus, -ī, M., *enemy.*
īnsula, -ae, F., *island.*
mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*

[1] Translate in two ways.
[2] Omit. See page 18, note 2.
[3] See vocabulary, **52**.
[4] Indirect object, see **33** and **34**.
[5] Compare the order with that of **69**. I. 10, and see the note there. What name is given to the dative agricolīs?
[6] See **69**. II. 6 and note.
[7] See page 19, note 1.

Digitized by Google

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva, goddess of wisdom.*
nōnus, -a, -um, adj., *ninth.*
octāvus, -a, -um, adj., *eighth.*
oculus, -ī, M., *eye.*
oppidum, -ī, N., *town.*
rāna, -ae, F., *frog.*
somnus, -ī, M., *sleep.*
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land.*
verbum, -ī, N., *word.*

amābat, (*he, she, it*) *was loving, loved.*
dabat, (*he, she, it*) *was giving, gave.*
habēbat, (*he, she, it*) *was having, had.*
laudābat, (*he, she, it*) *was praising, praised.*
portābat, (*he, she, it*) *was carrying, carried.*

amābant, *they were loving, loved.*
dabant, *they were giving, gave.*
habēbant, *they were having, had.*
laudābant, *they were praising, praised.*
portābant, *they were carrying, carried.*

79. Nouns in *ius* and *ium* contract the genitive ending *iī* to *ī*: **cōnsilī.** **Fīlius** (*son*) and **genius** (*guardian deity*), and proper nouns in *ius*, drop the *e* of the vocative: **fīlī, Mercurī,** *Mercury.* But the word is accented as if the longer form were used.

80. COLLOQUIUM

Nōnne aquam in pōculō habet faber?

Minimē. Faber in pōculō habet novum vīnum.
no

Dēsīderatne Galba somnum grātum?
wishes

Certē, nam hodiē est Galba dēfessus.
certainly for to-day

Ubi est amīcus agricolae pigrī?
lazy

Est in oppidō, nam nōn amābat amīcī cōnsilium.

Ubi sunt arma agricolārum validōrum?
tools

Agricolārum equī, carrī, arātra sunt in agrō.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IX

THE VERB *Sum*

81. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive. See pages 25 and 26.

82. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint. 3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fuī. 5. Fuerās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis. 7. Fuisse.

II. 1. I have been, we have been, I had been. 2. We had been, I shall have been, we shall have been. 3. He has been, they have been, he had been. 4. They had been, he will have been, they will have been. 5. You (*sing.*) will have been, had been, have been. 6. You (*plur.*) will have been, had been, have been. 7. To have been.

83. EXERCISES

I. 1. In Graeciā erant templa multa. 2. In Graeciā erant templa deōrum et deārum. 3. Aurum erat in statuā Minervae. 4. Minervae fuit statua māgna et clāra. 5. Minerva statuam māgnam et clāram habēbat. 6. Multae et pulchrae erant Graeciae statuae. 7. Nōn alta erant pulchra Graeciae templa. 8. Fluviī Graeciae nōn lātī et altī erant. 9. Clārī fuērunt multī Graecī. 10. Graecōrum antīquōrum erit glōria sempiterna.

II. 1. They had been in the towns of the Greeks. 2. The monuments of Greece were temples and statues. 3. The statue of Minerva had a shield and spear. 4. The arms of the Greeks were shields and spears. 5. The gods had many statues in Greece. 6. The red roses will be pleasing

Digitized by Google

to the queen. 7. The man's children are in the street. 8. He has been on the farmer's horse. 9. The children are carried in the poet's arms. 10. Many inhabitants of Britain have been skilful sailors.

84. VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, high.*
antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient.*
arma, -ōrum, N. (plur.), *arms.*
aureus, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden.*
aurum, -ī, N., *gold.*
dea, -ae, F., *goddess* (p. 8, n. 1).
decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth.*
deus, -ī, M., *god* (**262**).
fluvius, -ī, M., *river* (**79**).
glōria, -ae, F., *glory.*
Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece.*
Graecus, -ī, M., *a Greek.*
hasta, -ae, F., *spear.*
monumentum, -ī, N., *monument.*
scūtum, -ī, N., *shield.*
sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., *everlasting.*
statua, -ae, F., *statue.*
templum, -ī, N., *temple.*

85. COLLOQUIUM

DUO PUERĪ
two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nōnne est in scholā?
Charles school

Minimē. Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam, et libenter nāvigat.
likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba?
whence to Charles is a boat = Where did C. get a boat?

Ab avunculō, nam Carolus ab avunculō amātur.
from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nesciō; procul dubiō prandium; etenim in animō habet. . . .
I don't know doubtless luncheon for mind

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās patēbit.
good by to-morrow it will be open = the secret will be out.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER X

FIRST CONJUGATION

86. Ā-Verbs

Amō (stem **amā**), *love.*

Principal Parts:[1] **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Present			
I love, am loving, do love, etc.		*I am loved, etc.*	
am **ō**	am **āmus**	am **or**	am **āmur**
am **ās**	am **ātis**	am **āris,** *or* **-re**	am **āminī**
am **at**	am **ant**	am **ātur**	am **antur**
Imperfect			
I loved, was loving, did love, etc.		*I was loved, etc.*	
am **ābam**	am **ābāmus**	am **ābar**	am **ābāmur**
am **ābās**	am **ābātis**	am **ābāris,** *or* **-re**	am **ābāminī**
am **ābat**	am **ābant**	am **ābātur**	am **ābantur**
Future			
I shall love, etc.		*I shall be loved, etc.*	
am **ābō**	am **ābimus**	am **ābor**	am **ābimur**
am **ābis**	am **ābitis**	am **āberis,** *or* **-re**	am **ābiminī**
am **ābit**	am **ābunt**	am **ābitur**	am **ābuntur**
Perfect			
I have loved, I loved, etc.		*I have been (was) loved, etc.*	
amāv **ī**	amāv **imus**	amāt **us** { **sum** / **es** / **est**	amāt **ī** { **sumus** / **estis** / **sunt**
amāv **istī**	amāv **istis**		
amāv **it**	amāv **ērunt,** *or* **-re**		

[1] Certain forms of the verb are called, from their importance, *principal parts.* These forms are the first person of the present indicative, showing the *present stem;* the present infinitive, showing the *conjugation;* the first person of the perfect indicative, showing the *perfect stem;* and the perfect participle, showing the *participle stem.* The neuter of the participle is given, as intransitive verbs have the perfect participle only in that gender.

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE			PASSIVE VOICE	
		Pluperfect		
I had loved, etc.			*I had been loved, etc.*	
amāv **eram**	amāv **erāmus**	amāt us	**eram**	amāt ī **erāmus**
amāv **erās**	amāv **erātis**		**erās**	**erātis**
amāv **erat**	amāv **erant**		**erat**	**erant**
		Future Perfect		
I shall have loved, etc.			*I shall have been loved, etc.*	
amāv **erō**	amāv **erĭmus**	amāt us	**erō**	amāt ī **erimus**
amāv **erĭs**	amāv **erĭtis**		**eris**	**eritis**
amāv **erit**	amāv **erint**		**erit**	**erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE[1]

		Present	
am **em**	am **ēmus**	am **er**	am **ēmur**
am **ēs**	am **ētis**	am **ēris**, *or* **-re**	am **ēminī**
am **et**	am **ent**	am **ētur**	am **entur**
		Imperfect	
am **ārem**	am **ārēmus**	am **ārer**	am **ārēmur**
am **ārēs**	am **ārētis**	am **ārēris**, *or* **-re**	am **ārēminī**
am **āret**	am **ārent**	am **ārētur**	am **ārentur**
		Perfect	
amāv **erim**	amāv **erĭmus**	amāt us **sim**	amāt ī **sīmus**
amāv **erĭs**	amāv **erĭtis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
amāv **erit**	amāv **erint**	**sit**	**sint**
		Pluperfect	
amāv **issem**	amāv **issēmus**	amāt us **essem**	amāt ī **essēmus**
amāv **issēs**	amāv **issētis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
amāv **isset**	amāv **issent**	**esset**	**essent**

[1] See p. 26, note.

Digitized by Google

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	
am **ā**, *love thou.*	am **āre**, *be thou loved.*
am **āte**, *love ye.*	am **āminī**, *be ye loved.*
Future	
am **ātō**, *thou shalt love.*	am **ātor**, *thou shalt be loved.*
am **ātō**, *he shall love.*	am **ātor**, *he shall be loved.*
am **ātōte**, *you shall love.*	
am **antō**, *they shall love.*	am **antor**, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE

Pres. am **āre**, *to love.*	am **ārī**, *to be loved.*
Perf. amāv **isse**, *to have loved.*	amāt **us esse**, *to have been loved.*
Fut. amāt **ūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*	amāt **um īrī**, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. am **āns, -antis**, *loving.*	Pres. ———[1]
Fut. amāt **ūrus, -a, -um**, *about to love.*	Ger.[2] am **andus, -a, -um**, *to be loved.*
Perf. ———[1]	Perf. amāt **us, -a, -um**, *having been loved.*

GERUND

G. am **andī**, *of loving.*
D. am **andō**, *for loving.*
Ac. am **andum**, *loving.*
Ab. am **andō**, *by loving.*

SUPINE

Ac. amāt **um**, *to love.*

Ab. amāt **ū**, *to love, to be loved.*

[1] Observe that the Latin has neither a perfect active nor a present passive participle.

[2] Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XI

FIRST CONJUGATION

87. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**.[1]

88. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amātis, amābātis, amābitis. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amat, amābat, amābit. 4. Amantur, amābantur, amābuntur. 5. Amō, amor. 6. Amās, amāris. 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Amābitis, amābiminī. 9. Amābat, amābātur. 10. Amāre, amārī.

II. 1. He loves, he is loved. 2. He will love, he will be loved. 3. They were loved, they were loving. 4. I shall love, I shall be loved. 5. You (*sing.*) love, you are loved. 6. They loved, they were loving, they will love. 7. You (*plur.*) are loving, you were loving, you will be loving. 8. Love (*sing.*), be loved. 9. To be loved, to love.

89. EXERCISES

Laudō, *praise;* **portō**, *carry;* **superō**, *conquer.*

I. 1. Laudat, portat, superat. 2. Laudātur, portātur, superātur. 3. Laudābitur, portābitur, superābitur. 4. Laudāsne? portābāsne? superābisne? 5. Laudāmur, portābāmur, superābimur. 6. Laudā, portā, superā. 7. Superāre, portāre, laudārī. 8. Nōn superāminī, nōn portābāminī, nōn laudābiminī. 9. Laudāre, portāminī, superāte. 10. Laudor, portābar, superābor.

II. 1. Thou praisest, you carry, he conquers. 2. He is praised, they are carried, they will be conquered. 3. I praise, I was carrying, I shall conquer. 4. Thou art

[1] Notice how frequently the letter *r* marks a form as passive. Where is it absent in the first three tenses of the passive?

Digitized by Google

praised, thou art carried, thou art conquered. 5. Praise (thou), carry, conquer. 6. He will be conquered, he was praised, it is carried. 7. To conquer, to be carried, to be praised. 8. Do we carry? are we conquered? are we praised? 9. I am not carried, he was not conquered, they are not praised. 10. Thou wilt praise, he will be praised, they were carried.

90. *Examine the following sentences:—*

1. **Agricola ā rēgīnā laudātur,** *the farmer is praised by the queen.*
2. **Agricola rēgīnae verbīs laudātur,** *the farmer is praised by the words of the queen.*
3. **Servī gladiīs armantur,** *the slaves are being armed with swords.*

On the first example see **61** and **62**. In the second and third, observe that there is no **ā** or **ab** used with **verbīs** and **gladiīs.**

These ablatives, **verbīs** and **gladiīs,** answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Means or Instrument.**

91. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **Means and Instrument are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.**

92. EXERCISES

I. 1. Puellae rosās amant. 2. Rosae albae ā puellīs amantur. 3. Homērus virōs Graecōs laudābat. 4. Ab[1] Homērō laudābantur virī Graecī. 5. Oppidum nōminābant Rōmam.[2] 6. Oppidum Rōma[3] nōminābātur. 7. Servōs gladiīs armābimus. 8. Inimīcus gladiō vulnerātur. 9. Inimīcus ā Galbā vulnerātur. 10. Ō Rōmānī, servōs hastīs armāte.

II. 1. Sing, good boy. 2. Many goddesses were loved by the Greeks. 3. The boy will put the doves to flight.

[1] Before words beginning with *h* use **ab,** not **ā.**

[2] Predicate accusative.

[3] Predicate nominative. See **47.**

Digitized by Google

4. The doves will be put to flight by the boy. 5. We shall invite friends and enemies. 6. Friends and enemies will be invited. 7. The Romans were not loved by the Greeks. 8. You will be summoned by a golden[1] trumpet. 9. The slaves will be armed with javelins. 10. The black horse was wounded by a spear.

93. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dum nōs (*we*) labōrāmus, cantat caecus poēta. 2. Quid (*what*) cantābat caecus poēta dum labōrābāmus? 3. Dum in oppidō ambulant dominī, servī labōrant in agrō. 4. Puerī vigilābunt dum somnus grātus virōs dēfessōs recreābit. 5. Nauta dēfessus aquā frīgidā recreābitur. 6. Equī dēfessī pābulō bonō recreābuntur. 7. Verba bona discipulī ā magistrō laudābantur. 8. Mūrī altī ab oppidānīs aedificābantur. 9.[2] Multōs et altōs mūrōs aedificābunt oppidānī. 10. Nōn ā pigrīs virīs oppidum aedificābātur.

II. 1. While the man was working, the boy was singing. 2. While the master is being refreshed with sleep, the servant is watching. 3. Pleasant sleep refreshes the weary boy. 4. By pleasant sleep the boy will be refreshed. 5. A high wall is being built by the townsmen. 6. A famous Roman was called the Sword[3] of Italy. 7. They called a famous Roman the Sword[4] of Italy. 8. The tired farmer is refreshed by food and sleep.[5] 9. We will walk in the streets of the town, while the farmers are working[6] in the fields. 10. Sing, O blind poet, while we toil.

[1] *Golden*, **aureā** or **ex aurō**. The material of which a thing is made is expressed in Latin either by an adjective or by **ē** (**ex**) with the ablative. How is it in English?

[2] Compare, for order, **77**. I. 5, and **69**. I. 10 and note.

[3] *Sword*, in the nominative case, just as if *was* took the place of *was called*. See **92**. I. 6 and note.

[4] *Sword*, in the accusative case. See **92**. I. 5 and note.

[5] Cf. 5 and 6 in I.

[6] Imitate 4 in I.

Digitized by Google

94. VOCABULARY

aedificō, 1, *build.*
ambulō, 1, *walk.*
armō, 1, *arm.*
cantō, 1, *sing.*
fugō, 1, *put to flight.*
invītō, 1, *invite, summon.*
labōrō, 1, *work, toil.*
laudō, 1, *praise.*
nōminō, 1, *name, call.*
portō, 1, *carry.*
recreō, 1, *refresh.*
superō, 1, *surpass, conquer.*
vigilō, 1, *watch.*
vulnerō, 1, *wound.*

aqua,[1] **-ae**, F., *water.*
aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden.*
caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind.*
dum, adv., *while.*
ē (ex), prep. w. abl., *out of, from.*
frīgidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold.*
gladius, -ī, M., *sword* (79).
Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer.*
Ītalia, -ae, F., *Italy.*
mūrus, -ī, M., *wall.*
oppidānus, -ī, M., *townsman.*
piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *lazy.*
Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, -ī, M., *a Roman.*

95. COLLOQUIUM

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS
Father and little son

P. Quae, mī fīliole, in pēnsō hodiernō tractābantur?
what my lesson to-day's treat *or* discuss

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātīvus atque verbum *amō*.
case and

P. Quid sīgnificat Anglicē verbum *amō?*
means in English

F. *Amō* sīgnificat "love."

P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.
about also me tell

F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābō.
rule you

P. Rēgulamne tibi dabat magister?

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō īnstrūmentī. Cum ablātīvō īnstrūmentī nunquam pōnitur praepositiō; ante ablātīvum agentis semper pōnitur praepositiō *ā* vel *ab*.
certainly instrument with never is put preposition before of agent always or

P. Optimē, mī puer; tibi erit mālum rubrum.
well done apple

[1] Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XII

FIRST CONJUGATION

96. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**.

97. The compound tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like **bonus**) agrees in gender and number with the subject: **amāta est**, *she was loved;* **amātī sunt**, *they were loved.*

98. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 2. Amātus est, amātus erat, amātus erit. 3. Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint. 4. Amāvī, amātus sum. 5. Amāverāmus, amātī erāmus. 6. Amāveritis, amātī eritis. 7. Amāvisse, amātus esse.

II. 1. You loved, you have been loved. 2. You had loved, you had been loved. 3. You will have loved, you will have been loved. 4. He has loved, he has been loved. 5. We had loved, we had been loved. 6. To have been loved, to have loved.

99. EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudātus est, portātus est, superātus est. 2. Laudāvitne? portāveratne? superāveritne? 3. Portāvistī, laudāvistis, superāvit. 4. Superāverās, portāveris, laudāveritis. 5. Laudātī estis, portāta sunt, superātus es. 6. Nōnne laudātae sunt? nōnne portātae estis? nōnne superātae sumus? 7. Portāvī, laudātus sum, superātus eram. 8. Nōn laudāvimus, nōn portāverimus, nōn superāverō. 9. Laudāvisse, portāvisse, superāvisse. 10. Portātus esse, superātus esse, laudātus esse.

II. 1. They have carried, we have been praised, you have been conquered. 2. Have I praised? have you been carried? had they conquered? 3. We had been carried, I shall have

Digitized by Google

praised, they will have been conquered. 4. You had not carried, thou hadst not praised, thou hadst not been conquered. 5. To have been conquered, to have praised, to have carried. 6. I had praised, I had been conquered, I (*fem.*) had been carried. 7. Has it not been praised? will it not have been carried? have they not been conquered? 8. We (*fem.*) had been carried, thou wilt have praised, he conquered. 9. They praised, you carried, we conquered. 10. I was praised, thou wast conquered, it was carried.

100. In Latin, the words for *my*, *thy*, *your*, *our*, *his*, *her*, *its*, and *their*, are very often omitted when they are not emphatic. Accordingly, in the exercises to be turned into Latin, leave these words untranslated for the present.

101. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pūgna fortūnā mūtāta est. 2. Fortūna pūgnam mūtāvit. 3. Rōmānī Graecōs superāverant. 4. Graecī ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. 5. Virī multī et ēgregiī agrōs arāvērunt. 6. Ministrī scūtīs armātī sunt. 7. Agricola ēgregius ā ministrō miserō vituperātus est. 8. Agrī lātī ab agricolīs arātrō māgnō arātī sunt. 9. Magister malōs discipulōs vituperāvit. 10. Poēta pūgnās et victōriās virōrum clārōrum cantāvit.

Read again the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36.

II. 1. An eagle changed the fortune of the battle. 2. We shall witness a battle on the broad river. 3. Many good men will have been blamed by their enemies. 4. The boys will have recited to their master. 5. The land in Italy has been ploughed with iron ploughs. 6. The master freed his pupils from their hard tasks (*abl.*). 7. The goddess Minerva has been praised by many poets. 8. The victories of famous men have been sung by the poets. 9. The tyrant armed a great number of slaves with swords.

Digitized by Google

102. VOCABULARY

arō, 1, *plough.*
līberō, 1, *free, set free.*
mūtō, 1, *change.*
recitō, 1, *read aloud, recite.*
spectō, 1, *look at, witness.*
superō, 1, *surpass, conquer.*
vituperō, 1, *blame, censure.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *excellent.*
ferreus, -a, -um, adj., *of iron, iron.*
fortūna, -ae, F., *fortune.*
numerus, -ī, M., *number.*
pēnsum, -ī, N., *task, lesson.*
pūgna, -ae, F., *battle.*
scūtum, -ī, N., *shield.*
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land.*
tyrannus, -ī, M., *tyrant.*
victōria, -ae, F., *victory.*

CHAPTER XIII

THIRD DECLENSION

103. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*.

104. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems*, *liquid stems*, *sibilant stems*. See **3**.

Mute Stems

105. PARADIGMS

	Prīnceps, M., *chief.*	**Rēx**, M., *king.*	**Jūdex**, M., *judge.*	**Aetās**, F., *age.*	**Caput**, N., *head.*
	Stem **prīncip-**	St. **rēg-**	St. **jūdic-**	St. **aetāt-**	St. **capit-**
			Singular		
N.V.	prīncep **s**	rēx	jūdex	aetā **s**	caput
G.	prīncip **is**	rēg **is**	jūdic **is**	aetāt **is**	capit **is**
D.	prīncip **ī**	rēg **ī**	jūdic **ī**	aetāt **ī**	capit **ī**
Ac.	prīncip **em**	rēg **em**	jūdic **em**	aetāt **em**	caput
Ab.	prīncip **e**	rēg **e**	jūdic **e**	aetāt **e**	capit **e**
			Plural		
N.V.	prīncip **ēs**	rēg **ēs**	jūdic **ēs**	aetāt **ēs**	capit **a**
G.	prīncip **um**	rēg **um**	jūdic **um**	aetāt **um**	capit **um**
D.	prīncip **ibus**	rēg **ibus**	jūdic **ibus**	aetāt **ibus**	capit **ibus**
Ac.	prīncip **ēs**	rēg **ēs**	jūdic **ēs**	aetāt **ēs**	capit **a**
Ab.	princip **ibus**	rēg **ibus**	jūdic **ibus**	aetāt **ibus**	capit **ibus**

Digitized by Google

	Pēs, M., *foot.* St. **ped-**	**Mīlēs**, M., *soldier.* St. **mīlit-**	**Terminations** Masc. & Fem. *Sing.*	*Plur.*
	Singular			
N.V.	pē **s**	mīle **s**	**s**	**ēs**
G.	ped **is**	mīlit **is**	**is**	**um**
D.	ped **ī**	mīlit **ī**	**ī**	**ibus**
Ac.	ped **em**	mīlit **em**	**em**	**ēs**
Ab.	ped **e**	mīlit **e**	**e**	**ibus**
	Plural		**Neuter**	
N.V.	ped **ēs**	mīlit **ēs**	—	**a**
G.	ped **um**	mīlit **um**	**is**	**um**
D.	ped **ibus**	mīlit **ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**
Ac.	ped **ēs**	mīlit **ēs**	—	**a**
Ab.	ped **ibus**	mīlit **ibus**	**e**	**ibus**

106. Observe that the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is not always the same in the nominative as in the other cases.

107. Consonant stems may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. But there are some exceptions.

108. Decline **grex, poēma, servitūs.** Decline together **lapis asper, fīdus comēs,** and **mīlēs aeger.** For the nouns, see **110.**

109. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Poēta comitī aegrō poēma grātum recitāvit. 2. Comēs poētae poēmate grātō līberātus est cūrā.[1] 3. Māgnus erat equitum numerus. 4. Mīlitēs multī ā servō dominī invītātī sunt. 5. Gregēs albōs habent agricolae[2] īnsulae vīcīnae. 6. Ager vīcīnus lapidēs multōs et asperōs habet. 7. In agrō vīcīnō sunt lapidēs multī et asperī. 8. Servitūs ā virīs nōn est amāta. 9. Pēs puerī lapide asperō vulnerātus est. 10. Rēgis amīcī ā mīlitibus gladiīs et pīlīs sunt fugātī.

II. 1. The king has changed the fortune of the war. 2. The fortune of the war was changed by the king. 3. The

[1] *from care.* See **101.** II. 6. [2] The subject.

Digitized by Google

soldiers will free the king. 4. The king will be freed by the soldiers. 5. The king had armed the soldiers with shields and spears. 6. Dædalus fitted wings to his son. 7. Wings were fitted to his son by Dædalus. 8. We shall read aloud the poems of Homer. 9. The girl sings for the weary soldier and is praised.

110. VOCABULARY

comĕs, -itis, M. & F., *companion.*
equĕs, -itis, M., *horseman.*
grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd.*
lapis, -idis, M., *stone.*
mīlĕs, -itis, M., *soldier.*
pēs, pĕdis, M., *foot.*
poēma, -ătis, N., *poem.*
rēx, rēgis, M., *king.*
servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery.*
voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure.*

aptō, 1, *fit.*
Daedalus, -ī, M., *Dædalus,* builder of the Labyrinth.
fīlius, -ī, M., *son* (79).
vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*

111. COLLOQUIUM

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA
brother little sister

S. Quid hodiē nārrāvit magister in scholā?
to-day school

F. Nārrāvit dē Īcarō, Daedalī fīliō.

S. Mihi quoque dē Īcarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Īcarus puer malus?
me also in Latin

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās; ālās cērā aptāverat Daedalus; Īcarus ēvolāvit et cēra sōle liquefacta est. Tum . . .
not unfortunate wings wax flew away sun was melted then

S. Tum . . . quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīna. Itaque haesitō.
words that is why hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam linguam Anglicam intellegō.
well, then language understand

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrō, nōn Anglicē.
by no means

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIV

SECOND CONJUGATION

112. Ē-Verbs

Moneō (stem **monē**), *advise.*

Principal Parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Present			
I advise, etc.		*I am advised, etc.*	
mon **eō**	mon **ēmus**	mon **eor**	mon **ēmur**
mon **ēs**	mon **ētis**	mon **ēris,** *or* **-re**	mon **ēminī**
mon **et**	mon **ent**	mon **ētur**	mon **entur**
Imperfect			
I was advising, etc.		*I was advised, etc.*	
mon **ēbam**	mon **ēbāmus**	mon **ēbar**	mon **ēbāmur**
mon **ēbās**	mon **ēbātis**	mon **ēbāris,** *or* **-re**	mon **ēbāminī**
mon **ēbat**	mon **ēbant**	mon **ēbātur**	mon **ēbantur**
Future			
I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised, etc.*	
mon **ēbō**	mon **ēbimus**	mon **ēbor**	mon **ēbimur**
mon **ēbis**	mon **ēbitis**	mon **ēberis,** *or* **-re**	mon **ēbiminī**
mon **ēbit**	mon **ēbunt**	mon **ēbitur**	mon **ēbuntur**
Perfect			
I have advised, I advised, etc.		*I have been (was) advised, etc.*	
monu **ī**	monu **imus**	monit **us** { **sum** / **es** / **est**	monit **ī** { **sumus** / **estis** / **sunt**
monu **istī**	monu **istis**		
monu **it**	monu **ērunt,** *or* **-re**		
Pluperfect			
I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised, etc.*	
monu **eram**	monu **erāmus**	monit **us** { **eram** / **erās** / **erat**	monit **ī** { **erāmus** / **erātis** / **erant**
monu **erās**	monu **erātis**		
monu **erat**	monu **erant**		

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE			PASSIVE	
		FUTURE PERFECT		
I shall have advised, etc.			*I shall have been advised, etc.*	
monu erō	**monu erĭmus**	monit **us** { **erō**	monit **ī** {	**erimus**
monu erĭs	**monu erĭtis**	monit **us** { **eris**	monit **ī** {	**eritis**
monu erit	**monu erint**	monit **us** { **erit**	monit **ī** {	**erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE

		PRESENT	
mon eam	**mon eāmus**	**mon ear**	**mon eāmur**
mon eās	**mon eātis**	**mon eāris,** *or* **-re**	**mon eāminī**
mon eat	**mon eant**	**mon eātur**	**mon eantur**
		IMPERFECT	
mon ērem	**mon ērēmus**	**mon ērer**	**mon ērēmur**
mon ērēs	**mon ērētis**	**mon ērēris,** *or* **-re**	**mon ērēminī**
mon ēret	**mon ērent**	**mon ērētur**	**mon ērentur**
		PERFECT	
monu erim	**monu erĭmus**	monit **us** { **sim**	monit **ī** { **sīmus**
monu erĭs	**monu erĭtis**	monit **us** { **sīs**	monit **ī** { **sītis**
monu erit	**monu erint**	monit **us** { **sit**	monit **ī** { **sint**
		PLUPERFECT	
monu issem	**monu issēmus**	monit **us** { **essem**	monit **ī** { **essēmus**
monu issēs	**monu issētis**	monit **us** { **essēs**	monit **ī** { **essētis**
monu isset	**monu issent**	monit **us** { **esset**	monit **ī** { **essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	
mon ē, *advise thou.*	**mon ēre,** *be thou advised.*
mon ēte, *advise ye.*	**mon ēminī,** *be ye advised.*
FUTURE	
mon ētō, *thou shalt advise.*	**mon ētor,** *thou shalt be advised.*
mon ētō, *he shall advise.*	**mon ētor,** *he shall be advised.*
mon ētōte, *you shall advise.*	
mon entō, *they shall advise.*	**mon entor,** *they shall be advised.*

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. mon **ēre**, *to advise.*	mon **ērī**, *to be advised.*
PERF. monu **isse**, *to have advised.*	monit **us esse**, *to have been advised.*
FUT. monit **ūrus esse**, *to be about to advise.*	monit **um īrī**, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. mon **ēns**, **-entis**, *advising.*	PRES. ———
FUT. monit **ūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to advise.*	GER. mon **endus -a**, **-um**, *to be advised.*
PERF. ———	PERF. monit **us**, **-a**, **-um**, *having been advised.*

GERUND

G. mon **endī**, *of advising.*
D. mon **endō**, *for advising.*
Ac. mon **endum**, *advising.*
Ab. mon **endō**, *by advising.*

SUPINE

Ac. monit **um**, *to advise.*	Ab. monit **ū**, *to advise, to be advised.*

CHAPTER XV

SECOND CONJUGATION

113. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō**.

114. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Monet, monētur. 2. Monēbat, monēbātur. 3. Monēbit, monēbitur. 4. Monē, monēre. 5. Monēte, monēminī. 6. Monēbimus, monēbimur. 7. Monēmus, monēmur. 8. Monēbās, monēs. 9. Monēbis, monēris. 10. Monērī, monēre.

I. 1. You are advising, you will be advised, you were advised. 2. Advise ye, be ye advised. 3. We do advise,

Digitized by Google

we are advising, we shall be advising. 4. We were advising, we were advised. 5. They are advised, they advised, they were advising. 6. They will advise, they will be advised.

115. **EXERCISES**

Habeō, *have*, or *hold;* **dēleō**,[1] *destroy;* **terreō**, *frighten.*

I. 1. Habet, dēlēbat, terrēbit. 2. Nōnne habēmus? nōnne dēlēbāmus? nōnne terrēbimus? 3. Dēlēs, habēbās, terrēbunt. 4. Habēte, terrēte, dēlēte. 5. Dēlētur,[2] habēbātur, terrēbātur.[2] 6. Terrēre, dēlērī, habērī. 7. Habetne? dēlēturne? terrēbatne? 8. Dēlēbitur, habēbantur, terrēbiminī. 9. Nōn terrēmus, nōn dēlēbunt, nōn habent. 10. Habēbuntur, terrentur, dēlēbantur.

II. 1. We are held, they will be destroyed, he was frightened. 2. I frighten, thou hast (you have), he destroys. 3. To have, to destroy, to be frightened. 4. Is he frightened? are they destroyed? were you held? 5. Destroy (thou), have (ye), frighten (ye). 6. Have we not? does he not frighten? did they not destroy? 7. You will be frightened, it is held, we were frightened. 8. I was holding, he was destroying, you were frightening. 9. I shall destroy, we shall frighten, they have.

116. **EXERCISES**

Before translating the following exercises, review the tables of declensions and terminations, pp. 41 and 42.

I. 1. Poenam merēbis, sī memoriam nōn exercēbis.[3]

[1] For principal parts of **dēleō**, see vocabulary, **119**.

[2] The present, which denotes continued action, means *it is being* (*destroyed*); the imperfect, *he was being* (*frightened*).

[3] Translate as if it were the present tense; but in Latin the future is necessary, because future time is meant. Cf. **93**. I. 4. Observe the difference between the Latin and English idioms.

Digitized by Google

2. Exercē memoriam, comēs. 3. Studium memoriam auget. 4. Mīlitēs ā ducibus exercentur et docentur. 5. Perīcula mīlitēs nōn terrēbunt. 6. Perīculum nōn timēbit mīlēs. 7. Oppidum ā mīlitibus tenētur. 8. Jūdicēs poenīs malōs coercent. 9. Quid vidēs? 10. Multa videō.

II. 1. The tyrant is restrained. 2. The water of the river was increased. 3. The leader will have a statue. 4. The faithful comrade advises his friend. 5. The friend is advised by his faithful companion. 6. Lazy slaves fear a hard master. 7. A hard master is feared by lazy slaves. 8. Italy is the land of famous poets. 9. The soldiers will not be terrified by dangers. 10. The boy remembered the master's words.

117. **Malōs** (I. 8), *bad men*, and **multa** (I. 10), *many things*, are examples of the frequent use in Latin of an adjective without a noun. Compare, in English, *the good*, *the wise*.

118. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Equōs et equitēs multōs in viā videō. 2. Cȳrus, prīmus Persārum rēx,[1] nōmina[2] mīlitum memoriā tenēbat. 3. Sī oppidum dēlēbunt, poenam merēbunt. 4. Prīncipēs ā templō deī prohibēbimus. 5. Voluptātēs memoriae augēbantur. 6. Studiō augētur memoria. 7. Mīlitēs ā prīncipe monēbantur. 8. Rēx māgnum mīlitum numerum tenēbat. 9. Prīnceps equitēs pigrōs exercēbat.

II. 1. In ancient states there were many slaves. 2. Why had the ancient Romans many slaves? 3. We saw the great number of horsemen in the road and were frightened. 4. Roman boys were often taught by Greek slaves. 5. Greek slaves often taught Roman boys. 6. The horsemen were trained by the king's son. 7. Many horses and horsemen are seen in the town. 8. The chief will deserve a great victory.

[1] **Rēx**, in apposition with **Cȳrus**. See **157**. [2] *names*.

Digitized by Google

119. VOCABULARY

coerceō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *check, restrain.*
exerceō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *train, exercise.*
habeō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *have, hold.*
mereō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *deserve, merit.*
prohibeō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *prevent, keep off.*
terreō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *frighten.*
timeō, 2, **-uī**, ——, *fear.*

augeō, 2, **auxī**,[1] **auctum**, *increase.*
dēleō, 2, **-ēvī**,[2] **-ētum**, *destroy.*
doceō, 2, **-uī**, **doctum**,[3] *teach.*
teneō, 2, **-uī**, **tentum**,[4] *keep, hold.*
videō, 2, **vīdī**,[5] **vīsum**, *see;* passive, *seem.*

antīquus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *old, ancient.*
cīvitās, **-ātis**, F., *state.*
cūr, adv., *why?*
Cȳrus, **-ī**, M., *Cyrus.*
dux, **ducis**, M. & F., *leader, general.*
fīdus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *faithful.*
memoria, **-ae**, F., *memory.*
memoriā teneō, *remember.*
perīculum, **-ī**, N., *danger.*
poena, **-ae**, F., *punishment.*
quid, interrog. pron., *what?*
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, *Roman* (**94**).
saepe, adv., *often.*
sī, conj., *if.*
studium, **-ī**, N., *zeal, study.*
templum, **-ī**, N., *temple.*

CHAPTER XVI

SECOND CONJUGATION

120. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō**.

121. EXERCISES

I. 1. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit. 2. Monuērunt, monuerant, monuerint. 3. Monuī, monitus sum. 4. Monuerit, monitus erit. 5. Monuistī, monuerās, monueris. 6. Monitus est, monitus erat, monitus erit. 7. Monuisse, monitus esse.

II. 1. You have advised, you had advised, you will have advised. 2. They have been advised, they had been advised,

[1] **Auxī** for **aug-sī**. See p. 1, n. 2.

[2] Only **fleō**, *weep*, **neō**, *spin*, and the compounds of the obsolete **pleō**, *fill*, are conjugated like **dēleō**, with the perfect in **ēvī**.

[3] Observe, not **docitum**.

[4] Observe, not **tenitum**.

[5] **Vīdī**. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the vowel of the present stem, **vĭd** to **vīd**.

Digitized by Google

they will have been advised. 3. I had advised, I had been advised. 4. He has advised, he has been advised. 5. We have advised, we have been advised. 6. To have been advised, to have advised.

122. EXERCISES

I. 1. Habuit, dēlēvit, terruit. 2. Habuistī, dēlēvistī, terruistī. 3. Nōn dēlēvimus, nōn dēlēverāmus, nōn dēlēverimus. 4. Dēlētum est, territus erat, habita sunt. 5. Habuerōne? estne territa? suntne dēlētae? 6. Nōnne habuerātis? nōnne dēlētum erat? nōnne terruērunt? 7. Terruisse, dēlēvisse, habitus esse. 8. Dēlēverās, territus erās, habuistis. 9. Habuerint, dēlētum erit, habuērunt. 10. Dēlēta sunt, habitī sumus, territae estis.

II. 1. They have had, they have frightened, they have destroyed. 2. I had had, I had been frightened, I had destroyed. 3. Have you had? had he destroyed? has he frightened? 4. We had not destroyed, they (*fem.*) had not been frightened, you had not destroyed. 5. We have had, we shall have destroyed, we had been frightened. 6. To have destroyed, to have been held, to have been frightened. 7. Have you been frightened? had they (*neut.*) been destroyed? has she had? 8. I have destroyed, I have not had, I shall not have been frightened. 9. They will have had, they will have been frightened, they (*neut.*) will have been destroyed. 10. Have you not had? did they not destroy? have you (*fem.*) not been frightened?

123. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēx Rōmam obsēderat. 2. Rōma ā rēge obsessa erat. 3. Scrība cum (*with*) rēge sedēbat. 4. Īra ferōcem (*fierce*) animum virī mōvit. 5. Rēgulī conjugī et līberīs

Digitized by Google

alimenta praebuērunt Rōmānī. 6. Captīvī retentī sunt. 7. Novamne lūnam vīdistī? 8. Aquila in (*on*) templō sēdit. 9. Poēta flēvit quia fīlius captīvus erat. 10. Caesar oppidum Galliae obsēdit.

II. 1. The town was besieged by the general. 2. Why did the general besiege the town? 3. The king is sitting[1] with his clerk. 4. The minds of the men were moved with anger. 5. Regulus was retained (as) a prisoner.[2] 6. Regulus deserved great glory. 7. The new moon has been seen. 8. The commander's daughter was a prisoner. 9. We wept because we were prisoners. 10. The town had been besieged by Pyrrhus.

124. EXERCISES

I. 1. Mīlitibus māgna praemia ā rēge praebita sunt. 2. Mīlitēs timuērunt quia elephantōs vīdērunt. 3. Numerum verbōrum auximus. 4. Caesar mīlitēs in oppidō retinuerat. 5. Jūdicum bonōrum memoria nunquam dēlēbitur. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum monumenta[3] dēlēta sunt. 7. Dux castra ab oppidō mōverat. 8. Dominus servōs in servitūte tenuit. 9. Multa verba in memoriā mānsērunt. 10. Mīlitis conjunx in Minervae templō sedēbat.

II. 1. The king furnished food for his weary soldiers. 2. Elephants had frightened the horses of the Romans. 3. Have you increased the number of your friends? 4. Cæsar's soldiers were besieged in the town. 5. The sword of the tyrant has restrained the judge. 6. War has destroyed many monuments[3] of great men. 7. The camp had been moved away from the town. 8. We weep if our children are held in slavery. 9. Shall you remain in Italy?

[1] Not passive.
[2] Predicate nom.; see 47.
[3] When a noun is limited both by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: *adjective, genitive, noun.* Cf. 118. I. 2 and 8.

Digitized by Google

125. VOCABULARY

flеō, 2, flēvī, flētum, *weep, bewail.*
manеō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, *remain, await.*
moveō, 2, mōvī,[1] **mōtum,** *move.*
ob-sideō, 2, -sēdī,[1] **-sessum,** *besiege.*
praebeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *furnish.*
re-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum, *keep back, retain.*
sedeō, 2, sēdī,[1] **sessum,** *sit.*
alimentum, -ī, N., *food, support.*
animus, -ī, M., *mind.*
Caesar, -aris, M., *Cæsar* (**134**).
captīvus, -ī, M., *prisoner, captive.*
castra, -ōrum, N. (pl.), *camp.*
conjunx, conjugis, F., *wife.*
elephantus, -ī, M., *elephant.*
īra, -ae, F., *anger.*
lūna, -ae, F., *moon.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.*
nunquam, adv., *never.*
praemium, -ī, N., *reward.*
Pyrrhus, -ī, M., *Pyrrhus,* king of Epirus.
quia, conj., *because.*
Rēgulus, -ī, M., *Regulus,* a Roman.
scrība, -ae, M., *clerk* (**11.** 1).

126. COLLOQUIUM

Praeceptor et Discipulus

P. Latīnē mihi interrogantī respondē sī possīs. Quae
to me asking answer you can what
īnsula Graeciae est parva quidem sed clāra?
to be sure

D. Admodum clāra est Ithaca īnsula, ubi habitābat
very where
Ulixēs.
Ulysses

P. Rēctē, mī puer, Ulixēs Ithacae rēx fuit et dux in
right leader
bellō ēgregius. Quis cantāvit dē Ulixe ēgregiō?

D. Homērus, poēta caecus, quī autem Ulixem nunquam
blind who however never
vīderat.

P. Tenēsne memoriā nōmen fīdī servī Ulixis?
name

D. Servus Ulixis fīdus erat Eumaeus.

[1] See page 49, note 5.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVII

REVIEW

127. EXERCISES

I. 1. Magister discipulōs invītāvit. 2. Nōnne ā magistrō discipulī invītātī sunt? 3. Vīdistīne agricolārum arātra ferrea? 4. Mīlitēs lapidēs māgnōs portābant. 5. Rēx ab oppidō castra mōvit. 6. Gregis custōdēs lapidibus fugātī sunt. 7. Mī[1] fīlī, poēmata Homērī recitāvistīne? 8. Sī oppidum tenuerimus, victōriam merēbimus. 9. Conjugēs mīlitum pūgnam spectābant et flēbant. 10. In Ītaliā antīquā ā Pyrrhō Ēpīrī rēge superātī sunt Rōmānī.

II. 1. We shall see the flocks in the fields. 2. The king was not frightened by the elephant.[2] 3. Horses are frightened by elephants. 4. The townsmen were sitting on the wall. 5. The prisoners were wounded by the soldiers with their swords. 6. My boy, what are you looking at? 7. Do you not see the horsemen's swords? 8. Do you remember the poems of the Roman poet? 9. The king's sons were finding fault with fortune. 10. Why are the townsmen armed with swords?

128. *Examine the two following groups of sentences:* —

1. **Iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant,** *the Helvetii had turned their course from the Arar.*
2. **Arāneās dēiciam dē parietę,** *I will brush down the cobwebs from the wall.*
3. **Hannibal ex Ītaliā excessit,** *Hannibal withdrew from Italy.*

1. **Nōs cūrā līberābis,** *you will free us from care.*
2. **Oculīs sē prīvāvit,** *he deprived himself of his sight (eyes).*
3. **Homo cibō caret,** *the man is in want of food.*

129. The verbs have the general idea of *separation;* and in the first group the ablative with a preposition, in the second the ablative

[1] Vocative singular of **meus,** *my.* [2] See **62.**

Digitized by Google

alone, answers the question *from what? of what?* Observe further, that the verbs of the first group are compounds of **ā, dē, ex,** and the "separation" is *literal*, or *physical;* in the second group the "separation" is *figurative*, or less literal.

130. Rule of Syntax. — Separation is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), in connection with verbs compounded with these prepositions,[1] or by the ablative alone with simple verbs meaning *to set free, deprive,* or *want.*

131. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hunc (*him*) ā tuīs ārīs arcēbis. 2. Fīlius rēgis Rōmānōs cūrā līberāvit. 3. Rōmānī ā fīliō rēgis cūrā līberātī sunt. 4. Vir aeger aquā prīvātus est. 5. Servī servitūte līberābuntur. 6. Dux Rōmānus Corinthum multīs statuīs prīvāvit. 7. Servī, equīs dēfessīs aquam praebēte. 8.[2] Sāturnus Italōs agrī cultūram docuit. 9. Līber vīnī erat deus et in Ītaliā templa multa habēbat. 10. Avārī mīlitēs ārās dōnīs spoliant. 11. Mī puer, equus pābulō et aquā caret.

Before translating the following sentences, read over the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36, and consider what expressions are equivalent to the Latin ablative of *agent* with *ā* or *ab*, the ablative of *means*, and the ablative of *separation*.

II. 1. They deprived the sick man of water. 2. The state was freed from the tyrant by Brutus. 3. The Italians were taught by Saturn. 4. The leader adorned the town with statues. 5. The horsemen are in want of swords and horses. 6. Corinth was robbed of many statues by a Roman general. 7. The goddess will keep off the Romans

[1] With other verbs than those indicated in **129** and **130**, of similar meaning, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes omitted.

[2] Observe the two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*, with **doceō**.

Digitized by Google

from her temple. 8. The town was destroyed by the plans of the general. 9. Will not the Romans be kept off from the temple? 10. They thrust forth the leaders from the town. 11. The leaders are hustled out of town.

132. VOCABULARY

agrī cultūra, -ae, F., *agriculture.*
avārus, -a, -um, adj., *greedy.*
arceō, 2, **-uī,** ——, *keep off.*
Brūtus, -ī, M., *Brutus,* a Roman.
careō, 2, **-uī, -itum,** *want, lack.*
causa, -ae, F., *cause.*
Corinthus, -ī, F., *Corinth* (**11.** 4).
custōs, -ōdis, M. & F., *keeper.*
Ēpīrus, -ī, F., *Epirus* (**11.** 4).
exturbō, 1, *thrust out.*
Italus, -ī, M., *an Italian.*
Līber, -erī, M., *Bacchus,* god of wine.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *my, mine.*
ōrnō, 1, *adorn.*
prīvō, 1, *deprive.*
Sāturnus, -ī, M., *Saturn,* god of agriculture.
spoliō, 1, *rob, despoil.*
tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *thy, your.*

133. COLLOQUIUM

Praeceptor et Discipulus

P. Dīc mihi, puer, elephantōsne aliquandō vīdistī?
tell ever
D. Certē, praeceptor, elephantōs māgnōs et parvōs vīdī.
P. In agrīsne?
D. Minimē vērō; in circō et interdum in viīs.
indeed circus sometimes
P. Quis rēx clārus elephantōrum auxiliō pūgnābat?
what aid
D. Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, ita pūgnābat.
P. Nōnne elephantī equōs Rōmānōrum terrēbant?
D. Terrēbant. Mīlitēs quoque terrēbantur.
yes also
P. Superāvitne Pyrrhus Rōmānōs?
D. Saepe superāvit.
often
P. Quibus armīs pūgnant elephantī?
with what
D. Dentibus, proboscide, pedibus, capite pūgnant.
tusks trunk feet

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XVIII

THIRD DECLENSION

Liquid Stems

134. PARADIGMS

	Cōnsul, M., *consul.* St. **cōnsul-**	**Pater**, M., *father.* St. **patr-**	**Pāstor**, M., *shepherd.* St. **pāstōr-**	**Leō**, M., *lion.* St. **leōn-**
		Singular		
N.V.	cōnsul	pater	pāstor	leō
G.	cōnsul **is**	patr **is**	pāstōr **is**	leōn **is**
D.	cōnsul **ī**	patr **ī**	pāstōr **ī**	leōn **ī**
Ac.	cōnsul **em**	patr **em**	pāstōr **em**	leōn **em**
Ab.	cōnsul **e**	patr **e**	pāstōr **e**	leōn **e**
		Plural		
N.V.	cōnsul **ēs**	patr **ēs**	pāstōr **ēs**	leōn **ēs**
G.	cōnsul **um**	patr **um**	pāstōr **um**	leōn **um**
D.	cōnsul **ibus**	patr **ibus**	pāstōr **ibus**	leōn **ibus**
Ac.	cōnsul **ēs**	patr **ēs**	pāstōr **ēs**	leōn **ēs**
Ab.	cōnsul **ibus**	patr **ibus**	pāstōr **ibus**	leōn **ibus**

	Imāgō, F., *image.* St. **imāgin-**	**Nōmen**, N., *name.* St. **nōmin-**	Terminations Masc. & Fem. *Sing.*	*Plur.*	Neuter
	Singular				
N.V.	imāgō	nōmen	—	**ēs**	
G.	imāgin **is**	nōmin **is**	**is**	**um**	
D.	imāgin **ī**	nōmin **ī**	**ī**	**ibus**	
Ac.	imāgin **em**	nōmen	**em**	**ēs**	
Ab.	imāgin **e**	nōmin **e**	**e**	**ibus**	
	Plural				
N.V.	imāgin **ēs**	nōmin **a**	—	**a**	
G.	imāgin **um**	nōmin **um**	**is**	**um**	
D.	imāgin **ibus**	nōmin **ibus**	**ī**	**ibus**	
Ac.	imāgin **ēs**	nōmin **a**	—	**a**	
Ab.	imāgin **ibus**	nōmin **ibus**	**e**	**ibus**	

Digitized by Google

135. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Hieme et aestāte,** *in winter and summer.*
2. **Sōlis occāsū,**[1] *at the setting of the sun.*
3. **Prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak (first light).*
4. **His vīgintī annīs,** *within these twenty years.*

It will be seen that the above phrases are expressions of *time*, and answer the question *when?* or, *within what time?*

136. RULE OF SYNTAX. — ***Time when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; *time within which*, by the ablative alone, or by the ablative with *in*.**

137. EXERCISES

I. 1. Tertiā hōrā mīlitēs fugātī sunt. 2. Prīmō annō Brūtum cōnsulem creāvērunt Rōmānī. 3. Oppidum mīlitibus ab imperātōre implētum est. 4. Imperātor oppidum mīlitibus implēbit. 5. Terror clāmōre hominum augētur. 6. Clāmōrēs dēfēnsōrum omnēs[2] puerōs[3] terrēbunt. 7. Nōmen et imāginem amīcī semper in memoriā habēbat. 8. Semper erit clārum imperātōris ēgregiī nōmen. 9. Nōnne Hannibal Rōmānīs fuit terror? 10. Hannibal fortitūdinem māgnam semper habēbat.

II. 1. Europe has no[4] lions. 2. A slave had a great lion. 3. The name of the slave was Androclus. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The friend of my brothers has seen a lion. 6. A lion has been seen by my father and my brother. 7. The shouts of the soldiers scared the men in the town. 8. The defenders of the town were scared by the shouts of the men. 9. Why are many men miserable in time[5] of war? 10. Do we not see by the sun's light? 11. At daybreak they saw Hannibal's horsemen.

[1] Ablative of the fourth declension. See **245**. [2] *All.* [3] *Children.* See **60**. [4] *Not.* [5] *Tempore.*

Digitized by Google

138. VOCABULARY

clāmor, -ōris, M., *shout.*
dēfēnsor, -ōris, M., *defender.*
fortitūdō, -inis, F., *bravery.*
frāter, -tris, M., *brother.*
Hannibal, -ălis, M., *Hannibal,* a Carthaginian general.
homō, -inis, M., *man.*
imperātor, -ōris, M., *general.*
lūmen, -inis, N., *light.*
sōl, sōlis, M. (no gen. pl.), *sun.*
terror, -ōris, M., *terror.*
timor, -ōris, M., *fear.*
Āfrica, -ae, F., *Africa.*
Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus.*
annus, -ī, M., *year.*
creō, 1, *elect, choose.*
Eurōpa, -ae, F., *Europe.*
Horātius, -ī, M., *Horace,* a Roman poet (**79**).
impleō, 2, **-ēvī, -ētum,** *fill.*
juventūs, -ūtis, F., *youth.*
semper, adv., *always.*
voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure.*

homo, *man,* as distinguished from gods and lower animals; general word for man, *mankind.*

vir (**60**), *man,* as distinguished from woman; man in an honorable sense, *hero.*

139. COLLOQUIUM

Magister et Discipulus

M. Quae, mī puer, sunt in pēnsō hodiernō?
what things to-day's

D. Multa sunt in pēnsō, ut nōmina, adjectīva, dēclīnātiōnēs, rēgulae.
many things as nouns declensions

M. Quot genera sunt nōminibus Latīnīs?
how many genders

D. Genera sunt tria: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.
genders three

M. Dē quibus nōminibus est rēgula prīma?
what

D. Prīma rēgula est dē nōminibus generis masculīnī. Secunda rēgula est dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

M. Verbōrum quot sunt conjugātiōnēs?
verbs how many

D. Quattuor sunt conjugātiōnēs, dēclīnātiōnēs autem quīnque.
four but five

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XIX

THIRD DECLENSION

Sibilant Stems[1]

140. PARADIGMS

	Mōs, M., *custom.* St. **mōs-**	**Jūs**, N., *right.* St. **jūs-**	**Opus**, N., *work.* St. **opes-**	**Corpus**, N., *body.* St. **corpos-**
		Singular		
N.V.	mōs	jūs	opus	corpus
G.	mōr is	jūr is	oper is	corpor is
D.	mōr ī	jūr ī	oper ī	corpor ī
Ac.	mōr em	jūs	opus	corpus
Ab.	mōr e	jūr e	oper e	corpor e
		Plural		
N.V.	mōr ēs	jūr a	oper a	corpor a
G.	mōr um	jūr um	oper um	corpor um
D.	mōr ibus	jūr ibus	oper ibus	corpor ibus
Ac.	mōr ēs	jūr a	oper a	corpor a
Ab.	mōr ibus	jūr ibus	oper ibus	corpor ibus

141. ADJECTIVE

Vetus, *old.* Stem **vetes-**

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	vetus	vetus	veter ēs	veter a
G.	veter is	veter is	veter um	veter um
D.	veter ī	veter ī	veter ibus	veter ibus
Ac.	veter em	vetus	veter ēs	veter a
Ab.	veter e	veter e	veter ibus	veter ibus

142. The above were originally sibilant stems, the *s* having been changed to *r* between two vowels. Compare **eram** for **esam**, **erō** for **esō**, p. 25. But for practical purposes they may be regarded as stems in r.

[1] For table of terminations, see **134**.

Digitized by Google

143. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cerēs agrī cultūrae erat dea. 2. Cererī multa erant templa in Siciliā. 3. Cerēs multa templa in Siciliā habēbat. 4. Cerēs agrī cultūram docēbat. 5. Aestāte est pulvis molestus. 6. Servīs temporibus antīquīs nōn erant jūra. 7. Servī temporum veterum jūra nōn habēbant. 8. Equus perītō ab equite exercitus erat. 9. Equitī perītō praebitus erit equus niger.

II. 1. The statue of Minerva has been seen. 2. The statue of Minerva had often been praised. 3. The works of the Greeks were pleasing to the Romans. 4. Our pleasures have been increased by work[1] and zeal. 5. What[2] were seen in the temples of Greece? 6. In ancient times men saw statues of gods and goddesses. 7. Statues of gods and goddesses were seen by men in ancient times.

144. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Cum virtūte vīxit,** *he lived with virtue (virtuously).*
2. **Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat,** *the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).*
3. **Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat,** *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*
4. **Summā vī proelium commīsērunt,** *they joined battle with the greatest violence.*

Manner is usually expressed by adverbs: **bene,** *well;* **līberē,** *freely.* So the phrases **cum virtūte, cum cūrā, māgnā cum cūrā,** and **summā vī,** plainly denote manner,—*how* a thing is done,—like adverbs of manner.

145. RULE OF SYNTAX.—**Manner is sometimes expressed by the ablative with *cum;* but if the ablative has an adjective, *cum* is often omitted.**

[1] Read again explanations and rule, p. 36. [2] **Quae** = *what things.*

Digitized by Google

146. EXERCISES

I. 1. Captīvī lūmen sōlis māgnō gaudiō vīdērunt. 2.[1] Sī in agrīs tempore flōrum eritis,[2] libenter eōs (*them*) vidēbitis. 3. Māgnā voluptāte aestāte videntur pulchrī flōrēs. 4. Librōs cum studiō et voluptāte recitāmus. 5. Puerī corpora cum studiō et cūrā exercent. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum opera tempore[3] nōn dēlēta sunt.

II. 1. They look at the lion with great fear. 2. If he blames (is blaming) the boy angrily,[4] he deserves punishment. 3. Dædalus had fitted wings to Icarus with care. 4. They remember the words of the good judge with joy. 5. The words of the good judge will be carefully[4] remembered. 6. How many works of the Romans time has not destroyed!

147. VOCABULARY

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres,* goddess of agriculture.
flōs, flōris, M., *flower.*
pulvis, -eris, M., *dust.*
tempus, -oris, N., *time.*
aestās, -ātis, F., *summer.*
cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*
cūra, -ae, F., *care.*
gaudium, -ī, N., *joy.*
Īcarus, -ī, M., *Icarus.*
īra, -ae, F., *anger.*
libenter, adv., *gladly, with pleasure.*
molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome.*
quam, adv., *how, than.*
sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred.*
Sicilia, -ae, F., *Sicily.*

148. COLLOQUIUM

DUO PUERĪ

Hodiē dūrum pēnsum habuī.
Studuistīne cum cūrā et dīligentiā?
did you study diligence
Certē cum dīligentiā, nōn cum voluptāte studuī.

[1] Notice that *in the fields* = in agrīs; *in the time* = tempore.
[2] See p. 47, note 3.
[3] Why would it be wrong to write ā tempore?
[4] Compare 144. 1.

Digitized by Google

Cūr nōn cum voluptāte studuistī? Eratne magister mōrōsus an pēnsum longum?
cross or

Meherculē! longum erat pēnsum neque memoriā tenē-
truly and not

bam. Aspice. Nōnne vidēs multa vocābula in vocābulāriō
look words vocabulary

et verbum *moneō* et dēclīnātiōnis tertiae substantīva et adjectīva?

Heu amīcum miserum, quam studēs!
ah have to study

CHAPTER XX

THIRD DECLENSION

Stems in *i*

149. PARADIGMS

	Hostis, M. & F., *enemy.* St. **hosti-**	**Nūbēs**, F., *cloud.* St. **nūbi-**	**Turris**, F., *tower.* St. **turri-**	**Ignis**, M., *fire.* St. **īgni-**
	Singular			
N.V.	host is	nūb ēs	turr is	īgn is
G.	host is	nūb is	turr is	īgn is
D.	host ī	nūb ī	turr ī	īgn ī
Ac.	host em	nūb em	turr im, em	īgn em
Ab.	host e	nūb e	turr ī, e	īgn ī, e
	Plural			
N.V.	host ēs	nūb ēs	turr ēs	īgn ēs
G.	host ium	nūb ium	turr ium	īgn ium
D.	host ibus	nūb ibus	turr ibus	īgn ibus
Ac.	host ēs, īs	nūb ēs, īs	turr ēs, īs	īgn ēs, īs
Ab.	host ibus	nūb ibus	turr ibus	īgn ibus

Digitized by Google

	Animal, N., *animal.* St. animāli-	**Mare**, N., *sea.* St. mari-	**Calcar**, N., *spur.* St. calcāri-	TERMINATIONS MASC. & FEM. *Sing.*	*Plur.*
	SINGULAR				
N.V.	animal	mar e	calcar	is, ēs	ēs
G.	animāl is	mar is	calcār is	is	ium
D.	animāl ī	mar ī	calcār ī	ī	ibus
Ac.	animal	mar e	calcar	em, im	ēs, īs
Ab.	animāl ī	mar ī	calcār ī	e, ī	ibus
	PLURAL			NEUTER	
N.V.	animāl ia	mar ia	calcār ia	e *or* —	ia
G.	animāl ium	———	calcār ium	is	ium
D.	animāl ibus	mar ibus	calcār ibus	ī	ibus
Ac.	animāl ia	mar ia	calcār ia	e *or* —	ia
Ab.	animāl ibus	mar ibus	calcār ibus	ī	ibus

150. ADJECTIVES

Ācer, *keen, eager.* St. **ācri-**

	SINGULAR MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	PLURAL MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.V.	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
G.	ācr is	ācr is	ācr is	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
D.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
Ac.	ācr em	ācr em	ācr e	ācr ēs, īs	ācr ēs, īs	ācr ia
Ab.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

Levis, *light, nimble.* St. **levi-**

	SINGULAR M. & F.	NEUT.	PLURAL M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	lev is	lev e	lev ēs	lev ia
G.	lev is	lev is	lev ium	lev ium
D.	lev ī	lev ī	lev ibus	lev ibus
Ac.	lev em	lev e	lev ēs, īs	lev ia
Ab.	lev ī	lev ī	lev ibus	lev ibus

Digitized by Google

Memor, *mindful*. St. **memori-**

	Singular		Plural
	M. & F.	NEUT.	
N.V.	memor	memor	memor **ēs**
G.	memor **is**	memor **is**	memor **um**
D.	memor **ī**	memor **ī**	memor **ibus**
Ac.	memor **em**	memor	memor **ēs, īs**
Ab.	memor **ī**	memor **ī**	memor **ibus**

151. An inspection of the table shows: —

1. That the *i* of the stem is sometimes lost, and sometimes changed to *e*. It appears in the terminations *im*, *īs* (acc. plur.), *ī* (abl. sing.), *ia*, and *ium*.

2. That the ablative singular has in some nouns *ī*, in some *e*, and in some *ī* or *e*; in adjectives, always *ī*.

3. That the genitive plural has *ium*, and the nominative and accusative plural neuter *ia*. Compare these endings with the nominative and genitive plural of consonant stems (**105, 134, 140**).

4. **Memor** has *um* in the genitive plural, masculine and feminine. It has no neuter plural. Like **memor** decline **vigil**, *watchful*, which has neuter plural **vigilia, vigilium**, etc.

152. To stems in *i* belong: —

1. Nouns in *is* and *ēs* not increasing in the genitive.[1]
2. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.
3. Adjectives of two terminations.
4. Adjectives of the third declension of three terminations.

153. Nouns in *ēs* (gen. *is*) are declined like **nūbēs**. Most nouns in *is* are declined like **hostis**. **Canis**, *dog*, has genitive plural **canum**.

154. The principal nouns declined like **turris** are: **clāvis**, *key*; **nāvis**, *ship*; **puppis**, *stern of a ship*; **secūris**, *axe*.

Like **īgnis** are: **amnis**, *river*; **anguis**, *snake*; **avis**, *bird*; **cīvis**, *citizen*; **classis**, *fleet*; **collis**, *hill*; **finis**, *end*; **orbis**, *circle*; **postis**, *post*. **Sitis**, *thirst*, has acc. in **-im**, abl. in **-ī**.

[1] That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

Digitized by Google

155. Adjectives declined like **ācer** are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like **levis**, adjectives of two terminations; while those declined like **vetus** (**141**), **audāx**, and **prūdēns** (**164**), are called adjectives of one termination.

156. Decline together **nāvis longa**, *ship of war;* **vallis profunda**, *deep valley;* **Alpēs altae**, *high Alps.* See **161**.

157. *Paradigm illustrating apposition:* —

N.V. **Cicerō cōnsul**, *Cicero, the consul.*
G. **Cicerōnis cōnsulis**, *of Cicero, the consul.*
D. **Cicerōnī cōnsulī**, *to* or *for Cicero, the consul.*
Ac. **Cicerōnem cōnsulem**, *Cicero, the consul.*
Ab. **ā Cicerōne cōnsule**, *by Cicero, the consul.*

158. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **An appositive is in the same case as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.**

159. EXERCISES

I. 1. In vallibus Alpium sunt fluviī pulchrī. 2. Quae (*what*) animālia aquilam timent? 3. Nāvēs Gallōrum erant longae et altae. 4. Gallī longās nāvēs habēbant. 5. Fuimus in nāvī altā. 6. Rōbur tuum levī labōre augēbitur. 7. Somnus hominibus voluptātem praebet. 8. Habentne mīlitēs dēfessī cibum et aquam? 9. Hominēs cibum īgnī coquunt (*cook*). 10. Leōnēs et elephantī sunt animālia fera.

II. 1. In the tower there were many men. 2. The towers of the ships were high. 3. From the high tower we saw the broad sea. 4. The broad sea was seen by men in the high tower. 5. The flight of the horsemen was seen by brave soldiers. 6. Robbers fear a brave man. 7. A brave man is feared by robbers. 8. On the shore they built a tower

Digitized by Google

for the king. 9. Numa, king of the Romans, changed the number of the months. 10. The number of the months was changed by Numa, a Roman king.

160. EXERCISES

I. 1. Turrim altam vidēbant rēgis comitēs. 2. Corpora hominum nōn animī sunt mortālia. 3. Capita animālium multōrum vidēbantur. 4. Ācrī animō nāvem latrōnum submovent nautae. 5. Nāvis latrōnum ab ācribus nautīs submovētur. 6. Victōriam dēbēmus turribus nostrīs validīs. 7. Multa animālia sunt levia et vigilia. 8. Avium nōn multa genera in ruīnīs turrium antīquārum habitant. 9. Servī Graecī fīliōs Rōmānōrum nōbilium ēducābant. 10. Fīliī Rōmānōrum nōbilium ā servīs Graecīs saepe ēducābantur.

II. 1. Polyphemus, son of Neptune, had a huge body. 2. Cyrus, the first king of the Persians, remembered all the names of his soldiers. 3. The names of all his soldiers were remembered by Cyrus, king of the Persians. 4. How many ships of the Gauls were driven off? 5. The number of fires in the town was great.

161. VOCABULARY

Alpēs, -ium, F., *Alps.*
avis, -is, F., *bird* (**154**).
fortis, -e, adj., *brave.*
mēnsis, -is, M., *month.*
mortālis, -e, adj., *mortal.*
nāvis, -is, F., *ship* (**154**).
nōbilis, -e, adj., *noble.*
omnis, -e, adj., *all, every.*
vallis (or **-ēs**), **-is, F.,** *valley.*
vigil, -is, adj., *watchful.*

animus, -ī, M., *mind, soul.*
ēducō, 1, *train, educate.*

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild.*
fuga, -ae, F., *flight.*
genus, -eris, N., *kind, race.*
habitō, 1, *dwell, inhabit.*
latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber.*
lītus, -ŏris, N., *shore.*
multitūdō, -inis, F., *multitude.*
Neptūnus, -ī, M., *Neptune,* god of the sea.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *our, ours.*

Numa, -ae, M., *Numa,* a Roman king.
Persae, -ārum, M., *the Persians.*

Digitized by Google

Polyphēmus, -ī, M., *Polyphemus.*
quot, adj., indecl., *how many?*
rōbur, -ŏris, N., *strength.*
ruīna, -ae, F., *ruin.*
sub-moveō, 2, **-mōvī, -mōtum,** (*move from beneath*) *remove, drive away.*
vītō, 1, *avoid, shun.*

162. COLLOQUIUM

Frāter et Sorōrcula

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi habitābat?
where

F. Polyphēmus fīlius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in īnsulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?

F. Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Polyphēmus.
neither ploughman nor

S. Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus nāvigābat.
therefore

F. Errāvistī, mea sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor atque māgnōs ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit autem ingentis corporis et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum oculum stīpite perforāvit.
and sheep moreover huge only crafty for him his one stake dug out

S. Ēheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!
Oh dear! poor

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXI

THIRD DECLENSION

Mixed Stems[1]

163. PARADIGMS

	Cliēns, M. & F., *client.*	**Urbs**, F., *city.*	**Arx**, F., *citadel.*	TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR		
N.V.	cliēn **s**	urb **s**	arx	**s**
G.	client **is**	urb **is**	arc **is**	**is**
D.	client **ī**	urb **ī**	arc **ī**	**ī**
Ac.	client **em**	urb **em**	arc **em**	**em**
Ab.	client **e**	urb **e**	arc **e**	**e**
		PLURAL		
N.V.	client **ēs**	urb **ēs**	arc **ēs**	**ēs**
G.	client **ium**	urb **ium**	arc **ium**	**ium**
D.	client **ibus**	urb **ibus**	arc **ibus**	**ibus**
Ac.	client **ēs, īs**	urb **ēs, īs**	arc **ēs, īs**	**ēs, īs**
Ab.	client **ibus**	urb **ibus**	arc **ibus**	**ibus**

164. ADJECTIVES

Audāx, *bold;* **prūdēns**, *sagacious.*

	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
		SINGULAR		
N.V.	audāx	audāx	prūdēns	prūdēns
G.	audāc **is**	audāc **is**	prūdent **is**	prūdent **is**
D.	audāc **ī**	audāc **ī**	prūdent **ī**	prūdent **ī**
Ac.	audāc **em**	audāx	prūdent **em**	prūdēns
Ab.	audāc **ī, e**	audāc **ī, e**	prūdent **ī, e**	prūdent **ī, e**
		PLURAL		
N.V.	audāc **ēs**	audāc **ia**	prūdent **ēs**	prūdent **ia**
G.	audāc **ium**	audāc **ium**	prūdent **ium**	prūdent **ium**
D.	audāc **ibus**	audāc **ibus**	prūdent **ibus**	prūdent **ibus**
Ac.	audāc **ēs, īs**	audāc **ia**	prūdent **ēs, īs**	prūdent **ia**
Ab.	audāc **ibus**	audāc **ibus**	prūdent **ibus**	prūdent **ibus**

[1] Usually classed as *i* stems. See **166**.

Digitized by Google

165. PARTICIPLE

Amāns, *loving.*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	amāns	amāns	amant ēs	amant ia
G.	amant is	amant is	amant ium	amant ium
D.	amant ī	amant ī	amant ibus	amant ibus
Ac.	amant em	amāns	amant ēs, īs	amant ia
Ab.	amant e, ī	amant e, ī	amant ibus	amant ibus

166. Note in the above tables: —

1. That the nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems (**105, 134, 140**), and the adjectives also, except that, like *i* stems, they have an ablative in ī.

2. That the plural of both nouns and adjectives is like that of *i* stems (**149, 150**).

167. To the class of mixed stems belong: —

1. Nouns in *ns* and *rs*. But **parēns** has the genitive plural **parentum**.

2. Monosyllables in *s* and *x* following a consonant, together with **nix, nivis,** *snow;* **nox, noctis,** *night;* **os, ossis,** *bone;* **mūs, mūris,** *mouse.*

3. Adjectives of one ending, with some exceptions, of which the most important are: **dīves,** *rich;* **pauper,** *poor;* **particeps,** *sharing;* **prīnceps,** *chief;* and compounds of nouns that have consonant stems. These all have the genitive plural in *um.*

4. Present active participles.

168. Rules of Gender. — **1. Nouns ending in** *ō, or, ōs, er, es* (gen. *ĭdis, ĭtis*), **are masculine.**

But nouns ending in *dō* and *gō*, of more than two syllables, together with abstract[1] and collective[2] nouns in *iō*, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in *ās, ēs* **not increasing in the genitive,** *is, x,* **and** *s* **following a consonant, are feminine.**

[1] Abstract nouns are such as denote a *thought* rather than a *thing:* ratiō, *method.*

[2] Collective nouns are such as in the singular imply a number of things or persons: legiō, *legion.*

Digitized by Google

3. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur,* and *us,* are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which the learner should note as he advances.

169. Decline together **fōns profundus,** *deep spring;* **hostis audāx,** *bold enemy;* **māgna pars,** *great part.* See **172.**

170. EXERCISES

I. 1. Alpēs sunt montēs Eurōpae. 2. Saepe in lateribus montium sunt silvae. 3. Multōrum amnium fontēs sunt parvī. 4. In Alpibus sunt regiōnēs pulchrae et suāvēs. 5. Sunt vallēs profundae, rūpēs altae, silvae māgnae. 6. Ibi māgnam vidēbis multitūdinem vulpium. 7. Aestāte ovium gregēs videntur. 8. Mīlitem fortem nōn terrēbit perīculum. 9. Mīles fortis perīculō nōn terrēbitur. 10. Omnēs adulēscentēs erunt mīlitēs fortēs.

II. 1. There are mountains in Europe. 2. On the sides of the mountains are tall trees. 3. Many rivers have small sources. 4. Parts of the Alps are beautiful. 5. The Alps have deep valleys and high cliffs. 6. Wild beasts are seen on the sides of the Alps. 7. There you will see shepherds and sheep. 8. Brave soldiers do not fear dangers. 9. The fathers of the young men are soldiers. 10. We honor the brave soldier.

171. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quid vident hominēs in montibus altīs? 2. Aquilam, avem audācem, in rūpibus vident. 3. Nōnne in arboribus altīs habitat rēx avium? 4. Certē, et parvīs avibus est terror māgnus, nam inter avēs rēgnat. 5. Ācrēs sunt aquilārum oculī; longē vident vēnātōrem. 6. In marī classem hostium vidēmus. 7. Classis nāvium ā latrōnibus vidēbātur. 8. Magister mōrēs bonōs et dīligentiam discipulōrum

Digitized by Google

laudābit. 9. Mōrēs bonī et dīligentia ā magistrō laudābuntur. 10. Omnis Galliae sunt partēs trēs (*three*).

II. 1. Men dwell in the deep valleys of the mountains. 2. In summer they have flocks on the mountains. 3. Why do men call the eagle the king[1] of birds? 4. Do not keen hunters see the eagle from afar? 5. The enemy's ships plough the deep sea. 6. The robbers saw the ships with great terror.[2] 7. Solon was the author of many good laws. 8. In ancient states there were free men and slaves. 9. The memory of the wise Solon has been honored.

172. VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -entis, M. & F., *youth, young man.*
fōns, fontis, M., *source, spring.*
mōns, montis, M., *mountain.*
pars, partis, F., *part.*
sapiēns, -entis, adj., *wise.*

amnis, -is, M., *river* (**154**).
arbor, -ŏris, F., *tree.*
auctor, -ōris, M., *author.*
Belgae, -ārum, M., *the Belgians.*
classis, -is, F., *fleet* (**154**).
dīligentia, -ae, F., *diligence.*
fera, -ae, F., *wild beast.*
honōrō, 1, *honor.*
hostis, -is, M. & F., *enemy.*
ibi, adv., *there.*
inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among.*
latus, -eris, N., *side.* Cf. **lātus,** *broad.*
lēx, lēgis, F., *law.*
longē, adv., *afar, at a distance.*
mōs, mōris, M., *manner, custom.*
nam, conj., *for.*
ovis, -is, F., *sheep.*
pāstor, -ōris, M., *shepherd.*
perīculum, -ī, N., *danger, peril.*
profundus, -a, -um, adj., *deep.*
regiō, -ōnis, F., *region.*
rēgnō, 1, *be king, rule, reign.*
rūpēs, -is, F., *rock, cliff.*
silva, -ae, F., *wood, forest.*
Solōn, -ōnis, M., *Solon,* an Athenian lawgiver.
suāvis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.*
vēnātor, -ōris, M., *hunter.*
vulpēs, -is, F., *fox.*

amnis, *a large, deep river;* not the common prose word for *river.*
flūmen (**203**), general word for *river; flowing,* as opposed to *still water,* as a lake or pond.
fluvius (**84**), not different from **flūmen,** but much less used.

hostis, general word for *enemy: a public enemy, enemy in war.*
inimīcus (**78**), *a private or personal enemy;* opposed to **amīcus.**

[1] Predicate accusative. [2] See **144, 145.**

Digitized by Google

COLLOQUIUM

173. *Translate into Latin:* —

Father and Son

F. Tell me (*mihi*) about Solon, if you please (*sī placet*).

S. Solon was a wise Athenian (*Athēniēnsis*); his (*ējus*) laws were famous, and his memory will always be honored. He was the friend of poor men (*pauperum*). He saw many lands and many men. He did not fear Pisistratus the despot (*tyrannum*).

F. Was Miltiades also (*quoque*) an Athenian?

S. Certainly; he overcame the Persians (*Persās*) in the battle of Marathon.[1] He was a brave and skilful leader. He had a brave son.

CHAPTER XXII

REVIEW

174. Decline together **gladius ācer,** *sharp sword;* **cōnsilium ūtile,** *useful counsel;* **aquila celeris,** *swift eagle;* **animal vēlōx,** *fleet animal.* See **179**.

175. Examples of the locative case in the third declension are: **Carthāginī,** or **Carthāgine,** *at Carthage;* **rūrī,** *in the country.*

176. *Affix the proper terminations to the adjectives in the following, and translate:* —

1. Equō celer-, equōrum vēlōc-, equīs vēlōc-. 2. Puella trīst-, puellae trīst-, puellam trīst-, puellārum prūdent-. 3. Gladiīs ācr-, gladiōs ācr-, gladium ācr-. 4. Librō ūtil-, librōrum ūtil-, librum ūtil-. 5. Dōnum ūtil-, dōna ūtil-, dōnī ūtil-. 6. Servī fidēl-, servō fidēl-, servōs fidēl-, servīs fidēl-.

[1] *Of Marathon,* **Marathōnius, -a, -um.**

Digitized by Google

177. EXERCISES

I. 1. Equī sunt celerēs. 2. Proelium equestre fuit. 3. Virī fortēs laudantur. 4. Virum fortem laudāmus. 5. Omne initium est difficile. 6. Bella sunt trīstia. 7. Cōnsilium ducis audāx fuit. 8. Vetus vīnum est bonum. 9. Ācris et vēlōx est aquila. 10. Multa animālia vītās brevēs habent.

II. 1. The soldiers have keen weapons. 2. I have a swift horse. 3. We praise brave men. 4. Do you like sweet food? 5. The lessons are not hard. 6. The plans of the commander are sagacious. 7. Life is short. 8. There are swift eagles in the mountains. 9. The king has bold sailors. 10. The wings of the swift eagle are long.

178. EXERCISES

Write out the whole of **177.** I in Latin, changing singulars to plurals and plurals to singulars. Thus, 4 will be **virōs fortēs laudō.**

Turn II into Latin, first changing the sentences as directed above in regard to I.

179. VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, eager.*
brevis, -e, adj., *short.*
celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick, fleet, swift.*
difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard.*
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *equestrian.*
fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful.*
initium, -ī, N., *beginning.*
tēlum, -ī, N., *weapon.*
trīstis, -e, adj., *sad.*
ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful.*
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet.*
vīta, -ae, F., *life.*

celer, *quick,* with the added notion of *eagerness* or *energy.*
vēlōx, *swift,* sometimes implying *nimbleness.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION

180. Ĕ-Verbs

Regō (stem **rege**), *rule.*

Principal Parts: **regō, regĕre, rēxi,**[1] **rēctum.**[2]

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		Present	
I rule, etc.		*I am ruled, etc.*	
reg **ō**	reg **imus**	reg **or**	reg **imur**
reg **is**	reg **itis**	reg **eris,** *or* **-re**	reg **iminī**
reg **it**	reg **unt**	reg **itur**	reg **untur**
		Imperfect	
I was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled, etc.*	
reg **ēbam**	reg **ēbāmus**	reg **ēbar**	reg **ēbāmur**
reg **ēbās**	reg **ēbātis**	reg **ēbāris,** *or* **-re**	reg **ēbāminī**
reg **ēbat**	reg **ēbant**	reg **ēbātur**	reg **ēbantur**
		Future	
I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled, etc.*	
reg **am**	reg **ēmus**	reg **ar**	reg **ēmur**
reg **ēs**	reg **ētis**	reg **ēris,** *or* **-re**	reg **ēminī**
reg **et**	reg **ent**	reg **ētur**	reg **entur**
		Perfect	
I have ruled, etc.		*I have been ruled, etc.*	
rēx **ī**	rēx **imus**	rēct **us** { **sum**	rēct **ī** { **sumus**
rēx **istī**	rēx **istis**	rēct **us** { **es**	rēct **ī** { **estis**
rēx **it**	rēx **ērunt,** *or* **-re**	rēct **us** { **est**	rēct **ī** { **sunt**
		Pluperfect	
I had ruled, etc.		*I had been ruled, etc.*	
rēx **eram**	rēx **erāmus**	rēct **us** { **eram**	rēct **ī** { **erāmus**
rēx **erās**	rēx **erātis**	rēct **us** { **erās**	rēct **ī** { **erātis**
rēx **erat**	rēx **erant**	rēct **us** { **erat**	rēct **ī** { **erant**

[1] **Rēxī** for **reg-si.** See p. 1, note 2. [2] **Rēctum** for **reg-tum.**

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have ruled, etc.		*I shall have been ruled, etc.*	
rēx erō	**rēx erĭmus**	**rēct us erō**	**rēct ī erimus**
rēx erĭs	**rēx erĭtis**	**rēct us eris**	**rēct ī eritis**
rēx erit	**rēx erint**	**rēct us erit**	**rēct ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE[1]

PRESENT			
reg am	**reg āmus**	**reg ar**	**reg āmur**
reg ās	**reg ātis**	**reg āris**, *or* **-re**	**reg āminī**
reg at	**reg ant**	**reg ātur**	**reg antur**
IMPERFECT			
reg erem	**reg erēmus**	**reg erer**	**reg erēmur**
reg erēs	**reg erētis**	**reg erēris**, *or* **-re**	**reg erēminī**
reg eret	**reg erent**	**reg erētur**	**reg erentur**
PERFECT			
rēx erim	**rēx erĭmus**	**rēct us sim**	**rēct ī sīmus**
rēx erĭs	**rēx erĭtis**	**rēct us sīs**	**rēct ī sītis**
rēx erit	**rēx erint**	**rēct us sit**	**rēct ī sint**
PLUPERFECT			
rēx issem	**rēx issēmus**	**rēct us essem**	**rēct ī essēmus**
rēx issēs	**rēx issētis**	**rēct us essēs**	**rēct ī essētis**
rēx isset	**rēx issent**	**rēct us esset**	**rēct ī essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	
reg e, *rule thou.*	**reg ere**, *be thou ruled.*
reg ite, *rule ye.*	**reg iminī**, *be ye ruled.*
FUTURE	
reg itō, *thou shalt rule.*	**reg itor**, *thou shalt be ruled.*
reg itō, *he shall rule.*	**reg itor**, *he shall be ruled.*
reg itōte, *ye shall rule.*	
reg untō, *they shall rule.*	**reg untor**, *they shall be ruled.*

[1] See p. 26, note.

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. reg **ere**, *to rule.*	reg **ī**, *to be ruled.*
PERF. rēx **isse**, *to have ruled.*	rēct **us esse**, *to have been ruled.*
FUT. rēct **ūrus esse**, *to be about to rule.*	rēct **um īrī**, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. reg **ēns, -entis**, *ruling.*	PRES. ———
FUT. rēct **ūrus, -a, -um**, *about to rule.*	GER. reg **endus, -a, -um**, *to be ruled.*
PERF. ———	PERF. rēct **us, -a, -um**, *having been ruled.*

GERUND

G. reg **endī**, *of ruling.*
D. reg **endō**, *for ruling.*
Ac. reg **endum**, *ruling.*
Ab. reg **endō**, *by ruling.*

SUPINE

Ac. rēct **um**, *to rule.* Ab. rēct **ū**, *to rule, to be ruled.*

CHAPTER XXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION

181. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **regō**.

182. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Regitis, regēbātis, regētis. 2. Regitur, regēbātur, regētur. 3. Regō, regēbam, regam. 4. Reguntur, regēbantur, regentur. 5. Regere, regī. 6. Regite, regere. 7. Regis, regeris. 8. Regimus, regimur. 9. Regit, regitur. 10. Regitis, regiminī.

II. 1. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 2. To be ruled, to rule. 3. They rule, they were ruling, they will

Digitized by Google

rule. 4. We rule, we are ruled. 5. We shall rule, we shall be ruled. 6. You are ruling, you were ruling, you will rule. 7. Rule (thou), be (thou) ruled. 8. He is ruling, he is ruled. 9. They ruled, they were ruled. 10. I rule, I ruled, I shall rule.

183. EXERCISES

Scrībō,[1] *write*, **mittō,**[1] *send*; **emō,**[1] *buy*.

I. 1. Scrībis, mittis, emis. 2. Mittitur, scrībitur, emitur. 3. Nōnne mittēbās? nōnne scrībēbant? nōnne emēbam? 4. Scrībētur, mittēbantur, ementur. 5. Mitte, scrībite, emite. 6. Emere, scrībere, mittere. 7. Nōn mittunt, nōn scrībitis, nōn emet. 8. Scrībamne? emuntne? mittimusne? 9. Mitteris, mittēris, scrībētur. 10. Scrībī, mittī, emī.

II. 1. He writes, he is sent, they buy. 2. Is it written? does he send? are they bought? 3. I shall buy, thou wilt send, he will write. 4. It will not be written, we shall not be sent, thou wilt not be bought. 5. To write, to send, to buy. 6. Write, send, buy. 7. We are sent, they were bought, it is (being) written. 8. They write, they will buy, they were sending. 9. I was writing, we were sending, I shall buy. 10. You are sent, it was (being) written, they are bought.

184. EXERCISES

I. 1. Imperātor multās urbēs vincet. 2. Multae terrae ab Rōmānīs regēbantur. 3. Omnem mundum regit Deus. 4. Dux Rōmānus ex Graeciā in Ītaliam portābat multās statuās. 5. Virī fortēs timōre nōn vincuntur. 6. Pābulum mīlitibus[2] emētur. 7. Hannibal mīlitēs trāns Alpēs dūcēbat.

[1] For principal parts, see 186.

[2] What would be the meaning of ā mīlitibus?

Digitized by Google

8. Trāns fluvium erat parva urbs. 9. Urbs ā cīvibus dēfendēbātur. 10. Nautae, ē nāvī dēscendite.

II. 1. The commander writes a letter. 2. Letters are written by the commander. 3. Hannibal was leading his soldiers into Italy. 4. The citizens are defended by their[1] leaders. 5. Cæsar conquered all his enemies. 6. Rome will be defended by the citizens. 7. Drive the sheep into the fields. 8. There are many robbers in the city. 9. Near the town is a broad valley. 10. Come down out of the tower.

185. EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis mundus ā Deō regitur. 2. Puerīs librōs emam. 3. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidī ā Caesaris mīlitibus vincentur. 4. In Āfricā servī emuntur. 5. Hieme multa animālia in vallēs dēscendunt. 6. Agricolae in urbem ovēs agent. 7. Omnēs canēs ex urbe agēmus. 8. Epistulam dē bellō scrībēbam. 9. Puer epistulam dē pēnsīs scrībēbat. 10. Poēta bonus poēmata bona scrībet.

II. 1. The king's brothers send soldiers into Greece. 2. I will send my brother's son into Africa. 3. You will be sent into Sicily. 4. Send men across the river. 5. The city was defended with[2] great bravery by all the citizens. 6. Pyrrhus led many men across the sea into Italy. 7. In[3] winter many animals are overcome by hunger. 8. The farmers are buying food for their sheep. 9. Strong men were driving the white horses into the river. 10. The good shepherd leads his sheep.

[1] See **100**.

[2] Is it necessary to translate *with* by cum? See examples and rule, **144**, **145**.

[3] Is *in* to be separately expressed in Latin? See fifth sentence above, and examples and rule, **135**, **136**.

Digitized by Google

186. VOCABULARY

agō, 3, **ēgī**, **āctum**, *drive, lead.*
dē-fendō, 3, **-dī**, **-sum**, *defend.*
dē-scendō, 3, **-dī**, **-sum**, *descend, go down, come down.*
dūcō, 3, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *lead.*
emō, 3, **ēmī**, **ēmptum**, *buy.*
mittō, 3, **mīsī**, **missum**, *send.*
scrībō, 3, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptum**, *write.*
sūmō, 3, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, *take.*
vincō, 3, **vīcī**, **victum**, *conquer.*
Caesar, **-ăris**, M., *Cæsar.*
canis, **-is**, M. & F., *dog* (**153**).
cīvis, **-is**, M. & F., *citizen.*
dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning, about.*
epistula, **-ae**, F., *letter.*
famēs, **-is**, F., *hunger, famine.*
hiems, **hiemis**, F., *winter.*
latrō, **-ōnis**, M., *robber.*
mundus, **-ī**, M., *world, universe.*
prope, prep. w. acc., *near.*
trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond.*

superō (**102**), *to have the upper hand, surpass, conquer.*
vincō, *to get the mastery, vanquish, conquer.*
What difference do you make out from a comparison of the meanings?

187. COLLOQUIUM

CHARŌN ET MERCURIUS

Ch. Salvē, Ō Mercurī!
hail
M. Et tū, salvē, portitor.
ferryman
Ch. Mercurī, dūcisne hodiē multōs mānēs?
souls
M. Hodiē mānium dūcō numerum māgnum. Trīste est officium meum. Ithaca tibi procul dubiō nōta est atque Ulixēs.
sad duty without doubt known
Ch. Rēctē dīxistī. Ithaca est īnsula inter Graeciam et Ītaliam sita; et mihi nōtus est Ulixēs, nam ipse ōlim hūc vēnit.
you have said situated himself formerly hither came
M. Jam aspice mānēs procerum et servōrum īnfidōrum. Hī omnēs ab Ulixe necātī sunt.
now see chiefs unfaithful these
Ch. Istud mihi placet. Mānēs in cymbā trānsveham. Valē, Mercurī.
that boat carry over
M. Et tū valē, Charōn.

Digitized by Google

188. FOR TRANSLATION[1]

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō mājor,[2] adulēscēns[3] septendecim annōrum, ad Tīcīnum flūmen patrem vulnerātum servāvit. In pūgnā Cannēnsī fortiter dīmicāvit. Posteā Carthāginem Novam, urbem in Hispāniā Poenōrum fīrmissimam, expūgnāvit. Obsidēs Hispānōrum benīgnē tractāvit et lībertāte dōnāvit.[4] Nōn minus fēlīciter Scīpiō in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenōs ita ursit[5] ut Hannibalem ex Ītaliā revocārent.[6] Ad Zamam Scīpiōnis et Hannibalis exercitūs[7] castra habuērunt; clārum est illud colloquium, quod Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, et Scīpiō, cōnsul Rōmānus, ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scīpiōne superātī fugātīque sunt. Scīpiō triumphum māgnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populō Āfricānus appellātus est.

CHAPTER XXV

THIRD CONJUGATION

189. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **regō**.

190. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint. 3. Rēxisse, rēctus esse. 4. Rēctum est, rēctum erat, rēctum erit. 5. Rēxistī, rēxerās, rēxeris. 6. Rēximus,

[1] For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

[2] *The elder.*

[3] *When a youth.*

[4] *Presented them with their liberty = set them free.*

[5] From **urgeō**; **ita ursit**, *pressed so hard.*

[6] **Ut . . . revocārent**, *that they recalled.*

[7] Nom. plur., subject of **habuērunt**.

Digitized by Google

rēctī sumus. 7. Rēxistis, rēctī estis. 8. Rēxī, rēxeram, rēxerō. 9. Rēxerant, rēctī erant. 10. Rēcta est, rēcta erat, rēcta erit.

II. 1. I have ruled, I had ruled, I shall have ruled. 2. I have ruled, I have been ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. You ruled, you had ruled, you will have ruled. 5. He will have ruled, he will have been ruled. 6. To have been ruled, to have ruled. 7. They had ruled, they had been ruled. 8. She has ruled, she has been ruled. 9. It was ruled, it had been ruled, it will have been ruled. 10. They (*neut.*) were ruled, they had been ruled, they will have been ruled.

191. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūxit, ēmerit, sūmpserit. 2. Ēmit,[1] dūxistī, sūmpsī. 3. Sūmptus est, ductae sumus, ēmpta sunt. 4. Eratne ductus? erantne ēmptae? eratne sūmptum? 5. Dūxerimus, sūmpseritis, ēmerint. 6. Nōnne dūximus? nōnne ēmerāmus? nōnne ēmerimus? 7. Dūxistī, ēmērunt, sūmpsimus. 8. Ducta est, ēmptum est, sūmpta erat. 9. Dūxisse, ēmisse, sūmpsisse. 10. Nōn dūxeram, nōn ēmerātis, nōn sūmpserō.

II. 1. She had been led, it has been bought, they (*neut.*) will have been taken. 2. I have taken, you have bought, he has led. 3. Has it not been taken? had he not been led? have they (*neut.*) not been bought? 4. I had led, you had bought, he had taken. 5. They will have taken, I shall have led, thou wilt have bought. 6. I was led, it was bought, it had been taken. 7. To have been led, to have been bought, to have been taken. 8. We shall have taken, I shall have bought, he will have led. 9. Did he take? didst thou buy? did you lead? 10. They did not lead, you had not bought, she will not have taken.

[1] How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

Digitized by Google

192. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs vīcimus. 2. Hostēs territī victīque sunt. 3. Horātius oculum in proeliō āmīserat. 4. Ō patria, vīcistī īram meam. 5. Scīpiō in Hispāniam missus est. 6. Spartacus, dux gladiātōrum, cōnsulēs Rōmānōs vīcit. 7. Gallia inter Pyrēnaeōs montēs et Rhēnum posita est.[1] 8. Metellus bellum in Hispāniā gessit. 9. Quid timēs? Caesarem vehis. 10. Bellum ā Pyrrhō in Ītaliā gestum est. 11. Ā Spartacō, duce gladiātōrum, cōnsulēs Rōmānī victī sunt.

II. 1. Have you lost your books? 2. My brother will sail[2] in a small ship. 3. Do men live in trees? 4. Neptune ruled (over) the deep sea. 5. A river flows out of the mountain. 6. The girl's head was encircled with flowers. 7. War has been waged in Italy. 8. A lazy boy is often despised. 9. The ancient Romans did not despise war. 10. The king had surrounded the city with walls. 11. Did not Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, wage war in Italy?

193. EXERCISES

I. 1. Avēs multae in arboribus vīvunt. 2. Virī fortēs urbem templaque deōrum dēfendērunt. 3. Dux trāns mare in nāvī vectus est. 4. Tyrannī ā virīs fortibus contemptī sunt. 5. Pōnite pedēs in rūpem. 6. Virgō ā templō tracta erat. 7. Hannibal ā Scīpiōne victus est. 8. Caesar mīlitēs in equōs posuit. 9. Oppidum mūrō altō cīnctum erat. 10. Oppidānī oppidum mūrō altō cīnxērunt. 11. Inter montem et oppidum fluēbat fluvius lātus. 12. Bellum in Hispāniā ā Metellō imperātōre Rōmānō gestum est.

II. 1. A large fleet was bought with gold by Cæsar. 2. The general's daughter had been carried in a wagon.

[1] Posita est, *is situated.* [2] Future passive of vehō.

Digitized by Google

3. The commander had carried on war against his enemies. 4. All the property[1] of the enemy has been lost. 5. Many men live by agriculture. 6. We went away from Italy to[2] Sicily. 7. My brother has departed from his native land. 8. Have they lost their books? 9. Have not men always despised tyrants? 10. The boys rode on horseback[3] with great pleasure.[4] 11. The farmer's cart is drawn by strong horses. 12. My books have been lost.

194. VOCABULARY

ā-mittō, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *lose.*
cingō, 3, **cīnxī**, **cīnctum**, *bind, encircle, surround.*
con-temnō, 3, **-tempsī**, **-temptum**, *despise.*
dis-cēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, *depart.*
fluō, 3, **flūxī**, **fluxum**, *flow.*
gerō, 3, **gessī**, **gestum**, *carry on, wage (war).*
pōnō, 3, **posuī**, **positum**, *put, place.*
trahō, 3, **-xī**, **-ctum**, *drag, draw.*
vehō, 3, **vēxī**, **vectum**, *carry, draw.*
vīvō, 3, **vīxī**, **vīctum**, *live.*

carrus, **-ī**, M., *cart, wagon.*
contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*
Gallia, **-ae**, F., *Gaul.*
gladiātor, **-ōris**, M., *gladiator.*
Hispānia, **-ae**, F., *Spain.*
Horātius, **-ī**, M., *Horatius* (**79**).
Metellus, **-ī**, M., *Metellus*, a Roman general.
patria, **-ae**, F., *native land.*
Pyrēnaeus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Pyrenean, Pyrenees.*
-que (enclitic[5]), conj., *and.*
Rhēnus, **-i**, M., *the Rhine.*
Scīpiō, **-ōnis**, M., *Scipio*, a Roman general.
Spartacus, **-ī**, M., *Spartacus*, a gladiator.
virgō, **-inis**, F., *maiden, girl.*

habitō (**161**), trans. and intrans., *live*, in the sense of *dwell, inhabit*, with reference to place.

vīvō, intrans., *have life, live*, often with reference to some condition or circumstance other than place.

[1] *Goods.* See **117**.
[2] *Into.* See **52**.
[3] Ride on horseback = *be carried on a horse.*
[4] See **145**.
[5] *I.e.*, appended to some word, as in **192**. I. 2.

Digitized by Google

195. **COLLOQUIUM**

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Carthāginiēnsis?
Carthaginian

D. Fuit Carthāginiēnsis et ā Scīpiōne victus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?
where

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr *fuit?* cūr nōn *est* in Āfricā?
why

D. Quia Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne dēlēta est.
was destroyed

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?
how many

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō.
three

P. Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen *Pūblius; Cornēlius* nōmen
first name

gentīle; *Scīpiō* cōgnōmen.
family cognomen

D. Nōnne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō *Āfricānus?*
sometimes was called

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dīcēbant Rōmānī
this moreover

cōgnōmen secundum.

CHAPTER XXVI

REVIEW

196. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Dēfendite, cīvēs, cīvitātem. 2. Cīvitās est māter nostra. 3. Cīvēs sunt frātrēs nostrī. 4. Puerī, frātrēs amāte. 5. Ōrnāte, cīvēs, urbem monumentīs statuīsque. 6. Urbēs pulchrae in Ītaliā videntur. 7. Habitāsne in urbe pulchrā? 8. Urbs Rōma[1] mūrō cīncta est. 9. Rōma ā cīvibus cum fortitūdine dēfēnsa est. 10. Mīlitēs Rōmānī erant fortēs.

[1] See 157, 158.

Digitized by Google

II. 1. The citizens are defenders of the state. 2. Roman mothers furnished brave heroes for the state. 3. Do you write letters to your brothers? 4. From[1] springs in the mountains the rivers flow. 5. The city will be adorned with golden[2] statues. 6. In Greece we do[3] not see many beautiful cities. 7. The city is defended by watchful guards. 8. A high wall encircles the farmer's field. 9. We shall remain near Cæsar's camp. 10. We teach our children by means of stories.[4]

197. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cōnsulēs ā Pyrrhō victī sunt. 2. Urbs ā cōnsulibus dēfendētur. 3. Fīliī rēgis audācis sunt cīvitātis dēfēnsōrēs. 4. Clāmōribus mīlitum nostrōrum territī sunt hostēs. 5. Mīlitēs in urbe nostrā nōn saepe vidēmus. 6. In montibus et silvīs vīvunt aprī. 7. Malī[5] poenae timōre coercentur. 8. Lēgibus patriae omnēs[6] coercēmur. 9. Fluvius oppidum cingit. 10. Mōrēs malī ab hominibus bonīs contemnuntur.

II. 1. Who defeated the Roman consuls? 2. The consul was besieging a city of Spain. 3. We all have seen the pleasant light of the moon. 4. The sad maidens were sitting near a deep river. 5. The maidens were weeping because they had lost their flowers. 6. The boars are descending headlong into the sea. 7. Soldiers are not often seen in our streets. 8. The ancient city of Rome[7] was ruled by kings. 9. The shepherd's son will weep if he loses (shall have lost) a sheep. 10. The teacher was teaching his pupils[8] the poems of Homer.

[1] ē rather than ā.
[2] See page 37, note 1.
[3] See page 14, note 1.
[4] See **90** and **91**.
[5] See **117**.
[6] **Omnēs** agrees with the understood subject of **coercēmur**.
[7] *The city of Rome = the city Rome.* See **157, 158**.
[8] Accusative. See page 54, n. 2.

Digitized by Google

198. VOCABULARY

fābula, -ae, F., *story, tale, fable.*
frāter, -tris, M., *brother.*
māter, -tris, F., *mother.*
omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, whole.*
praeceps, -cipitis, adj., *headlong.*
trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy.*

199. FOR TRANSLATION[1]

PRŌSERPĪNA

Prōserpina, Cereris fīlia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in campīs flōrēs carpēbat, serta nectēbat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campī ibi flōribus pulchrīs sparsī[2] sunt. Subitō terra concussa[3] est atque Plūtō, Inferōrum deus, ē terrā ēmersit;[4] ējus currum equī ātrī vehēbant. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et Inferōrum rēgīna esset;[5] clāmōrem puellae compressit.[6] Juppiter autem frātrī permīserat ut Prōserpinam abdūceret.[7] Māter, cum[8] īgnōrāret ubi fīlia esset,[9] tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

[*Continued on page* 92.]

CHAPTER XXVII

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

200. The following adjectives have *īus* (rarely *ĭus*) in the genitive singular of all genders, and *ī* in the dative:

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*
nūllus, -a, -um, *no one, none, no.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole.*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one, alone.*

[1] For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.
[2] From **spargō.**
[3] From **concutiō.**
[4] From **ēmergō.**
[5] **Ut . . . esset,** *that she might be.*
[6] From **comprimō.**
[7] **Ut . . . abdūceret,** *that he might lead away = to lead away.*
[8] **Cum īgnōrāret,** *since she did not know.*
[9] *Was.*

Digitized by Google

alter, altera, alterum, *the other* of two.
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* of two.
uter, utra, utrum, *which* of two?
uterque, utrăque, utrumque, *each* of two, *both*.

201. PARADIGM

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ali us	ali a	ali ud	ali ī	ali ae	ali a
G.	alī us	alī us	alī us	ali ōrum	ali ārum	ali ōrum
D.	ali ī	ali ī	ali ī	ali īs	ali īs	ali īs
Ac.	ali um	ali am	ali ud	ali ōs	ali ās	ali a
Ab.	ali ō	ali ā	ali ō	ali īs	ali īs	ali īs

202. EXERCISES

I. 1. Virtūs sōla vēram dat voluptātem. 2. Alius[1] aliud dīxit. 3. In utram partem[2] fluit flūmen? 4. Alter[3] Graecus, alter[3] Rōmānus erat. 5. Utrī cōnsulī dat cīvitās tōtam laudem? Neutrī. 6. Aliī[4] virtūte, aliī[4] dolīs hostēs superant.[5] 7. Ūnīus hominis mors tōtam urbem servāvit. 8. Alterī discipulō laudem, alterī culpam dat[5] praeceptor. 9. Nūllīus precibus cēdēmus. 10. Ā Cicerōne ūnō urbs servāta est.

II. 1. The farmer was ploughing his field alone. 2. He is praised by one, blamed by another. 3. To which of the two does the teacher give the praise? 4. Some like[6] boys, others like girls. 5. Death is feared by no good man. 6. The consul conquered some of his enemies, by others he

[1] Literally, *another said another thing*. The English of it is, *one said one thing, another another*.

[2] *Into which part?* i.e., *in which direction?*

[3] **Alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other*.

[4] **Aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others*; **aliud . . . aliud,** *one thing . . . another thing*.

[5] This sentence illustrates a common usage of the Latin. A verb belonging to two groups of words is often placed only with the last, and must be mentally supplied with the first. With the English it is the reverse. Show the application of the remark.

[6] See note 5.

Digitized by Google

was conquered. 7. One leg is long, the other short. 8. Some praise one thing, others another. 9. The plan of the whole war was disclosed to the enemy. 10. The citizens praised Cicero alone.

203. VOCABULARY

brevis, -e, adj., *short.*
cēdō, 3, **cessī, cessum**, *yield.*
Cicerō, -ōnis, M., *Cicero*, a Roman orator.
crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*
culpa, -ae, F., *blame, fault.*
dolus, -ī, M., *trick, deceit.*
ē-nūntiō, 1, *disclose, announce.*
flūmen, -inis, N., *river* (**172**).
laus, laudis, F., *praise.*
mors, mortis, F., *death.*
praeceptor, -ōris, M., *teacher.*
precēs, -um, F., (plur.), *prayers, entreaty.*
ratiō, -ōnis, F., *plan, method, reason.*
servō, 1, *save, preserve.*
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true.*
virtūs, -ūtis, F., *virtue, courage.*

204. COLLOQUIUM

Praeceptor et Discipulus

D. Quis fuit Cicerō?
P. Clārus cōnsul Rōmānus fuit.
D. Multane bella gessit?
P. Minimē. Ōrātor fuit; dux mīlitum semel.
D. Nōnne ējus ōrātiōnēs in scholā legimus?
his once only read
P. Complūrēs. Multās epistulās quoque scrīpsit Cicerō.
several also
D. Ad quōs epistulās scrīpsit?
whom
P. Ad frātrem et amīcōs.
D. Fuitne *Cicerō* ējus "nōmen"?[1]
P. Nōn fuit "nōmen," sed "cōgnōmen."
D. Quid fuit ējus "nōmen"?
P. *Tullius.*

[1] See 195.

Digitized by Google

D. Et praenōmen?

P. *Mārcus.*

D. Hōc, praeceptor ērudītissime, dīc mihi sī placet;
most learned tell
difficilēsne sunt Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs?
hard

P. Sine dubiō difficilēs sunt, puer autem ācer eās intellegere potest.
but them

CHAPTER XXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

205. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, change their terminations to express different degrees of quality: **altus, altior, altissimus,** *high, higher, highest.*

Adjectives may also be compared in Latin, as in English, by means of adverbs.

206. *Examine the following:* —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus (alto)	alt **ior**, alt **ius**	alt **issimus**, etc.
levis (levi)	lev **ior**, lev **ius**	lev **issimus**, etc.
prūdēns (prūdent)	prūdent **ior**, prūdent **ius**	prūdent **issimus**, etc.
pulcher (pulchro)	pulchr **ior**, pulchr **ius**	pulcher **rimus**, etc.
miser (misero)	miser **ior**, miser **ius**	miser **rimus**, etc.
ācer (ācri)	ācr **ior**, ācr **ius**	ācer **rimus**, etc.

Observe (1) that the comparative is formed in both the above groups by dropping the final vowel of the stem, if the stem ends in a vowel, and adding *ior, ius.*

(2) That the superlative is formed in the first group from the shortened stem by adding *issimus, issima, issimum.*

Digitized by Google

(3) But if the adjective ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus, rima, rimum*, to the positive.

207. Six adjectives in *lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *limus* to form the superlative:

facilis, -e, *easy*.	facil **ior**, facil **ius**	facil **limus**, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, *hard*.	difficil **ior**, difficil **ius**	difficil **limus**, -a, -um
similis, -e, *like*.	simil **ior**, simil **ius**	simil **limus**, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, *unlike*.	dissimil **ior**, dissimil **ius**	dissimil **limus**, -a, -um
humilis, -e, *low*.	humil **ior**, humil **ius**	humil **limus**, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, *slender*.	gracil **ior**, gracil **ius**	gracil **limus**, -a, -um

208. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, -a, -um	**melior**, -ius	**optimus**, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	**pējor**, -us	**pessimus**, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	**mājor**, -us	**māximus**, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	——, **plūs** [1]	**plūrimus**, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	**minor**, -us	**minimus**, -a, um
vetus	**vetustior**, -ius	**veterrimus**, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE

209. PARADIGM

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	altior	altius	altiōr **ēs**	altiōr **a**
G.	altiōr **is**	altiōr **is**	altiōr **um**	altiōr **um**
D.	altiōr **ī**	altiōr **ī**	altiōr **ibus**	altiōr **ibus**
Ac.	altiōr **em**	altius	altiōr **ēs, īs**	altiōr **a**
Ab.	altiōr **e, ī**	altiōr **e, ī**	altiōr **ibus**	altiōr **ibus**

Compare, and decline in the comparative: —

atrōx, -ōcis, *fierce*.	**līber**, -era, -erum, *free*.
audāx, -ācis, *bold*.	**piger**, pigra, pigrum, *lazy*.
celer, -eris, *swift*.	**placidus**, -a, -um, *calm*.
fēlīx, -īcis, *lucky*.	**sapiēns**, -entis, *wise*.

[1] **Plūs** has in singular only nom., gen. (**plūris**), and acc.; in plural, nom. **plūrēs, plūra**, gen. **plūrium**, etc.

Digitized by Google

210. EXERCISES

1. Of bolder soldiers. 2. For a bolder soldier. 3. On the highest tree. 4. The wisest king. 5. Of fiercer lions. 6. By a more lucky general. 7. With calmer joy. 8. Of a swifter horse. 9. For freer men. 10. Of wiser judges. 11. A deeper river. 12. Of deeper rivers. 13. In a deeper river. 14. For lazier boys.

211. We can say in Latin without difference in meaning:

1. **Quis est ēloquentior quam Cicerō?** } *Who is more eloquent*
2. **Quis est ēloquentior Cicerōne?** } *than Cicero?*

212. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam* (than) is omitted.**

But the ablative can take the place only of **quam** and the nominative, or **quam** and the accusative.

213. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fluviī altiōrēs sunt rīvīs, maria altissima[1] sunt. 2. In Āfricā sunt animālia atrōciōra quam in Americā. 3. Leōnēs sunt audācissimae bēstiae. 4. Elephantī sunt prūdentiōrēs leōnibus. 5. Gentēs Āfricae et Eurōpae sunt dissimillimae. 6. Pēnsum tuum facillimum, meum difficillimum est. 7. Rōma est Ītaliae urbs veterrima,[1] sed vetustiōrēs sunt in līitoribus colōniae Graecōrum. 8. Templa Graeca erant humillima. 9. Nihil est pējus quam mendācium. 10. Mendācium autem pējus pigritiā et īgnāviā est.

II. 1. A river is longer than a brook. 2. Seas are deeper than rivers. 3. The sources of great rivers are not always in high mountains. 4. Elephants bear heavier burdens than

[1] The superlative must often be translated by *very* with the positive.

Digitized by Google

horses. 5. The horse and the dog are very faithful. 6. Your dog is better than mine. 7. Not many cities are more beautiful than Rome. 8. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 9. Your task is easier than mine; but mine is not very hard. 10. The bravest men are not always the wisest.

214. VOCABULARY

America, -ae, F., *America.*
autem,[1] conj., *but, moreover.*
bēstia, -ae, F., *beast.*
colōnia, -ae, F., *colony.*
gēns, gentis, F., *nation, people.*
īgnāvia, -ae, F., *cowardice.*
lītus, -oris, N., *shore.*
mendācium, -ī, N., *lying.*
nihil, N. (indecl.), *nothing.*
pigritia, -ae, F., *laziness.*
quam, conj., *than.*
rīvus, -ī, M., *brook.*

"Proserpin gathering flowrs,
Herself a fairer flowr, by gloomy Dis
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world."

215. FOR TRANSLATION[2]

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōnspicit, audīvit quis fīliam abdūxisset.[3] Itaque statim iter ad Jovem[4] flēxit[5] et precibus animum ējus īnflēxit, ut fīlia ā Plūtōne remitterētur.[6] Juppiter id permīsit, sī jējūna mānsisset.[7] Sed cum[8] Prōserpina mālī Pūnicī septem grāna gustāvisset,[9] nōn licuit. Tandem Prōserpinae permissum est,[10] ut per partem annī dīmidiam apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud īnferōs esset.[11]

[1] Always placed after the first or second word in the sentence.
[2] Continued from page 86.
[3] *Had led away.*
[4] Nom. Jūppiter.
[5] From flectō.
[6] **Ut . . . remitterētur,** *that her daughter might be sent back.*
[7] *Had remained.*
[8] *Since.*
[9] *Had tasted.*
[10] *It was permitted = permission was given.*
[11] **Ut . . . esset,** *that she should be = to be.* For the order, see page 87, note 5.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXIX

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

216. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, and follow them in comparison.

217. *Examine the following:* —

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
grātus, *thankful.*	grāto	grāt ē, *thankfully.*
benīgnus, *kind.*	benīgno	benīgn ē, *kindly.*
miser, *wretched.*	misero	miser ē, *wretchedly.*
pulcher, *beautiful.*	pulchro	pulchr ē, *beautifully.*
fortis, *brave.*	forti	forti **ter**, *bravely.*
ācer, *eager.*	ācri	ācri **ter**, *eagerly.*
prūdēns, *wise.*	prūdent	prūden **ter**, *wisely.*
fēlīx, *lucky.*	fēlīci	fēlīci **ter**, *luckily.*

Observe (1) that the adjectives of the first group are of the *o* (or second) declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by changing the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

(2) That the adjectives of the second group are of the third declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by adding *ter*.

(3) But stems in *nt* drop *t* before adding the suffix *ter*.

218. *Examine the following:* –

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
multus, *much.*	**multum**, *much.*
facilis, *easy.*	**facile**, *easily.*
impūnis, *unpunished.*	**impūne**, *with safety.*
citus, *quick.*	**citō**, *quickly.*
subitus, *sudden.*	**subitō**, *suddenly.*
prīmus, *first.*	**prīmō**, *at first.*

Observe that in the first group the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used as an adverb; in the second, the ablative.

Digitized by Google

219. *Examine the following:* —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
grātē	**grātius**	**grātissimē**
miserē	**miserius**	**miserrimē**
ācriter	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**
fēlīciter	**fēlīcius**	**fēlīcissimē**
benĕ[1]	**melius**	**optimē**
malĕ	**pējus**	**pessimē**
multum	**plūs**	**plūrimum**
———	**magis**	**māximē**

Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is likewise.

Compare: —

placidē, *calmly.* **līberē**, *freely.* **pulchrē**, *beautifully.*
audācter, *boldly.* **celeriter**, *quickly.* **prūdenter**, *wisely.*

220. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ōlim fuit[2] Athēniēnsis clārissimus. 2. Fidēliter lēgibus[3] cīvitātis pārēbat. 3. Jūstē omnibus rēbus[4] agēbat. 4. Audācter pūgnāvit atque amīcum fortiter dēfendit. 5. Sapienter juvenēs aliōsque docēbat. 6. Falsō et turpiter accūsātus est; līberē sē[5] dēfendit neque timēbat. 7. Injūstissimē ad mortem damnātus est ā cīvibus. 8. Venēnum in carcere bibit placidē. 9. Ējus[6] memoria dēlēbitur nunquam. 10. Quis fuit Athēniēnsis?

II. 1. Was Socrates an illustrious Athenian? 2. Was he more illustrious than other citizens? 3. Did he not act

[1] Formed irregularly from **bonus**.
[2] *There was.*
[3] Observe the dative with **pāreō**.
[4] *Things.* See **260**.
[5] *Himself.*
[6] *Of him.*

Digitized by Google

most justly in all respects?[1] 4. Did he very[2] faithfully obey the laws of the Athenians? 5. Did he not teach the Athenians very wisely? 6. Did he not defend a young man in battle very bravely? 7. Why was he most basely accused and condemned to death? 8. We shall cherish his memory more diligently. 9. His memory will be cherished faithfully by the best men. 10. In vain shall we seek for a better man than Socrates.

III. 1. Julius Cæsar was a very famous man. 2. He was excellently brought up by his mother. 3. He learned the Greek language very well. 4. He was an illustrious general and fought many battles most successfully. 5. In Gaul he took towns, and cruelly slew many men. 6. He boldly sailed to Britain with many ships. 7. But the inhabitants did not basely beg for peace. 8. He quickly overcame all his enemies. 9. (As) consul he ruled the Roman state wisely and well. 10. He was foully slain by Brutus and other Romans.

221. VOCABULARY

crūdēliter [**crūdēlis**], *cruelly.*
dīligenter [**dīligēns**], *diligently.*
falsō [**falsus**], *falsely.*
fidēliter [**fidēlis**], *faithfully.*
frūstrā, *in vain.*
injūstē [**injūstus**], *unjustly.*
jūstē [**jūstus**], *justly.*
līberē [**līber**], *freely, fearlessly.*
ōlim, *formerly.*
optimē, *very well, excellently.*
sapienter [**sapiēns**], *wisely.*
turpiter [**turpis**], *basely, foully.*

accūsō, 1 [**ad, causa**], *accuse.*
Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., *Athenian.*
bibō, 3, **bibī, pōtum**, *drink.*
carcer, -eris, M., *prison.*
colō, 3, **coluī, cultum**, *cultivate, cherish, care for.*
damnō, 1, *condemn.*
discō, 3, **didicī**, ——, *learn.*
juvenis, -is, M. & F., *youth.*
lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language.*
nāvigō, 1 [**nāvis, agō**], *sail.*
necō, 1, *kill.* Cf. **interficiō.**
pāreō, 2, **-uī**, ——, *obey* (w. dat.).
pāx, pācis, F., *peace.*
petō, 3, **-īvī (-iī), -ītum**, *beg for, ask.*
quaerō, 3, **quaesīvī (-iī), quaesītum**, *seek for, ask, inquire.*
sed, conj., *but.* Cf. **autem (214).**
Sōcratēs, -is, M., *Socrates*, an Athenian philosopher.
venēnum, -ī, N., *poison.*

[1] Compare I. 3.

[2] See page 91, note.

Digitized by Google

222. COLLOQUIUM

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS

P. Quid, mī fīliole, in scholā hodiē discēbās?
little son

F. Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsum de adverbiīs longissimum.

P. Cuī partī ōrātiōnis est adverbium simillimum?
to what speech

F. Simillimum, ut opīnor, est adverbium adjectīvō.
as I think

P. Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris: Sī, ut dīcis, adverbium adjectīvō est simile, unde nōmen trāxit?
this explain if you can whence has derived

F. Fortasse propter hōc, quod saepissimē verbīs adjungitur.
perhaps on account of this because very often verbs

P. Optimē, fīliole; ēn tibi āssem!
here is for you penny

CHAPTER XXX

FOURTH CONJUGATION

223. Ī-VERBS

Audiō (stem **audī**), *hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum.**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
I hear, etc.		*I am heard, etc.*	
aud**iō**	aud**īmus**	aud**ior**	aud**īmur**
aud**īs**	aud**ītis**	aud**īris**, *or* -**re**	aud**īminī**
aud**it**	aud**iunt**	aud**ītur**	aud**iuntur**
IMPERFECT			
I was hearing, etc.		*I was heard, etc.*	
aud**iēbam**	aud**iēbāmus**	aud**iēbar**	aud**iēbāmur**
aud**iēbās**	aud**iēbātis**	aud**iēbāris**, *or* -**re**	aud**iēbāminī**
aud**iēbat**	aud**iēbant**	aud**iēbātur**	aud**iēbantur**

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
FUTURE			
I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard, etc.*	
aud iam	aud iēmus	aud iar	aud iēmur
aud iēs	aud iētis	aud iēris, *or* -re	aud iēminī
aud iet	aud ient	aud iētur	aud ientur
PERFECT			
I have heard, etc.		*I have been heard, etc.*	
audīv ī	audīv imus	audīt us { sum, es, est	audīt ī { sumus, estis, sunt
audīv istī	audīv istis		
audīv it	audīv ērunt, *or* -re		
PLUPERFECT			
I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard, etc.*	
audīv eram	audīv erāmus	audīt us { eram, erās, erat	audīt ī { erāmus, erātis, erant
audīv erās	audīv erātis		
audīv erat	audīv erant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard, etc.*	
audīv erō	audīv erĭmus	audīt us { erō, eris, erit	audīt ī { erimus, eritis, erunt
audīv erĭs	audīv erĭtis		
audīv erit	audīv erint		

SUBJUNCTIVE[1]

PRESENT			
aud iam	aud iāmus	aud iar	aud iāmur
aud iās	aud iātis	aud iāris, *or* -re	aud iāminī
aud iat	aud iant	aud iātur	aud iantur
IMPERFECT			
aud īrem	aud īrēmus	aud īrer	aud īrēmur
aud īrēs	aud īrētis	aud īrēris, *or* -re	aud īrēminī
aud īret	aud īrent	aud īrētur	aud īrentur
PERFECT			
audīv erim	audīv erĭmus	audīt us { sim, sīs, sit	audīt ī { sīmus, sītis, sint
audīv erĭs	audīv erĭtis		
audīv erit	audīv erint		

[1] See page 26, note.

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PLUPERFECT			
audīv **issem**	audīv **issēmus**	audīt **us** { **essem**	audīt **ī** { **essēmus**
audīv **issēs**	audīv **issētis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
audīv **isset**	audīv **issent**	**esset**	**essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

aud **ī**, *hear thou.*
aud **īte**, *hear ye.*

aud **īre** *be thou heard.*
aud **īminī**, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE

aud **ītō**, *thou shalt hear.*
aud **ītō**, *he shall hear.*
aud **ītōte**, *ye shall hear.*
aud **iuntō**, *they shall hear.*

aud **ītor**, *thou shalt be heard.*
aud **ītor**, *he shall be heard.*
aud **iuntor**, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE

PRES. aud **īre**, *to hear.*
PERF. audīv **isse**, *to have heard.*
FUT. audīt **ūrus esse**, *to be about to hear.*

aud **īrī**, *to be heard.*
audīt **us esse**, *to have been heard.*
audīt **um īrī**, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. aud **iēns, -entis**, *hearing.*
FUT. audīt **ūrus, -a, -um**, *about to hear.*
PERF.———

PRES. ———
GER. aud **iendus, -a, -um**, *to be heard.*
PERF. audīt **us, -a, -um**, *heard, having been heard.*

GERUND

G. aud **iendī**, *of hearing.*
D. aud **iendō**, *for hearing.*
Ac. aud **iendum**, *hearing.*
Ab. aud **iendō**, *by hearing.*

SUPINE

Ac. audīt **um**, *to hear.*
Ab. audīt **ū**, *to hear, to be heard.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXXI

FOURTH CONJUGATION

224. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **audiō**.

225. EXERCISES

I. 1. Audiō, audiēbam, audiam. 2. Audit, audiēbat, audiet. 3. Audītur, audiēbātur, audiētur. 4. Audī, audīre. 5. Audīmur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur. 6. Audīre, audīrī. 7. Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis. 8. Audīs, audīris. 9. Audiunt, audiuntur. 10. Audient, audientur.

II. 1. Thou hearest, thou wast hearing, thou wilt hear. 2. I hear, I am heard. 3. He is hearing, he was hearing, he will hear. 4. To be heard, to hear. 5. We were hearing, we were (being) heard. 6. We hear, we heard, we shall hear. 7. They will hear, they will be heard. 8. You heard, you were heard. 9. Hear (ye), be ye heard. 10. I hear, I heard, I shall be heard.

226. EXERCISES

Pūniō, *punish;* **mūniō,** *fortify;* **vestiō,** *clothe.*

I. 1. Pūniēbam, mūniēbam, vestiēbam. 2. Mūnītur, pūnītur, vestītur. 3. Pūniet, vestiet, mūniet. 4. Pūnī, mūnīte, vestīminī. 5. Vestiētur, pūniētur, mūniētur. 6. Nōnne pūnīmus? nōnne vestīmur? nōnne mūniuntur? 7. Vestiamne? pūnietne? mūniēturne? 8. Mūniēbant, pūniēbāminī, vestior. 9. Nōn vestīris, nōn pūnit, nōn mūniēmus. 10. Pūniar, mūniam, vestiēbāris.

II. 1. He was clothing, he was punishing, he was fortifying. 2. They will be clothed, they will be fortified, they will be punished. 3. Be thou clothed, punish (thou), fortify. 4. I fortify, he punishes, we are clothing. 5. Are you not being clothed? was it not fortified? will he not

Digitized by Google

be punished? 6. They are being punished, it is being fortified, thou wilt be clothed. 7. We punish, we were fortifying, they will clothe. 8. Were you being clothed? will it be fortified? shall I be punished? 9. I shall not fortify, you are not being clothed, they will not be punished. 10. I punished, you will fortify, they clothe.

227. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vēre terra grāmine et flōribus vestītur. 2. Vēre avium cantūs[1] audīmus. 3. Mors vītam nostram fīniet. 4. Puerī in grāmine dormiēbant. 5. Somnō mollīmus cūrās. 6. Canēs agricolārum ovēs custōdiunt. 7. Mīlitēs urbem custōdient. 8. Bellum ā Scīpiōne fīniētur. 9. Audīte verba sapientium. 10. Injūstē puer pūnītur.

II. 1. A good father will nurture, clothe, and instruct his children. 2. It is very[2] pleasant[3] to hear the sweet voice of the nightingale. 3. All our pains are ended by death. 4. The general justly punishes a cowardly soldier. 5. The sheep are carefully[4] guarded by the dog. 6. Scipio finished the war in Africa. 7. The pupils are very faithfully instructed by their teachers. 8. My son, soothe your mother's cares. 9. The city is fortified by strong walls. 10. In the summer the trees are clothed with leaves.

228. VOCABULARY

custōdiō, 4 [**custōs**], *guard.*
dormiō, 4, *sleep.*
ē-rŭdiō, 4 [**rudis**], *teach, instruct.*
fīniō, 4 [**fīnis**], *end, finish.*
molliō, 4 [**mollis**], *soften, soothe.*
mūniō, 4, *fortify, defend.*
nūtriō, 4, *nurture, nourish.*
pūniō, 4, *punish.*
vestiō, 4, *clothe.*
carmen, -inis, N., *song.*
dolor, -ōris, M., *pain.*
folium, -i, N., *leaf.*
grāmen, -inis, N., *grass.*
īgnāvus, -a, -um, adj., *cowardly.*
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant.*
luscinia, -ae, F., *nightingale.*
vēr, vēris, N., *spring.*
vōx, vōcis, F., *voice.*

[1] *Songs.* [2] See page 91, note. [3] Neuter gender. [4] See **144, 145.**

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXXII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

229. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **audiō**.

230. EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīvī, audīveram, audīverō. 2. Audītus est, audītus erat, audītus erit. 3. Audīvimus, audīverāmus, audīverimus. 4. Audīverant, audītī erant. 5. Audīvistī, audīverās, audīveris. 6. Audīvisse, audītus esse. 7. Audīverātis, audītī erātis. 8. Audīvit, audīverat, audīverit.

II. 1. Thou hast heard, thou hadst heard, thou wilt have heard. 2. They have been heard, they had been heard, they will have been heard. 3. I have heard, I have been heard. 4. To have been heard, to have heard. 5. We have heard, we had heard, we shall have heard. 6. We have been heard, we had been heard, we shall have been heard. 7. You have heard, you have been heard. 8. He had heard, he had been heard.

231. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fīnīveram, ērudīveram, vestīveram. 2. Fīnītum est, ērudītus sum, vestītus sum. 3. Nōnne fīnīta sunt? nōnne vestītus eram? nōnne ērudītus erō? 4. Vestīverās, ērudīverās, fīnīverās. 5. Fīnīveris, ērudītus eris, vestīverimus. 6. Vestītae erant, fīnīta erant, ērudītī erant. 7. Ērudīverātis, fīnīveram, vestīverint. 8. Vestītīne sumus? estne ērudītus? estne fīnītum? 9. Ērudīta es, fīnīstī,[1] vestierās.[2] 10. Nōn ērudīstis, nōn fīnīverātis, nōn vestīverit.

[1] For **fīnīvistī**. Perfects in **īvī** often drop **v** and contract **iī** to **ī**

[2] For **vestīverās**.

Digitized by Google

II. 1. Have they not been clothed? have they (*neut.*) not been finished? were they not taught? 2. We have finished, we have clothed, we have taught. 3. She had been taught, they (*neut.*) had been finished, we (*fem.*) had been clothed. 4. Didst thou teach? have you finished? has she clothed? 5. They had clothed, they will have taught, I have finished. 6. I had clothed, thou hadst taught, he had finished. 7. We shall not have finished, they will not have clothed, you will not have taught. 8. It was not finished, we had not been taught, you will not have been clothed. 9. You have taught, you had finished, you will have clothed. 10. I shall have clothed, I had taught, I finished.

232. EXERCISES

I. 1. Medicus rēgis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit.[1] 2. Fabricius medicum vinxit et ad dominum mīsit. 3. Urbs virtūte et fortitūdine mīlitum mūnīta erit. 4. Rōmānī artibus[2] et litterīs[2] ā Graecīs ērudītī sunt. 5. Octō hōrās dormīre puerīs satis est. 6. Lūce sōlis calōreque aperiuntur flōrēs. 7. Omnēs terrās fortibus virīs aperuit nātūra. 8. Mīlitēs arcem fidēliter custōdīvērunt. 9. Brūtus in castra Caesaris vēnerat. 10. Nihil scīre turpissimum est.

II. 1. The king's physician was bound by Fabricius' slave. 2. The valor and endurance (*fortitūdō*) of the soldiers fortified the city. 3. The Greeks instructed the Romans in the arts.[3] 4. Is it enough for a boy to sleep two hours?[4] 5. The light and heat of the sun had opened the flowers. 6. The citadel was very[5] carefully guarded by

[1] How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?
[2] *In the arts and literature.*
[3] Compare I. 4.
[4] **Duās hōrās.**
[5] See page 91, note.

Digitized by Google

the soldiers. 7. To know many things[1] is very useful. 8. To be ignorant of many things is not disgraceful. 9. The general's camp[2] had not been fortified. 10. Did you not hear the voice of your father?

233. VOCABULARY

aperiō, 4, **-uī**, **-tum**, *open, disclose.*
ne-sciō, 4, *know not, be ignorant of.*
sciō, 4, *know, know how.*
veniō, 4, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *come.*
vinciō, 4, **vinxī**, **vinctum**, *bind.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards.*
ars, **artis**, F., *art* (**167.** 2).
calor, **-ōris**, M., *heat.*
Fabricius, **-ī**, M., *Fabricius*, a Roman general.
litterae, **-ārum**, F., *letters, literature;* often = **epistula.**
lūx, **lūcis**, F., *light, daylight.*
medicus, **-ī**, M., *physician.*
nox, **noctis**, F., *night* (**167.** 2).
octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*
turpis, **-e**, adj., *base, disgraceful.*

234. COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Dē quā rē est pēnsum hodiernum?
D. Pēnsum hodiernum est iterum dē conjugātiōne quartā.
P. Herī quartam conjugātiōnem nesciēbās; scīsne hodiē?
D. Partim sciō, modum autem subjunctīvum nesciō.
partly mood
P. Mox subjunctīvum quoque discēs.
soon also
D. Estne ūtilius indicātīvum scīre quam subjunctīvum?
P. Utrumque dēbēmus scīre; indicātīvus autem saepius invenītur.
D. Adhūc conjugātiōnēs didicī quattuor. Suntne plūrēs?
thus far
P. Nōn plūrēs; sed multa verba sunt anōmala.
irregular

[1] See **117.**

[2] Remember that the Latin word for *camp* is plural, **castra, castrōrum.** What must be the number of the verb of which **castra** is the subject?

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION

235. VERBS IN *iō*[1]

Capiō (stem **cape**), *take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
I take, etc.		*I am taken, etc.*	
cap **iō**	cap **imus**	cap **ior**	cap **imur**
cap **is**	cap **itis**	cap **eris**, *or* **-re**	cap **iminī**
cap **it**	cap **iunt**	cap **itur**	cap **iuntur**
IMPERFECT			
I was taking, etc.		*I was taken, etc.*	
cap **iēbam**	cap **iēbāmus**	cap **iēbar**	cap **iēbāmur**
cap **iēbās**	cap **iēbātis**	cap **iēbāris**, *or* **-re**	cap **iēbāminī**
cap **iēbat**	cap **iēbant**	cap **iēbātur**	cap **iēbantur**
FUTURE			
I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken, etc.*	
cap **iam**	cap **iēmus**	cap **iar**	cap **iēmur**
cap **iēs**	cap **iētis**	cap **iēris**, *or* **-re**	cap **iēminī**
cap **iet**	cap **ient**	cap **iētur**	cap **ientur**
PERFECT			
cēp **ī**, cēp **istī**, cēp **it**, etc.		cap **tus sum, es, est**, etc.	
PLUPERFECT			
cēp **eram**, cēp **erās**, cēp **erat**, etc.		cap **tus eram, erās, erat**, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT			
cēp **erō**, cēp **eris**, cēp **erit**, etc.		cap **tus erō, eris, erit**, etc.	

[1] Verbs in *iō* of the third conjugation are distinguished from those of the fourth by the active infinitive present. What forms of **capiō** are like those of **audiō**? Make a general statement.

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
cap **iam**, cap **iās**, cap **iat**, etc.	cap **iar**, **-iāris** *or* **-re**, **-iātur**, etc.
IMPERFECT	
cap **erem**, cap **erēs**, cap **eret**, etc.	cap **erer**, **-erēris** *or* **-re**, **-erētur**
PERFECT	
cēp **erim**, cēp **erĭs**, cēp **erit**, etc.	cap **tus sim**, **sīs**, **sit**, etc.
PLUPERFECT	
cēp **issem**, cēp **issēs**, cēp **isset**, etc.	cap **tus essem**, **essēs**, **esset**, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	cap **e**, *take thou.*	cap **ere**, *be thou taken.*
	cap **ite**, *take ye.*	cap **iminĭ**, *be ye taken.*
FUT.	cap **ito**, *thou shalt take,* etc.	cap **itor**, *thou shalt be taken,* etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	cap **ere**, *to take.*	cap **ī**, *to be taken.*
PERF.	cēp **isse**, *to have taken.*	cap **tus esse**, *to have been taken.*
FUT.	cap **tūrus esse**, *to be about to take.*	cap **tum īrī**, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	cap **iēns**, *taking.*	PRES.	———
FUT.	capt **ūrus**, *about to take.*	GER.	cap **iendus**, *to be taken.*
PERF.	———	PERF.	capt **us**, *having been taken.*

GERUND

cap **iendī**, *of taking,* etc.

SUPINE

Ac.	capt **um**, *to take.*	Ab.	capt **ū**, *to take, to be taken.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION

236. Verbs in *iō*

Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **capiō**.

237. EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiunt, capiēbant. 2. Capior, capiēbar, capiar. 3. Capimur, capiēbāmur, capiēmur. 4. Capis, caperis. 5. Cēpī, captus sum. 6. Cēpimus, cēperāmus, cēperimus. 7. Capta sunt, capta erant, capta erunt. 8. Cape, capere. 9. Capere, capī. 10. Cēpisse, captus esse.

II. 1. We are taking, we were taking, we shall be taking. 2. Take, be taken. 3. Thou art taking, thou wast taking, thou wilt take. 4. You have taken, you had taken, you will have taken. 5. It is taken, it was taken, it will be taken. 6. I was taking, I was taken. 7. To take, to have taken. 8. To be taken, to have been taken. 9. It (*fem.*) has been taken, it had been taken, it will have been taken. 10. We have taken, we have been taken.

238. EXERCISES

I. 1. Tarentīnī lēgātīs Rōmānōrum injūriam fēcērunt. 2. Pyrrhus, Ēpīrī rēx, ad Tarentīnōs vēnit. 3. Contrā Pyrrhum missus est Laevīnus cōnsul. 4. Pyrrhus elephantīs vīcit, nam Rōmānōrum equī territī sunt et fugiēbant. 5. Nox proelī fīnem fēcit; Laevīnus per noctem fūgit. 6. Multī et fortēs Rōmānī in pūgnā interfectī sunt. 7. Captīvōs Rōmānōs summō in honōre habuit Pyrrhus. 8. Deinde[1] in Campāniam sē recēpit. 9. Lēgātī, ā Rōmānīs missī,[2]

[1] Pronounced de-in′-de. [2] *Sent.*

Digitized by Google

honōrificē ā Pyrrhō exceptī sunt. 10. Pāx cum Pyrrhō nōn facta[1] est.

II. 1. A wrong was done[1] to the Romans by the Tarentines. 2. Against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the Romans sent the consul Lævinus. 3. The spies of Pyrrhus were taken by Lævinus and led through his camp. 4. The Romans did not make peace with King Pyrrhus. 5. Fabricius saw through the design of the king and was not[2] frightened. 6. You will welcome your friend to-day. 7. I welcome my best friend with great pleasure.[3] 8. The enemy threw their spears and fled into the woods. 9. Did not Cæsar either conquer or slay all his enemies? 10. Finally he was himself (*ipse*) slain by Brutus his friend, and others.

239. VOCABULARY

ex-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī, -ceptum** [**capiō**], *catch, accept, welcome.*
faciō,[1] 3, **fēcī, factum**, *make, do.*
fugiō, 3, **fūgī, fugitum**, *flee.*
inter-ficiō, 3, **-fēcī, -fectum** [**faciō**], *kill, slay.* Cf. **necō** (**221**).
jaciō, 3, **jēcī, jactum**, *throw.*
per-spiciō, 3, **-spēxī, -spectum** [**speciō**], *see through, into.*
re-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī, -ceptum** [**capiō**], *take back, get again, receive.*
sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat.*

aut . . . aut, conj., *either . . . or.*
Campānia, -ae, F., *Campania*, a division of Italy.
contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*
de-inde, adv., *then, next.*
dēnique, adv., *finally.*
explōrātor, -ōris, M., *scout, spy.*
fīnis, -is, M., *end.*
honor, -ōris, M., *honor.*
honōrificē, adv., *honorably.*
injūria, -ae, F., *wrong, injury.*
Laevīnus, -ī, M., *Lævinus*, a Roman.
lēgātus, -ī, M., *ambassador, lieutenant.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through.*
proelium, -ī, N., *battle.* Cf. **pūgna** (**102**).
summus, -a, -um (sup. of **superus**), adj., *highest.*
Tarentīnus, -ī, M., *an inhabitant of Tarentum, a Tarentine.*

[1] For the passive of **faciō**, see **327**. [2] *And . . . not*, **neque**.
[3] See **144**, **145**.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXXV

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

240. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāmus, monēmus, regimus, audīmus. 2. Laudant, dēlent, agunt, custōdiunt. 3. Ōrnābam, dēlēbam, vincēbam, mūniēbam. 4. Cantāvistī, habuistī, posuistī, vinxistī. 5. Mūtāvērunt, tenuērunt, ēgērunt, cēpērunt, mūnīvērunt. 6. Portāverātis, dēlēverātis, praebuerātis, dūxerātis, dormīverātis.

II. 1. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, vincītur. 2. Servāberis, tenēberis, mittēre, vestiēre. 3. Laudātī sumus, prohibitī sumus, ductī sumus, ērudītī sumus. 4. Ōrnāre, monēre, trahere, pūnīre. 5. Amārī, docērī, contemnī, jacī, aperīrī. 6. Amātae sunt, monitae sunt, exceptae sunt, audītae sunt.

III. 1. Dormīte, superāte, facite, vincite, vincīte, praebēte. 2. Vulnerāvisse, jēcisse, vēnisse, docuisse, flūxisse. 3. Recipimur, spectāmur, agimur, vestīmur, docēmur. 4. Docēbitis, pūniētis, trahētis, fugiētis, creābitis. 5. Mīsit, habuit, armāvit, jēcit, fūgit. 6. Vinciminī, vituperāminī, terrēminī, vincīminī, capiminī.

241. EXERCISES

I. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou hearest. 2. I shall praise, I shall destroy, I shall drive, I shall guard. 3. You were adorning, you were seeing, you were conquering, you were fortifying. 4. We have sung, we have had, we have placed, we have bound. 5. You have changed, you have held, you have driven, you have taken, you have fortified. 6. I had carried, I had destroyed, I had furnished, I had led, I had slept.

Digitized by Google

II. 1. We are put to flight, we are frightened, we are placed, we are bound. 2. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be clothed. 3. They have been praised, they have been prevented, they have been led, they have been instructed. 4. They will be adorned, they will be advised, they will be drawn, they will be punished. 5. To be loved, to be taught, to be despised, to be thrown, to be opened. 6. Thou hast been loved, thou hast been advised, thou hast been welcomed, thou hast been heard.

III. 1. Sleep, surpass, do (*fac*), bind, conquer, furnish. 2. To wound, to throw, to come, to teach, to flow. 3. They are received, they are witnessed, they are driven, they are clothed, they are taught. 4. I shall teach, I shall punish, I shall draw, I shall flee, I shall create. 5. They have sent, they have had, they have armed, they have thrown, they have fled. 6. Thou art conquered, thou art blamed, thou art frightened, thou art bound, thou art taken.

242. COLLOQUIUM

JACŌBUS ET AUGUSTUS

J. Dēnique ad fīnem pēnsī pervēnimus; quid jam incipiēmus?
finally end now begin

A. Tū quidquid vidēbitur incipiēs: ego incipiam nihil.
you whatever seems good

J. Quārē? esne dēfessus?
why

A. Certē, admodum dēfessus; pēnsum recōgnōscendum mē quidem paene fīnīvit.
certainly downright review at least almost

J. Mox recreāberis, sī mēcum ad natandum veniēs.
soon will be rested with me swim

Digitized by Google

A. Profectō tēcum veniam, nam natāre mihi est jūcundissimum et semper et praecipuē cum
surely with you for both especially when

"*Sōle sub ardentī resonant arbusta cicādīs.*"
under glowing resound groves the cicadas

J. Quam lautē poētam aliquem laudās!
how elegantly some quote

A. Hunc Vergilī versiculum mē docuit praeceptor.
this Vergil line

CHAPTER XXXVI

FOURTH DECLENSION

243. The stem ends in *u*.

244. RULE OF GENDER.—**Nouns in *us* are masculine; those in *ū* are neuter.**

1. The following nouns, and a few others, are feminine: **acus,** *needle;* **domus,** *house;* **Īdūs** (plur.), *Ides;* **manus,** *hand;* **porticus,** *portico;* **tribus,** *tribe.*

245. PARADIGMS

	Gradus, M., *step.*		**Genū,** N., *knee.*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	grad **us**	grad **ūs**	gen **ū**	gen **ua**
G.	grad **ūs**	grad **uum**	gen **ūs**	gen **uum**
D.	grad **uī** (**ū**)	grad **ibus**	gen **ū**	gen **ibus**
Ac.	grad **um**	grad **ūs**	gen **ū**	gen **ua**
Ab.	grad **ū**	grad **ibus**	gen **ū**	gen **ibus**

	TERMINATIONS			
	MASC.		NEUT.	
N.V.	**us**	**ūs**	**ū**	**ua**
G.	**ūs**	**uum**	**ūs**	**uum**
D.	**uī** (**ū**)	**ibus** (**ubus**)	**ū**	**ibus** (**ubus**)
Ac.	**um**	**ūs**	**ū**	**ua**
Ab.	**ū**	**ibus** (**ubus**)	**ū**	**ibus** (**ubus**)

Digitized by Google

246. The fourth declension is a modification of the third. Thus, **gradūs**, genitive singular, is for **graduis**, **gradum** for **graduem**, **gradū** for **gradue**, etc.

247. **Artus**, *joint*, **partus**, *birth*, **tribus**, *tribe;* sometimes **portus**, *harbor*, **verū**, *a spit;* also dissyllables in *cus*, have the termination *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural.

248. **Domus**, *house*, has also forms of the second declension. See special paradigms, **262**.

249. Decline together **domus mea**, *my house;* **exercitus māgnus**, *large army;* **Īdūs Mārtiae**, *Ides of March.*

250. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vēre adventus avium hominibus est jūcundissimus. 2. Sēnsūs avium ācrēs sunt, mōtūs celerēs. 3. In lacubus et in palūdibus māgna avium est multitūdō. 4. Avēs multae in porticibus altīs domicilium habent. 5. Quercus Jovī sacra erat. 6. Quercūs frōns est victōris ōrnāmentum. 7. Cōnsulātus erat Rōmānōrum magistrātus amplus. 8. Salūs cīvitātis in manibus cōnsulum erat. 9. Cōnsulēs exercituum erant imperātōrēs. 10. Erant in portibus nāvēs longae.[1]

II. 1. The enemy (*plur.*) were conquered on the arrival[2] of Cæsar. 2. Many animals fight with their horns. 3. Many lakes are seen in the Alps. 4. The ancients honored the oak (as) the tree[3] of Jupiter. 5. The songs of birds are heard among the oaks. 6. In ancient times men fought with bows and arrows. 7. The consulship of Cicero was very renowned. 8. Cæsar came into Italy with a large army. 9. The arrival of the army freed the citizens from fear.[4] 10. Between school and home we take (make) many steps.

[1] **Nāvēs longae**, *ships of war.*
[2] See **136**.
[3] Predicate accusative.
[4] See **128, 129, 130**.

Digitized by Google

251. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M. [adveniō], *arrival, approach.*
arcus, -ūs, M., *bow.*
cantus, -ūs, M., *song.*
cōnsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], *consulship.*
cornū, -ūs, N., *horn.*
exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō], *army.*
lacus, -ūs, M., *lake.*
magistrātus, -ūs, M. [magister], *office, magistrate.*
manus, -ūs, F., *hand.*
metus, -ūs, M., *fear.*
mōtus, -ūs, M. [moveō], *movement, motion.*
palūs, -ūdis, F., *swamp, marsh.*
portus, -ūs, M., *harbor.*
quercus, -ūs, F., *oak* (**11.** 4).
sēnsus, -ūs, M. [sentiō], *sense, feeling.*
amplus, -a, -um, adj., *great, renowned, honorable.*
domicilium, -ī, N., *home* (**79**).
frōns, frondis, F., *chaplet of leaves.*
Juppiter, Jovis, M., *Jupiter,* the supreme god (**262**).
sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow.*
salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety.*
schola, -ae, F., *school.*
victor, -ōris, M. [vincō], *conqueror.*

CHAPTER XXXVII

FIFTH DECLENSION

252. The stem ends in *ē*.

253. RULE OF GENDER. — **Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs, day,* which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.**

254. PARADIGMS

	Diēs, *day.*		**Rēs,** *thing, affair.*		TERMINATIONS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	di ēs	di ēs	r ēs	r ēs	ēs	ēs
G.	di ēī	di ērum	r eī	r ērum	ēī	ērum
D.	di ēī	di ēbus	r eī	r ēbus	ēī	ēbus
Ac.	di em	di ēs	r em	r ēs	em	ēs
Ab.	di ē	di ēbus	r ē	r ēbus	ē	ēbus

255. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

Digitized by Google

256. Decline together **rēs pūblica**, *state;* in sing., **bona fidēs**, *good faith;* **māgna spēs**, *great hope;* **diēs quīntus**, *fifth day.*

257. EXERCISES

I. 1. In omnibus rēbus certus ōrdō est. 2. Domina rērum hūmānārum est fortūna. 3. Tertiō diē cōnsul in urbem veniet. 4. Dux exercitum in plānitiem dūxit. 5. Ibi aciem īnstrūxit et hostēs exspectābat. 6. Māgnam victōriae spem habuit. 7. Nam māximae erant mīlitum fidēs et virtūs. 8. Prō salūte reī pūblicae pūgnābant. 9. Posterō diē hostēs in pūgnam prōcessērunt. 10. Ad diēī fīnem victī sunt et fugātī.

II. 1. God is the creator of all things. 2. The commonwealth is dear to all good citizens. 3. In all human affairs there is much uncertainty.[1] 4. The army was marshalled in a large plain. 5. The enemy advanced against[2] the Romans' line of battle. 6. The general praised the soldiers for[3] their[4] fidelity. 7. In the line of battle were many foot-soldiers. 8. They had great hopes of victory. 9. In[5] a few days the arrangement of things will be changed. 10. The consul gave a pledge to the state.

258. VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, F., *line of battle.*
fidēs, ĕī, F., *faith, fidelity, pledge.*
plānitiēs, -ēī, F., *plain.*
rēs pūblica, F., *commonwealth, state.*
spēs, spĕī, F., *hope.*
cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious.*
certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, certain.*
creātor, -ōris, M., *creator.*
domina, -ae, F., *mistress.*
ex-spectō, 1, *await, expect.*
hūmānus, -a, um, adj., *human.*
in-certus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain.*
īn-struō, 3, **-strūxī, -strūctum,** *draw up, marshal.*
ōrdō, -inis, M., *order, arrangement.*
paucus,[6] **-a, -um,** adj., *few, little.*
pedes, -itis, M. [**pēs**], *foot-soldier.*
posterus, -a, -um, adj., *following, next.*
prō, prep. w. abl., *for, in behalf of.*
prō-cēdō, 3, **-cessī, -cessum,** *advance.*

[1] *Many things are uncertain.*
[2] In with accusative.
[3] Dē with ablative.
[4] Omit.
[5] See 135, 136.
[6] Mostly used in the plural.

Digitized by Google

259. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Claudus alterō pede,** *lame in one foot.*
2. **Mōribus similēs,** *similar in character.*
3. **Virtūte praecēdunt,** *they excel in courage.*
4. **Numerō ad duodecim,** *about twelve in number.*

Observe that the ablatives **pede, mōribus, virtūte,** and **numerō,** answer the question *in what respect?* This ablative is called the ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

260. RULE OF SYNTAX.—**The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which anything is said to be, or to be done.**

261. COLLOQUIUM

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS

P. Omnium dēclīnātiōnum quae est difficillima?
which

D. Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs?
why think

D. Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātīvō singulārī. Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim
variety on account gender also especially
nōminum in *is* dēsinentium.
nouns ending

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetīvum in *ium* habeant?
have

D. Prīmum nōmina in *is* et *ēs* dēsinentia, sī in genetīvō singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nūbēs.*
increase

Deinde monosyllaba in *s* vel *x* dēsinentia, sī ante *s* et *x* stat cōnsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx.*
consonant

Tum nōmina in *ns* et *rs* dēsinentia; ut *cliēns* et *cohors.*

Dēnique neutra in *e, al, ar* dēsinentia; ut *mare, animal, calcar.*
neuters

Digitized by Google

P. Optimē, mī puer; bene studuistī et bene memoriā tenēs. Jam tibi licet īre ad lūdendum.
you may play

CHAPTER XXXVIII

262. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	Vir, M., *man.*	**Vīs**, F., *strength.*	**Deus**, M., *god.*	**Senex**, M., *old man.*
		SINGULAR		
N.V.	vir	vīs	deus	senex
G.	virī	vīs[1]	deī	senis
D.	virō	vī[1]	deō	senī
Ac.	virum	vim	deum	senem
Ab.	virō	vī	deō	sene
		PLURAL		
N.V.	virī	vīrēs	deī, diī, dī	senēs
G.	virōrum	vīrium	deōrum, deūm	senum
D.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, dīs	senibus
Ac.	virōs	vīrēs	deōs	senēs
Ab.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, dīs	senibus

	Iter, N., *way.*	**Juppiter**, *Jupiter.*	**Bōs**, M. & F., *ox, cow.*	**Domus**, F., *house.*
		SINGULAR		
N.V.	iter	Juppiter	bōs	domus
G.	itineris	Jovis	bovis	domūs
D.	itinerī	Jovī	bovī	domuī, ō
Ac.	iter	Jovem	bovem	domum
Ab.	itinere	Jove	bove	domō, ū
		PLURAL		
N.V.	itinera		bovēs	domūs
G.	itinerum		bovum, boum	domuum, ōrum
D.	itineribus		bōbus, būbus	domibus
Ac.	itinera		bovēs	domōs, ūs
Ab.	itineribus		bōbus, būbus	domibus

[1] The genitive and dative singular are rare.

Digitized by Google

263. FOR TRANSLATION

Proserpina is carried off by Pluto

[*Review* **199** *and* **215**.]

Dum Proserpina luco
Ludit, et aut violas aut candida lilia carpit,
Dumque puellari studio[1] calathosque[2] sinumque[2]
Implet, et aequales[3] certat superare legendo,[4]
Paene simul visa est dilectaque[5] raptaque[6] Diti.[7]

Her Chance of Return is lost

Dixerat.[8] At Cereri certum est[9] educere[10] natam.[11]
Non ita fata sinunt, quoniam jejunia virgo
Solverat et, cultis[12] dum simplex errat[13] in hortis,
Poeniceum[14] curva[15] decerpserat arbore pomum,
Sumptaque callenti septem de cortice grana
Presserat[16] ore suo: solusque ex omnibus illud
Ascalaphus vidit. . . .
Vidit, et indicio reditum crudelis ademit.

[1] **Puellārī studiō = puellārī cum studiō.** See **144** and **145**.

[2] **Que . . . que,** *both . . . and.*

[3] **Aequālēs = comitēs.**

[4] **Legendō,** *in gathering (flowers).*

[5] **Dīlecta,** from **dīligō.**

[6] **Rapta,** from **rapiō.** With **dīlecta** and **rapta** supply **est.**

[7] **Dītī.** Translate as if, instead of the dative, it were **ā Dīte.**

[8] **Dixerat,** *i.e.* **Juppiter.**

[9] **Cererī certum est,** *to Ceres it is determined = Ceres is resolved.*

[10] **Ēdūcere,** that is, from the lower world.

[11] **Nātam, = fīliam.**

[12] **Cultīs,** with **hortīs.**

[13] **Errat.** Translate as if it were **errābat.** The present referring to past time is very often used after **dum.** So **lūdit,** l. 2.

[14] **Poeniceum,** with **pōmum.**

[15] **Curvā,** *bending.* The tree is loaded with fruit.

[16] **Presserat,** from **premō.**

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XXXIX

PRONOUNS

Pronouns may be divided into eight classes, and arranged in three groups:

I.	1. Personal. 2. Reflexive. 3. Possessive.	II.	4. Determinative. 5. Demonstrative.	III.	6. Relative. 7. Interrogative. 8. Indefinite.

Personal Pronouns

264. PARADIGMS

First Person

Egŏ, *I.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	**egŏ**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*
G.	**meī**, *of me.*	**nostrum**, *or* **nostrī**, *of us.*
D.	**mihĭ (mī)**, *to, for me.*	**nōbīs**, *to, for us.*
Ac.	**mē**, *me.*	**nōs**, *us.*
Ab.	**(ā) mē**, *by me.*	**(ā) nōbīs**, *by us.*

Second Person

Tū, *thou.*

N.	**tū**, *thou.*	**vōs**, *you, ye.*
G.	**tuī**, *of thee.*	**vestrum**, *or* **vestrī**, *of you.*
D.	**tibĭ**, *to, for thee.*	**vōbīs**, *to, for you.*
Ac.	**tē**, *thee.*	**vōs**, *you.*
Ab.	**(ā) tē**, *by thee.*	**(ā) vōbīs**, *by you.*

Reflexive Pronoun

Suī, *of himself, etc.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	———	———
G.	**suī**, *of himself, herself, itself.*	**suī**, *of themselves.*
D.	**sibĭ**, *to, for himself, etc.*	**sibĭ**, *to, for themselves.*
Ac.	**sē (sēsē)**, *himself, etc.*	**sē (sēsē)**, *themselves.*
Ab.	**(ā) sē (sēsē)**, *by himself, etc.*	**(ā) sē (sēsē)**, *by themselves.*

Digitized by Google

265. 1. The personal pronoun of the third person is **is, ea, id,** *he, she, it.* But when reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive **suī** is used: **Omnēs hominēs sē** (or **sēsē**) **amant,** *all men love themselves.*

2. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than their equivalents in English. Why is this? In general, they are used only for emphasis or contrast: **Ego sum aegrōtus, tū valēs,** *I am sick, you are well.*

3. "*With me, with you,*" etc., are not expressed, as you would expect, by **cum mē, cum tē,** etc., but always by **mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum.** So **quibuscum (279).**

4. The oblique cases of personal pronouns of the first and second person are often used with reflexive sense: **Tū tē amās,** *thou lovest thyself;* **ego mihi noceō,** *I do harm to myself.*

Possessive Adjective Pronouns

266. Possessive adjective pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns:

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine* (voc. sing. masc. **mī**).
tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine; your, yours.*
suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their* (*own*).
noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

267. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pater mē amat et patrem ego amō. 2. Tū quoque patrem meum amās. 3. Patrem tuum ego quoque amō. 4. Puella nimium sē culpat. 5. Fīlium tuum amāmus nōs omnēs. 6. Vōs (*acc.*) agitātis. 7. Nōn ut aliī nōs (*acc.*) vidēmus. 8. Brūtus sē suō gladiō perfōdit. 9. Nōs sumus miserī, beātī estis vōs. 10. Sine tē et tēcum pariter sumus miserī. 11. Mēcum eris miserrimus. 12. Dē tē erat mea ōrātiō. 13. Vōbīscum trīstis erō nunquam. 14. Mihi mea vīta, tibi tua est cāra. 15. Amīcus noster est memor vestrī.

II. 1. Thy mother is dear to thee, mine to me. 2. All your plans are known to us. 3. The boy loves himself too much. 4. The burden will be carried by me, by you, by us,

Digitized by Google

by thee. 5. With you and without you we shall be equally happy. 6. Thee I love, but not thy dog. 7. O, how I shall miss you, my friend! 8. We[1] are poor, you[1] are rich. 9. Our life is very short. 10. The boy carried a wooden cup with him(self).

268. VOCABULARY

agitō, 1 [**agō**, *put in motion*], *disturb, vex, chase.*
beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy.*
culpō, 1 [**culpa**], *blame, censure, reproach.*
dēsīderō, 1, *desire, long for, miss.*
līgneus, -a, -um, adj. [**līgnum**, *wood*], *of wood, wooden.*
nimium, adv., *too, too much.*
nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *known.*
onus, -eris, N., *burden.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. [**ōrō**], *speech, talk, address.*
pariter, adv. [**par**, *equal*], *equally.*
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor* (**167. 3**).
per-fodiō, 3, **-fōdī, -fossum**, *dig through, stab, pierce.*
quoque, conj., *also, too.*
sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*
ut, adv. and conj., *as.*

269. COLLOQUIUM

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA

F. Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.
come little sister walk

S. Quō est tibi in animō, care frāter, ambulāre? Nōnne
whither
in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
yes shade

S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen . . .
gladly but

F. Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, sī, ut dīcis, mēcum ambulās libenter?
so much hesitate

S. Nōlī mē rīdēre. Metuō anguēs. "*Frīgidus latet*
don't laugh at snakes cold lurks
anguis in herbā," ut cantat Vergilius.

F. Nōlī metuere. Venī; ubi frāga mātūra sunt repperī.
where strawberries ripe are have found

S. Ō quam suāve! In mē nōn jam est mora.
delightful now delay

[1] Why should the pronouns be expressed in Latin?

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XL

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS

270. PARADIGMS: **Is, Īdem, ipse**

Is, *that, this;* also, *he, she, it.*

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	ējus	ējus	ējus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Īdem, *same.*

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
N.	īdem	eădem	ĭdem	eīdem iīdem	eaedem	eădem
G.	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	ĭdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eădem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

Ipse, *self* (*himself, etc.*).

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

1. Determinative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with nouns expressed or understood; **īdem** and **ipse** also with pronouns.

2. **Is** is very often used as a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it, they.* Also as the antecedent of **quī**, *who;* **is quī**, *he who.*

3. **Īdem** is compounded of *is* and the suffix *dem.* **Īdem** is for **isdem**; **idem** for **iddem**; **eundem**, etc., for **eumdem**, etc.; **eōrundem**, etc., for **eōrumdem**, etc.

Digitized by Google

4. **Ipse,** *self* (intensive), is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, and must be distinguished from **sē,** *self* (reflexive):

(1) **Homo ipse veniet,** *the man himself* (and not another) *will come.*

(2) **Hominem ipsum vīdī,** *I saw the man himself.*

(3) **Homo sē culpat nimium,** *the man blames himself too much.*

(4) **Mīles frātrem, dein sē ipsum interfēcit,** *the soldier killed his brother, then himself.*

5. How do we indicate in English in speech, and how in writing, when we use *self* (*himself*, etc.), whether we intend the intensive or the reflexive *self?*

6. **Ipse** may be variously translated: **ipse fēcī,** *I* MYSELF *did it, I did it* ALONE, *I did it* OF MY OWN ACCORD.

271. Decline together **is homo,** *that man;* **ea nāvis,** *that ship;* **id bellum,** *that war;* **īdem diēs,** *the same day;* **eadem manus,** *the same hand;* **idem onus,** *the same burden;* **vir ipse,** *the man himself.*

272. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cicerō est scrīptor ēlegantissimus; ējus librōs legimus. 2. Fīdum amīcum habeō; eum ego magis quam tū amās. 3. Eum magis quam tē amō. 4. Nōn semper eundem hominem laudāmus. 5. Magister ipse tē laudābit. 6. Sunt sex partēs orbis terrārum; māxima eārum est Asia. 7. Fortūna nunc mihi,[1] nunc eī[1] favet. 8. Interdum amīcīs[1] ipsīs, interdum inimīcīs[1] nocet. 9. Semper īdem erat Sōcratis vultus. 10. In eōdem specū habitābant Androclus et leō.

II. 1. Sallust is an elegant author; have you read his writings? 2. I have not read those, but Cicero's. 3. Fortune favored now you,[2] now them.[2] 4. Even (*ipse*) your own friend will blame you. 5. The minds of men are not always the same. 6. We were sailing[3] with you in the same ship. 7. He gave me the book of his own accord.[4] 8. The

[1] Indirect object, though translated as a direct object. See **343.**

[2] Dative. Cf. I. 7.

[3] Use passive of **vehō.**

[4] See **270. 6.**

Digitized by Google

master offers the same rewards to the boys. 9. The same rewards are offered by the master himself.

273. VOCABULARY

Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus.*
auctor, -ōris, M. [augeō, *increase*], *maker, author.*
ēlegāns, -ntis, adj., *choice, elegant.*
faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable to, befriend* (with dat.).
interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
mēns, mentis, F., *mind, purpose.*
noceō, 2, nocuī, nocitum, *do harm to, hurt, injure* (with dat.).
orbis, -is, M., *circle.*
orbis terrārum, *the earth, the world.*
Sallustius, -ī, M., *Sallust,* a historian (79).
scrīptor, -ōris, M. [scrībō], *writer, author.*
scrīptum, -ī, N. [scrībō], *writing, written work.*
sex, num. adj., indecl., *six.*
specus, -ūs, M., *cave.*
suāviter, adv. [suāvis], *sweetly, delightfully.*
vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, features, looks.*

animus (161), *mind, soul, heart;* the general word for *mind.*
mēns, *mind,* as that which thinks, *intellect;* more limited in meaning.

COLLOQUIUM

274. *Translate into Latin:* —

BROTHER AND LITTLE SISTER — *Continued*

B. Let us carry [1] with us two [2] little-baskets.[3]
S. See! [4] I have them in my hand already.[5]
B. The sun is hot,[6] but there is a cool [7] breeze.
S. Oh, how the trees and flowers delight me!
B. To stay in the house is downright [8] stupid.[9]
S. Yes, indeed,[10] and I don't mean to any more.[11]
B. Here are [12] the strawberries. Now we will fill our baskets. Isn't it jolly? [13]

[1] *Let us carry,* **portēmus.**
[2] **Duās.** See 311. 4.
[3] **Corbula, -ae.**
[4] **Ecce!**
[5] **Jam.**
[6] **Ārdēns.**
[7] **Frīgidus.**
[8] **Admodum.**
[9] **Molestus.**
[10] *Yes, indeed,* **ista sunt,** *those things are (true).*
[11] *Neither is it in mind to me more.* See 269, l. 2.
[12] *Here are* = **ēn!** or **ecce!**
[13] **suāvissimum.**

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XLI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

275. **PARADIGMS: Hīc, iste, ille**

Hīc, *this (near), this of mine.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, *that, that of yours.*

N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ab.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, *that (yonder).*

N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

1. **Hīc** is used of that which is near the speaker in *place, time,* or *thought,* and hence is called the Demonstrative of the First Person: **Hīc equus**, *this horse (near me,* or *belonging to me).*

2. **Iste** is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Second Person: **Iste equus**, *that horse (near you,* or *belonging to you).*

3. **Ille** is used of that which is relatively remote from the speaker, or person addressed, in *place, time,* or *thought,* and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Third Person: **Ille equus**, *that horse (yonder).*

4. **Ille** often means *that well-known, that famous.*

Digitized by Google

5. **Hīc** and **ille** are sometimes used in contrast: **Hīc**, *the latter*; **ille**, *the former*.

6. **Is**, as a determinative pronoun, sometimes approaches **hīc** in meaning, sometimes **ille**. Hence it is to be translated *this* or *that*, according to the connection.

276. EXERCISES

I. 1. Illīus hominis fīlium laudābant omnēs. 2. Iste canis semper lātrat. 3. Hūjus scholae semper memorēs erimus. 4. Dabō tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Illī lapidēs dūrī sunt. 6. Multī virī dīvitēs in hāc urbe habitant. 7. Variī sunt colōrēs hūjus flōris. 8. Nōmen illīus poētae est clārissimum. 9. Hārum avium cantus nōs dēlectat. 10. Ista tua studia amō et laudō. 11. Hās terrās silvīs pulcherrimīs ōrnāvit Deus. 12. Illud ducis cōnsilium pōbīs ūtile fuit.

II. 1. These mountains are very[1] high. 2. I shall always be mindful of that friend of yours.[2] 3. This thing will be hurtful to you. 4. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous[3] orators; the former[4] was a Greek, the latter[4] a Roman. 5. The citizens of yonder city are most wretched. 6. The air in these mountains is lighter than in those valleys. 7. He gave me this pretty bird. 8. That old farmer's wine is good. 9. I have read that book of yours. 10. That book of yours has been read by me, by you, by us, by us ourselves.

277. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hannibal, clārissimus ille imperātor, Alpēs montēs superāvit. 2. Mīlitum animōs hāc ōrātiōne fīrmāvit. 3. Vidētis, mīlitēs fortissimī, Ītaliam illam. 4. Illud est domicilium hostium nostrōrum. 5. Gallī, incolae hārum regiōnum, sociī amīcīque nostrī erunt. 6. Hī nōbīs omnēs rēs necessāriās praebēbunt. 7. Hī erunt hostēs illōrum

[1] See page 91, note.
[2] *That of yours* = iste.
[3] Superlative.
[4] See **275**. 5.

Digitized by Google

Rōmānōrum improbōrum. 8. Rōma illa praeda vestra erit. 9. Vōs ipsī expūgnāvistis Saguntum, oppidum illud fīrmissimum. 10. Hās Alpēs, illōs Pȳrēnaeōs montēs superāvistis; Rōmānōs mox vincētis.

II. 1. Hannibal increased the courage of the soldiers by these words. 2. Again, soldiers, have you defeated those famous Romans. 3. The gods and your own courage have given us the victory. 4. This fair Italy will soon be ours. 5. Rome itself, that proud city, will be taken. 6. Those arms of yours will be stained with the best blood of Rome. 7. Those famous legions have been defeated. 8. Cross with me yonder mountains. 9. Those fierce enemies of the Romans, the Samnites, will welcome us. 10. Rome shall be the reward of valor. Forward![1]

278. VOCABULARY

āēr, āeris, M., *air.*
cantus, -ūs, M., *singing, song.*
dēlectō, 1, *delight.*
Dēmosthenēs, -is, M., *Demosthenes,* an Athenian orator.
dīvĕs, -itis, adj., *rich* (**167.** 3).
dō, dare, dĕdī, dătum, *give.*
ex-pūgnō, 1, *take by storm, take.*
fīrmō, 1 [**fīrmus**], *make firm or steadfast, fortify, strengthen.*
fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, firm.*
improbus, -a, -um, adj., *bad.*
iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*
lātrō, 1, *bark, bark at.*
legiō, -ōnis, F., *legion.*
maculō, 1, *stain.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary.*
praeda, -ae, F., *booty, spoil.*
Saguntum, -ī, N., *Saguntum,* a town in Spain.
Samnīs, -ītis, M. & F., *a Samnite.*
sanguis, -inis, M., *blood.*
silva, -ae, F., *wood, forest.*
socius, -ī, M., *ally, associate.*
superbus, -a, -um, adj., *proud.*
tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, light.*
trānscendō, 3, **-ī, -sum,** *cross.*

cantus, *song, melody,* whether of the voice of man, of birds, or of musical instruments.

carmen, *song,* as *melody,* and also in a wider sense; often with reference to the composition. Hence, *a poem.*[2]

[1] **Prōcēdite.**

[2] It must not be supposed that distinctions in synonymous words are always observed in usage.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XLII

PRONOUNS: RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE

279. PARADIGMS: **Quī, quis, aliquis**

RELATIVE: **Quī**, *who, which, that.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE: **Quis**, *who? which? what?*

N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INDEFINITE: **Aliquis**, *some one, some, any one.*

	SINGULAR		
N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid *or* -quod
G.	alicūjus	alicūjus	alicūjus
D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid *or* -quod
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	PLURAL		
N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

1. Observe the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of **aliquis**, and compare them with corresponding forms of **quis**.

Digitized by Google

2. **Aliquis** is used adjectively in the neuter form **aliquod**, and sometimes in the masculine and feminine forms. The same is true of **quīdam** and **quisque** (4).

3. Besides the interrogative **quis** and its compounds, there is an interrogative adjective **quī** (*which? what?*) declined like the relative **qui**.

4. Besides **aliquis**, the most important indefinites are:

quīdam	**quaedam**	**quiddam**, or **quoddam**, *certain one, certain.*
quisquam	(*wanting*)	**quidquam**, *any one* (*at all*), no plural.
quisque	**quaeque**	**quidque**, or **quodque**, *each one, every.*

5. **Quīdam, quisquam,** and **quisque** are declined like the simple pronouns. **Quidam** changes *m* to *n* before *d*; **quendam**, etc., **quōrundam**, etc.

6. **Aliquis**, *some one, any one* (without emphasis); **quisquam**, *any one at all* (emphatic), also in negative and interrogative sentences. **Quis** after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num**, is indefinite, *any one.*

7. **Aliquis** means *some man*, I don't know who; **quīdam**, *a certain man*, whom I know, but don't mean to describe.

280. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Puer quī vēnit,** *the boy who came.*
2. **Puella quae vēnit,** *the girl who came.*
3. **Librī quōs legis,** *the books which you read.*
4. **Puellae quās vīdistī,** *the girls whom you saw.*

Compare the relative in each of the above examples with the noun to which it refers (called the *antecedent*) in respect, first to gender, and then to number.

Look now at the case of the relative in each of the examples, and compare the English with the Latin. Plainly, the case of the relative has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. It may be the same or different.

281. RULE OF SYNTAX.[1]—**A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*.**

[1] As the *person* of the antecedent has no effect on the relative, it is wrong, though customary, to say "the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person."

Digitized by Google

282. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Ego quī vēnī,** *I who came.*
2. **Vōs quī vēnistis,** *you who came.*

Observe now the person and number of the verb in these two examples, and in the first two given in **280**.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The verb of which a relative pronoun is the subject agrees in *person* and *number* with the antecedent of the relative.**

284. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis forum Rōmānōrum rōstrīs ōrnāvit? 2. Gājus Duīlius, quī māgnam praedam ā Carthāginiēnsibus reportāvit. 3. Quae amīcitia potest esse[1] inter improbōs? 4. Quis clārior fuit in Graeciā Themistocle?[2] 5. Quem timēs in meā domō? 6. Quae animālia sunt celerrima et ferōcissima? 7. Omne animal quod sanguinem habet cor habet. 8. Dīvitēs sunt iī quī suīs rēbus contentī sunt. 9. Erant quōque[3] annō duo cōnsulēs in cīvitāte Rōmānā. 10. Sunt animālia quaedam in quibus est aliquid simile ratiōnī.

II. 1. What have you in your hand? 2. By whom was the Roman forum adorned with the prows of ships? 3. We see the general whom you praise. 4. He is rich who is contented. 5. He will be praised whose[4] courage saved our country. 6. We love those whose manners are pleasing. 7. The boy has something in his hand. 8. Certain labors are pleasant to us. 9. We are the same[5] to-day that[5] we were yesterday. 10. What things are brought to us from Africa?

[1] **Potest esse,** *can be.*
[2] See **212**.
[3] **Ablative of quisque.**
[4] *Of whom.*
[5] *The same . . . that,* or *same . . . as,* **īdem . . . quī.**

Digitized by Google

285. EXERCISES

Before trying to do the following exercises, review the declension of irregular adjectives (**200**, **201**), and write out the declension of **quīdam, quisquam,** and **quisque.**

I. 1. Est quisquam tibi cārior quam parentēs tuī? 2. Propriī līberī cārissimī cuīque sunt. 3. Erant duo fīliī Rhēae Silviae, quōrum alterī erat nōmen Rōmulus, alterī Rĕmus; uterque fortis erat. 4. Estne in ūllō animālī mājor prūdentia quam in cane? 5. Vidēsne illa duo sīdera? Utrīus lūx clārior est? 6. Virtūs eōrum quī patriam nostram servāvērunt semper laudābitur. 7. In istīs arboribus quae hortum ōrnant avēs variae cantant. 8. Rīsus aliōrum saepe causa īrae nostrae est. 9. Nūllum malum sine aliquō bonō est. 10. Nĕmō nostrum īdem est in senectūte quī[1] fuit in juventūte. 11. Urbēs illae, quārum glōria māgna est, ā mīlitibus nostrīs expūgnātae sunt.

II. 1. All animals that have blood have hearts. 2. We shall be the same[1] to-morrow as[1] we are to-day. 3. Is any[2] animal more sagacious than the elephant?[3] 4. We have five fingers on each hand. 5. Those have hope who have nothing else.[4] 6. Many men build houses which they will never inhabit. 7. The moon sends upon the earth the light which she has received from the sun. 8. Cornelia had two sons, both of whom[5] were killed. 9. Hector, by whose bravery many Greeks were slain, was himself killed. 10. Will not some friend relieve me of this burden?[6]

286. VOCABULARY

accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [**ad-capiō**], *take to, receive, accept.*
bonum, -ī, N., *good thing, blessing.*
Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [**Carthāgō**], *of Carthage, Carthaginian.*
clārus, -a, -um, *bright, famous.*

[1] See page 128, note 5.
[2] See I. 4.
[3] See **211**, **212**.
[4] Aliud.
[5] *Of whom each.*
[6] See **128**, **129**.

Digitized by Google

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *contented.*
cor, cordis, N., *heart.*
crās, adv., *to-morrow.*
digitus, -ī, M., *finger.*
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two* (**311.** 4).
ex-pūgnō, 1 [**pūgna**], *take, capture.*
forum, -ī, N., *market-place, forum.*
Gājus Duīlius, -ī, M., *Caius Duilius.*
Hector, -oris, M., *Hector,* chief of the Trojan heroes.
herī, adv., *yesterday.*
hodiē, adv., *to-day.*
labor, -ōris, M., *labor.*
malum, -ī, N., *bad thing, evil.*
nēmō, (-inis), M. & F. [**nē, homō**], *no one.* For genitive and ablative use **nūllīus, nūllō.**
parēns, -entis, M. & F., *parent* (**167.** 1).
proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own.*
prūdentia, -ae, F. [**prūdēns**], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom.*
Remus, -ī, M., *Remus,* brother of Romulus.
re-portō, 1, *bring back.*
Rhēa Silvia, -ae, F., *Rhea Silvia.*
rīsus, -ūs, M. [**rīdeō**], *laughter.*
Rōmulus, -ī, M., *Romulus,* first king of Rome.
rōstrum, -ī, N., *prow of a vessel.*
sīdus, -eris, N., *star, constellation.*
Themistoclēs, -is, M., *Themistocles,* a famous Greek.
varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various.*

CHAPTER XLIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

Review the paradigms.

287. EXERCISES

I. 1. Īdem es quī[1] semper fuistī. 2. Hodiē eadem dictitat quae[1] herī. 3. Ecce domum quam aedificāvit Jōhanniculus. 4. Quīdam puer cachinnābat. 5. Iste homō, quī tē laudābat, est stultissimus. 6. Sua cuīque[2] cārissima sunt. 7. Suī cuīque[2] cārissimī sunt. 8. Cōram mē aliquis illam fābulam nārrābat. 9. Egēns est et is quī nōn satis habet, et is cuī nihil satis est. 10. Beātus est quī[3] nōn cupit quae[3] nōn habet.

[1] See page 128, note 5.

[2] Notice the order; **quisque** likes to stand after the reflexives.

[3] The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is some form of **is.**

Digitized by Google

II. 1. She is the same that[1] she always has been. 2. He will say the same things to-morrow as[1] to-day. 3. Certain boys laughed out loud in school. 4. That friend of yours is a very wise man. 5. Those trees yonder are covered with leaves. 6. This man is praised by the citizens, that one is blamed. 7. The general himself led his brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers were led by the brave general himself. 9. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave.[2] 10. Those who are most faithful to their friends are most dear to us.

288. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quod[3] nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. 2. Līber est quī[3] nūllī turpitūdinī servit. 3. Quis est amīcior frātrī quam frāter? 4. Saepe nihil est inimīcius hominī quam ipse sibi. 5. Saepe iī nōbīs nocent[4] quī nōs amant. 6. Eōs quī aliōrum rēbus adversīs nōn moventur omnēs contemnunt. 7. Eōs vincere difficile est quī nihil timent. 8. Dēforme est dē sē ipsō praedicāre. 9. Aliud[5] bonum, aliud[5] malum est. 10. Alterī[6] laudem, alterī[6] culpam dabat.

II. 1. Some one has done this. 2. Yesterday a story was read to us by some one. 3. The slave killed himself together with his master. 4. My friend will migrate with me into Gaul. 5. The inhabitants of the city were frightened by the coming of the enemy. 6. Some[7] bear[8] thirst easily, others[7] hunger. 7. The fruits of this tree are pleasing to me, for they are sweet. 8. Those[9] trees are higher than these[9] houses. 9. These towers are high, those are low. 10. Those[10] maidens whose modesty is known are praised by all.

[1] See page 128, note 5.
[2] Plural. See 117.
[3] See page 130, note 3.
[4] See 343.
[5] See page 87, note 4.
[6] See page 87, note 3.
[7] See page 87, note 4.
[8] See page 87, note 5.
[9] See 275. 1 and 3.
[10] A form of is.

Digitized by Google

289. VOCABULARY

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., *unfavorable.*
cachinnō, 1, *laugh aloud.* Cf. **rīdeō.**
cōram, prep. w. abl., *in presence of.*
cupiō, 3, **-īvī, -ītum,** *desire.*
dē-formis, -e, adj. [**forma**], *misshapen, ugly, base, disgraceful.*
dictitō, 1 [**dīcō**], *keep saying.*
ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*
egēns, -entis, adj., *in want, needy.*
ē-ripiō, 3, **-ui, ēreptum** [**rapiō**], *snatch away; seize and bear off.*
famēs, -is, F., *hunger, famine.*
frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [**frōns**], *covered with leaves, leafy.*
frūctus, -ūs, M., *fruit.*
Jōhanniculus, -ī, M., *little John, Johnny, Jack.*
migrō, 1, *move from one place to another, migrate.*
modestia, -ae, F., *modesty.*
nārrō, 1, *tell, relate, report.*
prae-dicō, 1 [**prae,** *before;* **dicō, -āre,** *make known*], *proclaim, boast.* Cf. **praedīcō,** *predict.*
satis, adv., *enough.*
serviō, 4 [**servus**], *be a slave to, serve* (w. dat.).
sitis, -is, F., *thirst* (**154**).
tolerō, 1, *bear, endure.*
turpitūdō, -inis, F. [**turpis**], *ugliness, baseness.*

290. COLLOQUIUM

Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus

R. Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.
unless I am mistaken

S. Rēctē dīcis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, fīlius, ut ferunt, Sōphroniscī.
as say

R. Cūr dīcis *ut ferunt?* Nōnne rē vērā es fīlius illīus?
in truth

S. Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūjus sim fīlius.
indeed not know am

R. Num[1] mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōnne tē sapientem dīxit ōrāculum?
mock beware oracle

S. Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse īnscium perspiciō.
yes why understand ignorant see plainly

[1] This word is used in asking questions when the answer *no* is expected. It is not to be translated.

Digitized by Google

R. Quō modo aetātem dēgistī?
how pass

S. Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte quaerēbam.
for the most part I used to talk especially inquired

R. Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per breve tempus tibi aurēs praebēbō.

S. Ēheu! Rhadamanthe, istīus reī sum īnscius, nam mihi explicāre poterat nēmō.
alas was able no one

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris. At quid hōc locō tibi est in animō facere?
seem but

S. Ante omnia, sī vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim et Ulixe et aliīs clārissimīs Graeciae prīncipibus loquī.
seem good I should like to talk

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.
be off then shades

291. FOR TRANSLATION

The Battle of Marathon, B.C. 490

Hōc in tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō[1] fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs. Ea[2] mīlle mīsit mīlitum. Itaque hōrum adventū decem mīlia armātōrum[3] complēta sunt, quae manus mīrābilī flagrābat pūgnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est[4] ut plūs quam collēgae Miltiādēs valēret.[5] Ējus ergō auctōritāte impulsī[6] Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxērunt locōque[7] idōneō castra fēcērunt. Deinde posterō diē proelium commīsērunt. Dātis, etsī nōn aequum[8] locum vidēbat suīs,[9]

[1] **Auxiliō fuit,** *was for assistance = assisted.* See **344.**

[2] Supply **cīvitās.**

[3] **Armātōrum** (participle as noun), *of armed men.*

[4] **Quō factum est,** *by which it was brought about = the result was.*

[5] **Plūs . . . valēret,** *had more influence.*

[6] **Impulsī** (participle from **impellō**), *prompted.*

[7] **Locō = in locō.**

[8] **Aequum,** *favorable.*

[9] Supply **mīlitibus.**

Digitized by Google

tamen frētus numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnflīgere cupiēbat, eōquē[1] magis, quod priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidiō[2] venīrent[3] dīmicāre ūtile arbitrābātur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum,[4] equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commīsit. In quō tantō[5] plūs virtūte[6] valuērunt Athēniēnsēs ut decemplicem numerum hostium prōflīgārint,[7] adeōque eōs perterruērunt ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint.[8] Quā pūgnā[9] nihil adhūc exstitit nōbilius: nūlla enim unquam tam exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.[10] — *Nepos, Milt.* v.

CHAPTER XLIV

COMPOUNDS OF *Sum*

292. Possum, posse, potuī, ——, *be able, can.*

Possum is compounded of **potis,** *able,* and **sum. Potis** is everywhere shortened to **pot**; then *t* is changed to *s* before *s,* and *f* is dropped after *t.*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	*I am able, can, etc.*			
	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF.	*I was able, could, etc.*			
	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	*I shall be able, etc.*			
	poterō	poterimus		

[1] **Eōque magis,** *and the more.*

[2] **Subsidiō:** cf. **auxiliō,** first line, and note.

[3] **Venīrent,** *should come.*

[4] **Centum:** supply **mīlia.**

[5] **Tantō plūs valuērunt,** *were so much superior.*

[6] **Virtūte.** See **259, 260.**

[7] **Prōflīgārint,** *they routed.*

[8] **Petierint,** *fled to.* See page 101, note 1.

[9] **Pūgnā:** ablative after the comparative **nōbilius (212).**

[10] From **prōsternō.**

Digitized by Google

PERF.	*I have been able, could, etc.*			
	potuī	**potuimus**	**potuerim**	**potuerĭmus**
PLUP.	*I had been able, could have, etc.*			
	potueram	**potuerāmus**	**potuissem**	**potuissēmus**
FUT. PERF.	*I shall have been able, etc.*			
	potuerō	**potuerĭmus**		

INFINITIVE

PRES. **posse,** *to be able.* PERF. **potuisse,** *to have been able.*

293. Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, ——, *benefit.*

Prōsum is compounded of **prōd** (old form of **prō**), *for*, and **sum.** The *d* of **prōd** is retained before *e.*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	*I benefit, etc.*			
	prō-sum	**prō-sumus**	**prō-sim**	**prō-sīmus**
	prōd-es	**prōd-estis**	**prō-sīs**	**prō-sītis**
	prōd-est	**prō-sunt**	**prō-sit**	**prō-sint**
IMPF.	**prōd-eram**	**prōd-erāmus**	**prōd-essem**	**prōd-essēmus**
FUT.	**prōd-erō**	**prōd-erimus**		
PERF.	**prō-fuī**	**prō-fuimus**	**prō-fuerim**	**prō-fuerimus**
PLUP.	**prō-fueram**	**prō-fuerāmus**	**prō-fuissem**	**prō-fuissēmus**
F. P.	**prō-fuerō**	**prō-fuerĭmus**		

IMPERATIVE

PRES. **prōd-es, prōd-este** FUT. **prōd-estō, prōd-estōte**

INFINITIVE

PRES. **prōd-esse** PERF. **prō-fuisse**

FUT. **prō-futūrus esse**

PARTICIPLE

FUT. **prō-futūrus**

The other compounds of **sum** are inflected like the simple verb.

Digitized by Google

294. Learn the tenses of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive of **possum** and **prōsum**.

295. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *absum*, all take the dative; but *īnsum* is often followed by *in* with the ablative, and *intersum* by *inter* with the accusative.**

296. EXERCISES

I. 1. In vērā amīcitiā māgnum inest praesidium. 2. Amīcus vērus adest amīcō, neque deerit in perīculō. 3. Amīcō prōdesse dulce est, amīcō deesse turpe. 4. Amīcus fīdus nōn aberit ab amīcō in cāsibus fortūnae. 5. Mōrēs malī amīcitiae obsunt; inter hominēs malōs vēra amīcitia nōn interest. 6. Cicerō cōnsul reī pūblicae praefuit. 7. Multae epistulae Cicerōnis et ējus amīcōrum supersunt. 8. Virī praestantēs Athēniēnsibus nūllō tempore dēfuērunt. 9. Mōrēs tyrannī sibi[1] amīcōs parāre nōn poterant. 10. Nōn omnēs hominēs rēgēs esse possunt.

II. 1. Cornelia was able to train her sons wisely. 2. All can be good citizens.[2] 3. Hannibal was not able to take the city. 4. In Hannibal there was great cunning and bravery. 5. Hannibal was long absent from his own country. 6. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 7. He was present at many battles, and was the terror[3] of the Romans. 8. He benefited his country in many ways.[4] 9. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 10. Scipio defeated him in battle[5] in Africa. 11. He survived this defeat many years.[6] 12. His name will never lack renown.[7]

[1] *For him.* [2] See **47**.
[3] Compare **auxiliō**, **291**, first line, and note.
[4] *Ways = things.* See **259**, **260**.
[5] Ablative without **in**.
[6] Accusative.
[7] *Renown will never be wanting to his name.*

Digitized by Google

297. VOCABULARY

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, *be away, absent* (**ā** or **ab** w. **abl.**).
ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (also **affuī**), *be present, stand by, side with.*
dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be wanting, lack.*
īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be in, among.*
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be present at, among.*
ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be against, opposed to, injure.*
possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can.*
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be before, at the head of, command.*
prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, *be useful, benefit.*
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, *remain over, survive, exist.*

callĭdĭtās, -ātis, F. [**callĭdus**], *shrewdness, cunning.*
cāsus, -ūs, M. [**cadō,** *fall*], *falling down, mischance, misfortune.*
clādēs, -is, F., *destruction, defeat.*
diū, adv., *long, a long time.*
dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.* Cf. **suāvis.**
fāma, -ae, F., *rumor, fame, renown.*
ne-que, conj., *and not, nor;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*
parō, 1, *make ready, prepare, get.*
patria, -ae, F., *native land, country.*
praesidium, -ī, N. [**prae, sedeō**], *defence, help, garrison.*
praestāns, -tis, adj. [**prae-stō,** *stand before*], *preëminent, distinguished.*

CHAPTER XLV

DEPONENT VERBS

First and Second Conjugations

298. Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. There are deponents of each of the four regular conjugations:

Admīrāmur opera Deī, *we admire the works of God.*
Miserōs tuēbimur, *we shall protect the wretched.*
Audī multa, loquere pauca, *listen much, say little.*
Caesar prōvinciam sortītus est, *Cæsar obtained (by lot) a province.*

Digitized by Google

299. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of **amō** and **moneō** (**86, 112**).

The principal parts of deponent verbs are thus given:

admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus (sum).
tueor, tuērī, tuitus and tūtus (sum).
loquor, loquī, locūtus (sum).
sortior, sortīrī, sortītus (sum).

300. EXERCISES

I. 1. Admīrāmur māgnitūdinem caelī. Quis nōn admīrābitur? 2. Nocte contemplāmur sīdera. 3. Pars vagātur certīs cursibus, plūrima nōn vagantur. 4. Sōl dominātur inter stellās. 5. Terram lūna comitātur ūna, Jovis stellam lūnae comitantur quattuor. 6. Dārēus Alexandrō māgnam Asiae partem pollicitus est. 7. Improbī sunt iī quī nēminem verentur. 8. Homō facinus cōnfessus est. 9. Comitēs quī salūtem rēgis tuitī erant māximum praemium accēpērunt.

II. 1. Who does not admire the beauty of the stars? 2. Other nations accompanied the Cimbri across the Rhine. 3. They wandered far[1] and wide[1] through Gaul and Spain. 4. The Romans wondered at the great bodies of the Germans. 5. Certain animals imitate human voices. 6. We were contemplating that beautiful likeness. 7. The general promised the soldiers[2] a great reward. 8. He[3] is a bad man who does not respect any one.[4] 9. Children respect their parents, slaves fear their master.

301. VOCABULARY

ad-mīror, 1, *wonder at, admire.*
Alexander, -drī, M., *Alexander*, king of Macedon.
beneficium, -ī, N., *benefit, favor.*
caelum, -ī, N., *sky, heavens.*
Cimbrī, -ōrum, M., *Cimbri*, a German tribe.
comitor, 1 [**comes, -itis**], *accompany, attend.*
cōn-fiteor, 2, **-fessus**, *confess.*

[1] **Longē lātēque.**
[2] Not accusative.
[3] **Is.**
[4] *Not any one = no one.*

Digitized by Google

contemplor, 1, *look at, observe.*
cursus, **-ūs**, M. [**currō**, *run*], *running, course.*
Dārēus, **-ī**, M., *Darius*, a Persian king.
dominor, 1 [**dominus**], *be a lord and master, rule.*
facinus, **-ŏris**, N. [**faciō**], *deed, crime.* Cf. **scelus.**
Germānus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *German.*
imitor, 1, *imitate.*
māgnitūdō, **-inis**, F. [**māgnus**], *greatness.*
mereor, 2, *be worthy of, deserve.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through, by.*
polliceor, 2, *promise.*
pulchritūdō, **-inis**, F. [**pulcher**], *beauty.*
stella, **-ae**, F., *star.*
tueor, 2, **tuitus** and **tūtus**, *watch, defend.* Cf. **dēfendō.**
vagor, 1, *go to and fro, wander.*
vāstō, 1, *lay waste, ravage.*
vereor, 2, *reverence, respect.*

sīdus (286), *a star, a great star, a constellation.*
stella, *a star* as a bright heavenly body.

302. COLLOQUIUM

Pater et Fīliolus

P. Ades, mī fīliole, et mihi libellum ostentā.
come here little book show

F. Eccum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latīnum vidēre cupis.
here it is wish

P. Quod pēnsum tibi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?
impose

F. Pēnsum verbōrum dēpōnentium quae ad conjugātiōnem prīmam atque secundam pertinent.
deponent belong

P. Quam ob rem sīc appellantur ista verba?
wherefore name

F. Quia formam actīvam et sīgnificātiōnem passīvam plērumque dēposuērunt. Sīc nōs praeceptor docuit.
form meaning generally lay aside

P. Quod autem pēnsum in crāstinum diem imperāvit praeceptor?
for to-morrow

F. Ad haec addidit praeceptor alia dēpōnentia. At tū, mī pater, Latīnae linguae jam puer studēbās?
add but

Digitized by Google

P. Certē, fīliole, idque vehementer.
right hard

F. Num ego, sī dīligenter didicerō, ērudītus, ut tū, fīam?
learn learned as become

P. Procul dubiō. At jam tibi eundum est dormītum.
you must go to bed

CHAPTER XLVI

DEPONENT VERBS

Third and Fourth Conjugations

303. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Ūtor vestrā benīgnitāte,** *I avail myself of (use) your kindness.*
2. **Abūtitur patientiā nostrā,** *he abuses our patience.*
3. **Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur,** *the light which we enjoy is given us by God.*
4. **Fungor vice cōtis,** *I serve as (discharge the office of) a whetstone.*
5. **Māgnā praedā potītus est,** *he got great booty.*
6. **Lacte et carne vescēbantur,** *they lived upon milk and flesh.*

Compare the translation of the examples with the Latin. Observe that the direct object of the verb, or of the preposition closely connected with the verb in English, is represented in Latin by the ablative case.

304. Rule of Syntax. — **The deponents *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* and their compounds, take the ablative.**

305. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Meminit praeteritōrum,** *he remembers the past.*
2. **Haec ōlim meminisse juvābit,** *to remember these things will one day give pleasure.*

Digitized by Google

3. **Tōtam causam oblītus est,** *he forgot the whole case.*

4. **Tōtīus causae oblītus est,** *he forgot the whole case.*

Observe that in the above examples the genitive is used in 1 and 4, the accusative in 2 and 3.

306. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* take the genitive or accusative.**

1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are commonly put in the accusative. **Recordor** regularly takes the accusative.

307. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of **regō** and **audiō** (**180, 223**).

308. EXERCISES

I. 1. Sūlla urbem Rōmam armātus[1] ingressus est. 2. Athēniēnsium dux māximam adeptus est glōriam. 3. Alexander Māgnus in Asiam profectus est. 4. Eum multī et nōbilēs virī secūtī sunt. 5. Quās injūriās passus es oblīvīscere.[2] 6. Beneficia quae accēpimus nōn oblīvīscēmur. 7. Quod beneficium accēpit id oblīvīscitur. 8. Omnia patī[3] discimus. 9. Cicerō māgnā cum glōriā cōnsulātū fūnctus est. 10. Lūx quā fruimur dōnum est Deī.

II. 1. Alexander and his companions entered Asia. 2. They suffered both[4] hunger and thirst. 3. He obtained great glory by his victories. 4. He did not forget the words of his master. 5. For he had been the pupil of a wise man. 6. The soldiers follow their general. 7. They[5] are bad men who forget benefits. 8. We can learn to endure all things. 9. Who does not enjoy the light which is given us by God? 10. The boys faithfully discharged their duty.

309. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar, Pompējus, Crassus, imperium inter sē partīti sunt. 2. Caesar Galliam prōvinciam sortītus est.

[1] *Armed.* [2] Imperative. [3] Present infinitive of **patior.**
[4] **Et.** [5] II. See **270. 2.**

Digitized by Google

3. Saepissimē bellī fortūnam expertus est. 4. Posteā tōtā Ītaliā potītus est. 5. Patrēs bona sua cum līberīs partiuntur. 6. Multa in Ītaliā bella orta sunt. 7. Frōns, oculī, vultus, saepe mentiuntur. 8. Quī post mortem Alexandrī rēgnō illīus potītī sunt? 9. Optimē scīmus quod expertī sumus.

II. 1. Soldiers often try the fortune of war. 2. The leaders had divided among themselves the property [1] of the enemy. 3. The Rhone rises not far from the sources of the Rhine. 4. The Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows into the ocean. 5. The best friends share perils with friends. 6. Who possessed the kingdom after Alexander? 7. We will make trial of our valor. 8. They got possession of the camp of the enemy. 9. Who gets by lot Sicily (as) his province? [2]

310. VOCABULARY

adipīscor, 3, **adeptus**, *get, obtain.* Cf. **potior.**
castra, **-ōrum**, N. (plur.), *camp.*
Crassus, **-ī**, M., *Crassus*, a rich Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.
ex-perior, 4, **expertus**, *make trial of, test.*
frōns, **frontis**, F., *brow, forehead.*
fruor, 3, **fruitus (frūctus)**, *enjoy.*
fungor, 3, **fūnctus**, *perform, discharge.*
imperium, **-ī**, N. [imperō], *command, authority, power.*
in-gredior, 3, **-gressus** [gradior], *enter.*
mentior, 4, *lie, deceive.*
oblīvīscor, 3, **oblītus**, *forget.*
ōceanus, **-ī**, M., *ocean.*
officium, **-ī**, N., *duty.*
optimē, adv., *most excellently, best.*
orior,[3] 4, **ortus**, *rise, appear, begin.*
partior, 4 [pars], *divide, share.*
patior, 3, **passus**, *bear, suffer.*
Pompējus, **-ēī**, M., *Pompey*, a celebrated Roman general.
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
potior, 4, *become master of, get.* Cf. **adipīscor.**
proficīscor, 3, **-fectus**, *set out, march.*
prōvincia, **-ae**, F., *province.*
rēgnum, **-ī**, N., *kingdom.*
sequor, 3, **secūtus**, *follow.*
sortior, 4, *draw lots, obtain by lot.*
Sūlla, **-ae**, M., *Sulla*, a Roman general and statesman.

[1] Compare I. 5. [2] Predicate accusative. [3] See vocab. page 248.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER XLVII

311. NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus, *or* alter
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quartus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decmius
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim, *or* sexdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī[1]	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī[1]	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus, *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus, *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
22.	vīgintī duo, *or* duo et vīgintī	vīcēsimus secundus, *or* alter et vīcēsimus
28.	duodētrīgintā[1]	duodētrīcēsimus
29.	ūndētrīgintā[1]	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus

[1] **Duodēvīgintī** = *two from twenty;* **ūndēvīgintī** = **ūnus dē vīgintī,** *one from twenty.* Similarly are formed 28, 29, 38, 39, etc.

Digitized by Google

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus, *or* centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus, *or* centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600.	sēscentī	sēscentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1,000.	mille	mīllēsimus
2,000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus

1. Cardinal numbers answer the question *how many?* ordinals, *which in order?*

2. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable: **quattuor hominēs**, *four men;* **quattuor hominum**, *of four men.*

3. **Ūnus** is declined like **bonus**, except that it has genitive and dative singular **ūnīus, ūnī**, like **alius** (**201**).

4. **Duo** and **trēs** are thus declined:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

5. The hundreds, **ducentī**, etc., are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

6. **Mille** is indeclinable in the singular, and is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun: **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men;* **mille hominum**, *a thousand (of) men.* The plural has the forms **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus**, and is always a noun: **tria mīlia hominum**, *three thousand men (three thousands of men).*

Digitized by Google

7. The ordinals are declined like **bonus**.

8. Other kinds of numerals are the distributives: **singulī, -ae, -a,** *one each,* **bīnī, -ae, -a,** *two each,* etc.; and the numeral adverbs: **semel,** *once,* **bis,** *twice,* etc.

312. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Decem annōs Trōja oppūgnābātur,** *Troy was besieged for ten years.*
2. **Turris alta est centum pedēs,** *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

The accusative **annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time;* **pedēs,** extent of *space.* The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

313. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **Extent of *time* or *space* is expressed by the accusative.**

314. EXERCISES

I. 1. Homō ūlum ōs, duās aurēs, duōs oculōs habet. 2. Alexander Māgnus tredecim annōs rēgnāvit. 3. Templum Diānae quadringentōs quīnquāgintā pedēs longum et ducentōs vīgintī pedēs lātum erat. 4. Annus spatium trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum est. 5. Duodecim sunt mēnsēs. 6. Mēnsis trīgintā diēs habet, Februārius duodētrīgintā. 7. Diēs vīgintī quattuor hōrās habet. 8. Rōmānōrum veterum annus decem mēnsēs habēbat; Mārtius erat prīmus, December decimus. 9. Aut tertius decimus aut quīntus decimus diēs mēnsis Īdūs nōminābātur.

II. 1. Romulus, the first king of Rome, reigned thirty-seven years. 2. This house is fifty-nine [1] feet long and forty-eight feet wide. 3. The river is fourteen feet deep and ninety-two feet wide. 4. With [2] the ancient Romans September was the seventh month; with us September is the ninth month. 5. The Roman consuls held power for one year.

[1] See page 143, note. [2] **Apud,** with accusative.

Digitized by Google

6. In the five hundred and fiftieth year of the city Scipio was consul. 7. Five and twenty languages were known to King Mithridates. 8. In the first month of the year there are thirty-one days. 9. A Roman legion had five thousand foot-soldiers and three hundred horse-soldiers.

315. VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., *year.*
auris, -is, F., *ear.*
December, -bris, M. [**decem**], *December.* Often as adj.
Diāna, -ae, F., *Diana,* goddess of the chase. [as adj.
Februārius, -ī, M., *February.* Oft.
Īdūs, -uum, F. (plur.), *the Ides of the month* (**244.** 1).
lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language.*
Mārtius, -ī, M. [**Mārs**], *March.* Often as adj.
Mithridātēs, -is, M., *Mithridates,* king of Pontus.
ōs, ōris, N., *mouth, face.*
September, -bris, M. [**septem**], *September.* Often as adi.
spatium, -ī, N., *room, space, period.*

CHAPTER XLVIII

316. IRREGULAR VERBS

Volō, velle, voluī, ——, *be willing, will, wish.*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *be unwilling, will not.*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	māluerам
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	(*Wanting*)	nōlī	(*Wanting*)
		nōlīte	
FUT.	(*Wanting*)	[nōlītō, etc.]	(*Wanting*)

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	(*Wanting*)

317. Learn the tenses of the indicative and infinitive of **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**, and the present imperative of **nōlō**.

318. EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōs scrībere volumus, tū vīs legere, ille puer lūdere vult. 2. Cūr in hortō ambulāre volunt? 3. In hortō ambulāre mālunt quod ibi sunt fontēs et arborēs. 4. Volēbantne vitia sua excūsāre? 5. Nōlī excūsāre vitia tua. 6. Nōlīte

Digitized by Google

oblīvīscī praeceptōrum[1] parentum. 7. Tīmoleōn māluit dīligī quam metuī. 8. Valēre māluerat quam dīves esse. 9. Aliēna quisque vitia reprehendere māvult quam sua corrigere. 10. Volumus ad fīnem itineris prōgredī.

II. 1. Why would you rather read than write? 2. We would rather walk in the fields with you. 3. Who would not rather be praised than blamed? 4. They will be unwilling to accept your gift. 5. Do not forget,[2] boys, the precepts of your teacher. 6. Do not forget, my boy, the lesson which I have explained. 7. He listened because he wished to learn. 8. He would not[3] blame another's fault; he greatly desired to correct his own. 9. We wish the same (things) as[4] you. 10. Our friends will wish the same (thing) as ourselves.

319. VOCABULARY

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [**alius**], *belonging to another, another's.*
ambulō, 1, *walk, take a walk.*
corrigō, 3, **-rēxī, -rēctum** [**com, regō,** *keep straight*], *make straight, reform, correct.*
dīligō, 3, **-lēxī, -lēctum** [**dis,** *apart,* **legō,** *choose*], *esteem, love.* Cf. **amō.**
ex-cūsō, 1 [**causa**], *excuse.*
ex-plicō, 1, **-avī, -ātum** (**-uī, -itum**) [**plicō**], *unfold, explain.*
ibi, adv., *there.* Cf. **ubi,** *where.*
iter, itineris, N. [**eō,** **327.** 1], *journey* (**262**).
lūdō, 3, **lūsī, lūsum,** *play.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, —— [**magis, volō**], *wish rather, prefer, would rather.*
māximē. adv. (sup. of **magis,** *more*), *most, especially, greatly.*
metuō, 3, **-uī, -ūtum** [**metus**], *fear.* Cf. **timeō.**
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [**nōn, volō**], *be unwilling, will not, not wish.*
praeceptum, -ī, N. [**praecipiō**], *maxim, precept.*
prō-gredior, 3, **-gressus** [**gradior**], *go forward, advance.*
quod, conj., *because.* Cf. **quia.**
re-prehendō, 3, **-hendī, -hēnsum,** *hold back, restrain, reprove.*
Tīmoleōn, -ontis, M., *Timoleon,* a Corinthian.
valeō, 2, **-uī, -itum,** *be strong* or *well.*
vitium, -ī, N., *fault, blemish, vice.*
volō, velle, voluī, ——, *be willing, will, wish, desire.* Cf. **dēsīderō.**

[1] From **praeceptum.**
[2] Compare I. 6.
[3] *Was unwilling.*
[4] See page 128, note 5.

Digitized by Google

amō, *love*, not implying and not excluding *esteem;* the common word.

dīligō, *love* unselfishly and with esteem; more restricted in meaning than **amō**.

volō means both less and more than *wish*, namely, *consent* and *will;* very much used.

dēsīderō means *wish ardently*, with the notion (which **volō** has not) of *lacking* or *missing* the thing much desired; more restricted in meaning than **volō**.

320. FOR TRANSLATION

Multī hominēs volunt quidem rēctē facere, sed nōn faciunt; nam velle et facere nōn idem est. Saepe homō rēctē agere vult, sed vīrēs dēsunt. Multī peccāta sua excūsāre quam dēpōnere mālunt. Saepe aliēna peccāta vituperāre quam nostra corrigere mālumus. Multī suā sorte nōn sunt contentī, sed aliēna appetere mālunt. At cūr nōn fēlīciter vīvere māvīs? Fēlīx is est quī rēctē agere vult rēctēque agit.

CHAPTER XLIX

321 THE IRREGULAR VERB *Ferō*

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: *bear, carry, endure.*

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, *or* -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPER.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

Digitized by Google

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	fer[1]	ferte	[ferre]	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	———
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	———	PERF.	lātus

GERUND

G.	ferendī
D.	ferendō
Ac.	ferendum
Ab.	ferendō

SUPINE

Ac.	lātum	Ab.	lātū

322. Compounds of ferō are conjugated like the simple verb. Observe the changes suffered by certain of the prepositions in the following:

ab-	auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum.
ad-	adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl).
com-	cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl).
dis-	differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum.
ex-	efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.
in-	īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum (inl).
ob-	offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum.
sub-	sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.

323. Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of ferō.

[1] For fere; dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have imperative present second singular dīc, dūc, fac, fer.

Digitized by Google

324. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aufert, aufertur. 2. Auferet, auferētur. 3. Abstulit, ablātus est. 4. Cōnferre, cōnferrī. 5. Cōnferunt, cōnferuntur. 6. Cōnferent, cōnferentur. 7. Contulerant, collatī erant. 8. Distulērunt, dīlātī sunt. 9. Distulerit, dīlātus erit. 10. Distulisse, dīlātus esse. 11. Differēbant, differēbantur.

II. 1. We bear, we are borne. 2. We were bearing, we were borne. 3. We have borne, we have been borne. 4. We shall bear, we shall be borne. 5. We had borne, we had been borne. 6. Bear thou, bear ye. 7. To offer, to be offered. 8. Ye shall offer, ye shall be offered. 9. To have offered, to have been offered. 10. Ye offer, ye will offer. 11. Ye are offered, ye will be offered.

325. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ferte patienter[1] labōrēs. 2. Bene ferre māgnam fortūnam disce. 3. Ferte patienter quae[2] mūtārī nōn possunt. 4. Nōn omnis ager quī seritur fert frūgēs. 5. Benīgnum rēgem nōn tulistis; jam ferum et barbarum fertōte. 6. Nōlīte differre pēnsum quod hodiē facere potestis. 7. Imperātor mīlitibus dēfessīs auxilium attulit. 8. In ūnum locum collātum est ex agrīs omne frūmentum. 9. Longa[3] nōbīs est omnis mora quae gaudia differt. 10. Caesar omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant veniam dedit.

II. 1. They bore labor with patience. 2. They did not endure a good king; now they are enduring a bad one.[4] 3. We cannot put off our tasks. 4. We shall learn to bear our good fortune well. 5. They bore with patience that[5] which they could not change. 6. The robbers bore off the

[1] What might be substituted for the adverb? See 144, 145.
[2] See page 130, note 3. [3] *Tedious.* [4] Omit. [5] Id.

Digitized by Google

booty which they had seized. 7. Do not[1] bring me that which I do not want. 8. Delays which postpone our joy are always tedious. 9. The townsmen carried their all[2] with them out of the town.

326. VOCABULARY

ad-ferō (afferō), adferre, attulī, adlātum, *bear to, bring.*

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away.*

auxilium, -ī, N., *help, aid.*

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous.*

benīgnus, -a, -um, adj., *kind, good.*

cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conlātum), *bring together, collect;* **sē cōnferre**, *betake one's self.*

dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dīlātum [dis, *apart*], *bear apart, scatter, put off, postpone.*

ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], *bear out, bring forth.*

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, cruel.*

frūgēs, -um, F. (plur.), *fruits.*

gaudium, -ī, N. [gaudeō, *rejoice*], *joy, delight.*

īn-ferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum (inlātum), *bear in, cause;* **bellum īnferre**, *to make war;* w. dat.

jam, adv., *already, now, at last.*

mora, -ae, F., *delay.*

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum [ob, *before*], *present, offer.*

patienter, adv. **[patiēns]**, *patiently, with patience.*

serō, 3, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant.*

suf-ferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum [sub], *undergo, endure.*

venia, -ae, F., *indulgence, kindness, mercy.*

CHAPTER L

327. IRREGULAR VERBS

Eō, īre, iī [īvī], ītum, *go.*

Fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to **faciō**), *be made, become.*

INDICATIVE

	Eō		Fīō	
PRES.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fīunt

[1] Compare I. 6.

[2] *Their all*, **omnia sua.**

Digitized by Google

	Eō	Fīō
Impf.	**ībam**	**fiēbam**
Fut.	**ībō**	**fiam**
Perf.	**iī**	**factus sum**
Plup.	**ieram**	**factus eram**
F. P.	**ierō**	**factus erō**

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	**eam**	**fiam**
Impf.	**īrem**	**fierem**
Perf.	**ierim**	**factus sim**
Plup.	**iissem**	**factus essem**

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**ī**	**īte**	**fī**	**fīte**
Fut.	**ītō**	**ītōte**		
	ītō	**euntō**		

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**īre**	**fierī**
Perf.	**iisse**	**factus esse**
Fut.	**itūrus esse**	**factum īrī**

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**iēns**, gen. **euntis**	Pres.	———
Fut.	**itūrus**	Ger.	**faciendus**
Perf.	———	Perf.	**factus**

GERUND

G. **eundī**
D. **eundō**
Ac. **eundum**
Ab. **eundō**

SUPINE

Ac. **itum** Ab. **itū**

1. The root of **eō**, namely *i*, is changed to *e* before a vowel, except in perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, and in nominative singular of present participle.

2. Compounds of **eō** generally form the perfect in *ĭī* instead of *īvī*. The simple verb rarely, if ever, has *īvī*, *īveram*, etc.

3. The *i* of **fīō** is long except when followed by *er*, and in **fit**.

328. Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive of **eō** and **fīō**.

Digitized by Google

329. EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōlīte velle id quod fierī nōn potest. 2. Amīcī Alexandrī rēgēs factī sunt. 3. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū fit bonus. 4. Leve fīēbat onus, quod bene ferēbātur. 5. Apud veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolīs fīēbant cōnsulēs. 6. Omnēs ferē[1] hominēs senectūte fīunt prūdentiōrēs. 7. Quīdam amnēs subeunt terram rūrsusque in terram redeunt. 8. Alpēs nēmō ante Hannibalem cum exercitū trānsiit. 9. Miltiadēs Parum īnsulam expūgnāre nōn potuit et in patriam rediit. 10. Populus solet nōn nunquam[2] dīgnōs praeterīre.

II. 1. That has been done which you wished. 2. My friends, you become wiser by old age. 3. Men never become good by chance. 4. Who will cross the river with me?[3] 5. The generals crossed the mountains with a large part[4] of their forces. 6. Light become the burdens that are patiently borne. 7. Our friends have gone away, but they will return. 8. The people passed by many worthy men. 9. The inhabitants of the city went out with their horses and wagons. 10. The generals return to[5] their country with prisoners and booty. 11. Do not[6] cross the very deep river.

330. EXERCISES

I. 1. Septiēs Marius, quī Cimbrōs et Teutonēs duōbus ācerrimīs proeliīs vīcit, cōnsul factus est. 2. Sōcratēs aequō animō diem suprēmum obiit. 3. Ariovistī cōpiae intrā annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subierant. 4. Autumnō multae avēs in aliās terrās proficīscuntur, at vēre novō

[1] **Ferē** is often thus placed between an adjective and its noun.

[2] **Nōn nunquam**, *not never* = *sometimes*.

[3] See **265**. 3.

[4] See page 21, note 1.

[5] *To* = *into*.

[6] See **318**. I. 5 and 6.

Digitized by Google

redeunt. 5. Abeunt omnia unde orta sunt. 6. Alexander cōnsiliō[1] fortitūdineque omnēs anteībat; omnēs labōrēs subībat.

II. 1. In winter[2] the days become shorter and the nights longer. 2. After the battle many perished of cold[3] and hunger. 3. Cicero was made consul[4] by the Romans. 4. By the prudence (*cōnsilium*) and valor of Scipio Hannibal was compelled to return into Africa. 5. We ought to meet our last day with equanimity.[5] 6. Alexander came off victorious[6] from all his battles.

331. VOCABULARY

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go off, come off, go away* (**327**. 2).
aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal; calm.*
ante-eō, -īre, -iī, ——, *go before, surpass.*
apud, prep. w. acc., *with, in, near, among.*
Ariovistus, -ī, M., *Ariovistus,* king of a German tribe.
autumnus, -ī, M., *autumn.*
cōgō, 3, **-ēgī, -āctum** [**com, agō**], *drive together; compel.*
cōpia, -ae, F., *power, abundance, wealth;* plur., *troops, forces.*
dēbeō, 2, **-uī, -itum,** *owe, ought.*
ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go out.*
ferē, adv., *nearly, for the most part.*
intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*
Marius, -ī, M., *Marius,* a famous Roman general.
nāscor, 3, **nātus,** *be born.*
ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go towards, meet.*
Parus, -ī, F., *Paros,* an island in the Ægean Sea (**11**. 4).
per-eō, -īre, -iī, ——, *perish.*
praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit.*
red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *return.*
re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry back.*
rūrsus, adv. [**re-vorsus, re-vertō**], *turned back, back, again.*
septiēs, num. adv. [**septem**], *seven times.*
sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go under, enter, undergo.*
tēctum, -ī, N. [**tegō,** *cover*], *covering, shelter, roof.*
Teutonēs, -um, M., *the Teutons,* a German tribe.
trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go over, cross.*

[1] See **260**.
[2] Compare I. 4.
[3] Ablative.
[4] Compare I. 1; also **47**.
[5] Compare I. 2.
[6] Victor.

Digitized by Google

332. COLLOQUIUM

TĪTYRUS ET MELIBOEUS

T. Aliquis jānuam pulsat. Ī, puer, aperī jānuam.
door knock open

[*Meliboeus trīstī vultū passibus tardīs introit.*]
steps slow enter

Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Cūr iste vultus trīstis?
how do you do

M. Ēheu! mī Tītyre, abeō ē meā patriā.

T. Cūr abīs? Quō abībis? Nōlī relinquere haec arva dulcia.
leave fields

M. Quid tibi vīs? Meōs agrōs mīlitibus impiīs dōnāvit Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interiit. Ipse periī.
what would you have me do wicked has given am undone

T. Minimē, amīce; adī ad Octāviānum; ille est benīgnus, neque vult tē perīre. Tū agrōs recipiēs.

M. Parva spēs mihi est redeundī; tamen ībō, ut tū monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam.

T. Et redībis in agrōs tuōs; redībit pāx aurea. Valē, mī Meliboee, es bonō animō.
keep up your courage

M. Et tū valē, bone Tītyre.

CHAPTER LI

PREPOSITIONS

333. Thus far several prepositions have been used in the exercises, some followed by the accusative and some by the ablative. These are the only cases in Latin that follow prepositions.

PREPOSITIONS FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE

ā (ab, abs), *away from, by.*
absque, *without.*
cōram, *in presence of.*
cum, *with.*
dē, *from, concerning.*
ē (ex), *out of, from.*
prae, *before, in comparison with.*
prō, *before, for.*
sine, *without.*
tenus, *as far as, up to.*

Digitized by Google

1. **In**, meaning *into, to, towards, for*, that is after verbs denoting *motion*, takes the accusative.

2. **In**, meaning *in, on, at*, that is after verbs denoting *rest*, takes the ablative. See **334**.

3. **Sub**, *under, up to*, after verbs of *motion*, takes the accusative; after verbs of *rest*, the ablative.

4. Remember that all prepositions, except the ten mentioned and **in** and **sub**, are followed by the accusative only.

Expressions of Place

334. *Examine the following:* —

1. **In oppidō**, *in the town.*
2. **In nāvī**, *on shipboard.*
3. **Ad montem**, *to the mountain.*
4. **Ex agrīs**, *from the fields.*
5. **In Ītaliā**, *in Italy.*
6. **In Ītaliam**, *to Italy.*
7. **Ex Ītaliā**, *from Italy.*
8. **Athēnīs**, *at (in) Athens.*
9. **Corinthī**, *at (in) Corinth.*
10. **Thūriīs**, *at (in) Thurii.*
11. **Carthāginī**, *at (in) Carthage.*
12. **Rōmae**, *at (in) Rome.*
13. **Rōmam**, *to Rome.*
14. **Rōmā**, *from Rome.*

Observe the ways of denoting the place *in, on, at, to, from* which. In English we always[1] use a preposition with the noun of *place*, as the examples show. So in Latin (see examples 1–7), except with names of towns.[2] For these a rule may be inferred from the examples 8–14.

335. Rule of Syntax. — **With names of towns —**

1. The place *in* or *at* which is expressed by the locative. (See **14.** 2; **40**; **175**).

2. The place *to* which, by the accusative without a preposition.[3]

3. The place *from* which, by the ablative without a preposition.[4]

[1] Except in the case of the word *home*, after a verb of *motion*.

[2] Names of small islands are often treated like names of towns.

[3] This accusative may be called the Accusative of Limit, because it denotes the limit, or end, of motion.

[4] This ablative is the *ablative of separation*. (**128, 129, 130.**)

Digitized by Google

336. **Domus,** *home, house,* and **rūs,** *the country,* have the construction of names of towns:

domī, *at home.*	**rūrī,** *in the country.*
domum, (*to*) *home.*	**rūs,** *to* (*into*) *the country.*
domō, *from home.*	**rūre,** *from the country.*

337. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Cōnsulēs in sēdem suam prōcessēre.[1] 2. Porsena rēx īnfestō cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit. 3. Rōmānī ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant. 4. Nova Rōmae dignitās creāta est, quae dictātūra appellāta est. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulit. 6. Missī sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum ōrātōrēs dē pāce. 7. Is dē forō domum sē recipiēbat. 8. Erat quīdam Athēnīs quī sē sapientem profitēbātur. 9. Rēgulus in Āfricam trājēcit. 10. Deinde Rōmam missus est, sed mox Carthāginem rediit. 11. Rōmā missī sunt Carthāginem lēgātī. 12. Rōmānī duās clādēs in Hispāniā accēpērunt. 13. Tunc Scīpiō ex Sicilia in Āfricam profectus est. 14. Hannibal ex angustiīs ēvāsit.

II. 1. The consul set out from Rome with a large army. 2. We have removed from the city into the country. 3. Then the general retreated[2] into Campania. 4. I have lived in Athens three years.[3] 5. Tarquin remained at Cumæ a long time. 6. Scipio defeated Hannibal at Zama. 7. Regulus returned from Africa to Rome. 8. Afterwards he was sent back from Rome to Carthage. 9. Cæsar carried on war in Gaul eight years.[3] 10. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 11. The consul proceeded to Athens with his army. 12. From Athens he sailed[4] to Italy. 13. Do you remain (*imperative*) at home; I will return to the army. 14. Shall you come home soon?

[1] From **prōcēdō,** perfect tense.
[2] See I. 7, and **239**.
[3] See **313**.
[4] See **272**. II. 6.

Digitized by Google

338. VOCABULARY

angustiae, -ārum, F. (plur.) [**angustus,** *narrow*], *narrow pass.* Cf. Eng. "narrows."

appellō, 1, *address, call, name.*

Arpīnum, -ī, N., *Arpinum,* a town in Italy.

Athēnae, -ārum, F. (plur.) *Athens.*

Carthāgō, -inis, F., *Carthage,* a city in Africa.

Coriolānus, -ī, M., *a surname of C. Marcius,* a Roman consul.

Cūmae, -ārum, F. (plur.), *Cumæ,* a town in Campania.

dē-migrō, 1, *emigrate, remove.*

dictātūra, -ae, F. [**dictātor**], *office of dictator, dictatorship.*

dīgnitās, -ātis, F. [**dīgnus,** *worthy*], *worth, dignity, office.*

ē-vādō, 3, **ēvāsī, ēvāsum,** *go forth, escape.*

īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, troublesome, dangerous.*

ōrātor, -ōris, M. [**ōrō,** *speak, plead*], *orator, ambassador.*

Porsena, -ae, M., *Porsena,* an Etruscan king.

pro-fiteor, 2, **-fessus** [**fateor**], *acknowledge, confess, declare.*

re-mittō, 3, **-mīsī, -missum,** *send back.*

sēdēs, -is, F. [**sedeō,** *sit*], *seat, abode.*

Tarquinius, -ī, M., *Tarquin,* a Roman king.

trā-iciō, 3, **-jēcī, -jectum** [**trāns, jaciō**], *throw across, pass over, cross.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

Zama, -ae, F., *Zama,* a town in Africa.

339. FOR TRANSLATION

THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ, B.C. 216

Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā profectī sunt duo cōnsulēs, Aemilius Paullus et Terentius Varrō. Paullō[1] cunctātiō Fabī[2] magis placēbat; Varrō autem, ferōx[3] et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōnsilia. Ambō cōnsulēs ad vīcum, quī Cannae appellābātur, castra commūnīvērunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō collēgā[4] aciem īnstrūxit et sīgnum pūgnae dedit. Hannibal autem ita cōnstituerat aciem ut Rōmānīs[5] et[6] sōlis radiī et ventus ab oriente

[1] For the case, see **343**.

[2] Fabius Maximus, whose policy had been one of prudence, or rather, of extreme caution.

[3] *Impetuous.*

[4] *His colleague unwilling* = *against the wishes of his colleague.* See **412**.

[5] *To the Romans,* dative with adversī.

[6] *Both.*

Digitized by Google

pulverem adflāns[1] adversī essent.[2] Victus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nūsquam graviōre vulnere afflīcta est rēs pūblica.

[*Continued on page* 177.]

CHAPTER LII

ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

340. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Alter cōnsulum,** *one of the consuls.*
2. **Ūnus mīlitum,** *one of the soldiers.*
3. **Quis vestrum?** *who of you?*
4. **Nihil novī,** *nothing (of) new.*
5. **Satis pecūniae,** *enough (of) money.*
6. **Ūnus ex mīlitibus,** *one of the soldiers.*
7. **Minimus ex illīs,** *the youngest of them.*

The first five of the examples illustrate what is called the PARTITIVE GENITIVE, the word in the genitive denoting a *whole*, and the word which it limits a *part* of that whole; 6 and 7 illustrate another way of expressing the partitive idea.

341. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō,** *Catiline was (a man) of bad disposition.*
2. **Iccius summā nōbilitāte fuit,** *Iccius was (a man) of the highest rank.*
3. **Puer sēdecim annōrum,** *a boy of sixteen years.*
4. **Vestis māgnī pretī,** *a garment of great value.*
5. **Vir summae virtūtis,** *a man of the highest courage.*

The above are examples of the DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE and the DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE. Observe that in each instance the ablative or genitive is limited by an adjective, and that the adjective and noun together denote a *quality* or *characteristic* of that which is described.

[1] Present participle of **adflō.** [2] *Were an annoyance.*

Digitized by Google

342. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Rēgī serviō,** *I serve the king.*
2. **Cīvitātī prōdest,** *he benefits the state.*
3. **Caesarī placuit,** *it pleased Cæsar.*
4. **Frātrī persuādet,** *he persuades his brother.*
5. **Crēde mihi,** *believe me.*
6. **Lēgibus cīvitātis pārēbat (220. I. 2).**
7. **Interdum amīcīs nocet (272. I. 8).**

Observe that the verbs, which in English have a direct object, are followed in Latin by the dative (the case of the indirect object). Such verbs should be carefully noted as they occur in the exercises. They may be summed up in the following —

343. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **Many verbs signifying to *please* or *displease, benefit* or *injure, command* or *obey, serve, resist, believe, threaten, persuade,* and the like, take the dative.**

344. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit,** *it was of great service to our men.*
2. **Est mihi cūrae,** *it is (for) a care to me.*
3. **Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mīserant,** *they had sent cavalry to aid Cæsar (for aid to Cæsar).*
4. **Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit,** *he leaves five cohorts to defend the camp (for defence of the camp).*

Observe in each of the above sentences two datives, one translated (literally) with *for*, the other with *to*. In 1 and 2, **ūsuī** and **cūrae** are like the predicate nominative, which is often used where we might expect this dative; in 3 and 4, **auxiliō** and **praesidiō** denote a purpose. This dative *for which* is sometimes called the DATIVE OF SERVICE. The two together are sometimes called the DOUBLE DATIVE.

Observe instances of the foregoing constructions as they occur in the exercises and reading lessons.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LIII

DERIVATION

345. Some derivations have been indicated in the vocabularies by separating the parts of compound words, and, beginning with **221**, by putting words in brackets. The bracketed words, however, are not to be understood as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, as is customarily the case in lexicons and special vocabularies, but that they are *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem.* The habit of observing such relationships is the important thing. The following list is selected from previous vocabularies for further study of the subject: —

1. **amō**, *love;* **amīcus**, *loving, friendly;* **amīcitia**, *friendship;* **inimīcus** (for **in-amīcus**), *unfriendly, hostile.*
2. **ager**, *field, land, soil;* **agri-cola** (**colō**, *cultivate*), *one who cultivates the soil, farmer;* **agrī cultūra**, *cultivation of the soil, agriculture.* **Colō** also means *dwell,* hence **incola**, *inhabitant.* Meaning of **incolō**?
3. **cīvis**, *citizen;* **cīvīlis**, *pertaining to a citizen;* **cīvitās**, *the condition of a citizen,* or *a body of citizens, state.* Like **cīvīlis**, form and define adjectives from the stems of **puer** and **hostis**.
4. **regō**, v., *rule;* **rēx** (**rēgs**), *ruler, king;* **rēgīna**, *ruler, queen;* **rēgnum**, *kingdom;* **rēgnō**, *be king, reign;* **rēgula**, n., *rule.*
5. **faciō**, *do;* **facinus**, *thing done, deed;* **facilis** (*that may be done*), *easy;* **difficilis** (for **dis-facilis**), *not to be done, difficult.*
6. **nōscō**, *know;* **nōmen**, n. (*that by which a thing is known*), *name;* **nōminō**, v., *name;* **nōbilis** (*that can be known*), *well-known, noble,* cf. **facilis**.
7. **fuga**, *flight;* **fugiō**, *flee.* **līber**, adj., *free;* **līberō**, v., *free.*
   metus, n., *fear;* **metuō**, v., *fear.* **laus**, n., *praise;* **laudō**, v., *praise.*
   timor, n., *fear;* **timeō**, v., *fear.* **discō**, *learn;* **discipulus**, *learner.*
   dō, *give;* **dōnum**, *gift.* **moveō**, *move;* **mōtus**, *motion.*
   fluō, *flow;* **fluvius**, **flūmen**, *stream, river.*
   dominus, *lord, master;* **domina**, *mistress;* **dominor**, *be master.*
8. **aurum**, *gold;* **aureus**, *of gold, golden.*
   lignum, *wood;* **ligneus**, *of wood, wooden.*

Digitized by Google

ferrum, *iron;* **ferreus**, *of iron, iron.*
argentum, *silver.* Form an adjective from the stem of **argentum**, and define it.

9. **alō**, *nourish;* **alimentum** (*that which nourishes*), *food, provisions.*
moneō, *remind;* **monumentum** (*that which reminds*), *monument.*
ōrnō, *adorn;* meaning of **ōrnāmentum**?

10. **pulcher**, *beautiful;* **pulchritūdō**, *beauty.*
fortis, *brave;* **fortitūdō**, *bravery.*
turpis, *base;* **turpitūdō**, *baseness.*
altus, *high.* Form a noun from the stem of **altus**, and define it.

11. **īgnāvus** (*not busy*), *idle;* **īgnāvia**, *idleness.*
memor, *mindful;* **memoria** (*mindfulness*), *memory.*
piger, *lazy;* **pigritia**, *laziness.*
prūdēns, *wise, prudent;* **prūdentia**, *wisdom, prudence.*
sapiēns, *wise;* **sapientia**, *wisdom.*
amīcus, *friend;* **amīcitia**, *friendship.*
Form a noun from the stem of **inimīcus**, and define it.

12. **equus**, *horse;* **eques**, *horseman.*
pēs (stem **ped**), *foot;* **pedēs**, *foot-soldier.*

13. **arō**, v., *plough;* **arātrum**, n. (*thing to plough with*), *plough.*
(**rōdō**, *gnaw*); **rōstrum** (*that which gnaws*), *beak, snout,* hence *beak of a ship.*

14. **vir**, *man;* **virtūs**, *manliness, virtue.*
servus, *slave;* **servitūs**, *slavery.*
cōnsul, *consul;* **cōnsulātus**, *office of a consul, consulship.*
magister, *master;* **magistrātus**, *office of a* **magister**, *magistracy,* also *magistrate.*

15. **perīculum**, *danger;* **perīculōsus**, *full of danger, dangerous.*
frōns, *leaf;* **frondōsus**, *covered with leaves, leafy.*
studium, *zeal;* meaning of **studiōsus**?

16. **audeō**, *dare;* **audāx**, *daring.*
rapiō, *seize;* **rapāx**, *grasping.*
teneō, *hold;* meaning of **tenāx**?

17. **scrībō**, *write;* **scrīptor**, *writer.*
vincō (**victum**), *conquer;* **victor**, *conqueror.*
dēfendō, *defend;* **dēfēnsor**, *defender.*
From stem of **amō**, *love*, form a word meaning *lover;* from stem of **audiō**, *hear*, in the same way, a word meaning *hearer.*

Digitized by Google

18. **ūllus**, *any;* **nūllus**, *not any.*
sciō, *know;* **nesciō**, *know not.*
19. **homō**, *man;* **hūmānus** (*belonging to a man*), *human.*
mors, *death;* **mortālis** (*belonging to death*), *mortal.*
alius, *another;* **aliēnus** (*belonging to another*), *another's.*
20. Observe also the force of the various prefixes, **ā** (**ab**), **ad**, **dē**, **dis**, **in**, **prae**, **prō**, **re**, **sub**, etc., as in **ā-mittō**, **ac-cēdō**, **dē-scendō**, **dī-mittō**, **īn-ferō**, **prae-sum**, **prō-cēdō**, **re-ferō**, **sub-eō**, etc.

CHAPTER LIV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Sequence of Tenses: Practice on Forms

346. Learn the subjunctive of **sum** (**73**) and its compounds (**292, 293**).

The chief use of the subjunctive is in subjoined, that is, dependent, clauses.

347. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Audiō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I hear where he is, has been* or *was, is going to be.*
2. **Audiam ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I shall hear where he is, has been* or *was, is going to be.*
3. **Audīverō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit,** *I shall have heard where he is, has been* or *was, is going to be.*
4. **Audiēbam ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset,** *I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*
5. **Audīvī ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset,** *I heard, have heard*[1] *where he was, had been, was going to be.*
6. **Audīveram ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset,** *I had heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*

[1] Occasionally the perfect meaning *have, has,* is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect.

Digitized by Google

Notice what tenses are used in the principal clauses of each of the preceding groups of examples. Those in the first group — the present, the future, and the future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. Those in the second group — the imperfect, the perfect, and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

Observe also that primary tenses of the subjunctive are used in the first three, secondary in the last three.

348. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and secondary follow secondary.**[1]

Observe that the subjunctive in the foregoing examples is translated like the indicative.

349. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Nēmō adest quīn sit fortis,** *no one is present who is not brave.*
2. **Quis adest quīn sit fortis?** *who is present who is not brave?*
3. **Nēmō dubitat quīn sit fortis,** *no one doubts that he is brave,* or *his being brave.*
4. **Nōn dubium est quīn sit fortis,** *there is no doubt that he is brave,* or *of his being brave.*
5. **Nōn dubitō quīn sit fortis,** *I do not doubt that he is brave,* or *his being brave.*

Observe (1) that the subjunctive follows **quīn**; (2) that **quīn** is used after negative expressions and questions that expect a negative answer; (3) that the subjunctive clause with **quīn** (compounded of **quī**, *who*, and **nē**, *not*) may be variously rendered *who . . . not, that,* etc.

350. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis dubitat quīn sint fortēs? 2. Nēmō dubitat quīn vīta sit brevis. 3. Nōn dubitō quīn adfuerint. 4. Nōn dubium erat quīn essent fortēs. 5. Quis dubitābat quīn

[1] See footnote on preceding page.

Digitized by Google

fuissent fortēs? 6. Nēmō dubitāverat quīn adfuisset; adfuissent. 7. Nōn est dubium quīn possit; possint; potuerit; potuerint. 8. Quis dubitābat quīn posset? possent? potuisset? potuissent? 9. Nōn est dubium quīn praesīs; praesītis; praefueris; praefueritis. 10. Quis dubitāverat quīn āfuisset? āfuissent?

II. 1. I do not doubt that he is present; has been present; is absent; has been absent. 2. Who doubted that he could? they could? we could? you could? 3. They do not doubt that he is at the head of (*praesum*); has been at the head of. 4. Who has doubted his surviving? their surviving? 5. Who doubted their injuring? having injured? 6. There is no doubt that he can; we can; you can; they can. 7. There was no doubt that he could; I could; they could.

351. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō** (**86**) and **moneō** (**112**).

1. Observe that in the active voice the imperfect subjunctive can be formed readily from the present infinitive, and the pluperfect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive. Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative.

352. *Examine the following:* —

Sē armant ut pūgnent, *they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, to fight, so as to fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting.*

Observe that the various equivalents of **ut pūgnent** have a common notion or idea, that of *purpose*.

353. Rule of Syntax. — *Ut* **with the subjunctive may be used to denote a purpose, and may be variously translated.**

354. Review the indicative and imperative of **eō**, *go* (**327**).

Digitized by Google

355. EXERCISES

I. 1. It ut mōnstret et moneat. 2. Ībat ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 3. Iit ut mōnstret et moneat. 4. Iit ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 5. Ībunt ut mōnstrent et moneant. 6. Iērunt ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 7. Ierant ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 8. Nōn dubitāvī quīn mōnstrāvisset et monuisset. 9. Quis dubitāverat quīn mōnstrāvissent et monuissent? 10. Nēmō dubitāvit quīn mōnstrāvissēmus et monuissēmus. 11. Nōn est dubium quīn mōnstrēmus et moneāmus.

II. 1. He goes to see and praise. 2. They go for the purpose of seeing and praising. 3. We will go in order to see and praise. 4. Who will not go that he may see and praise? 5. You will go to see and praise. 6. They have gone to see and praise. 7. He has gone for the purpose of seeing and praising. 8. He went in order to see and praise. 9. Go (*plur.*) to see and praise. 10. He was going that he might see and praise. 11. Who doubts his having seen and praised? 12. No one doubted that they had seen and praised.

356. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperat ut[1] —
cōnētur, cōnentur, cōner, cōnēmur.
2. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperābat ut —
cōnārētur, cōnārentur, cōnārer, cōnārēmur.
3. Quis dubitat quīn —
cōnātus sit, cōnātī sint, cōnātus sim, cōnātī sīmus?
4. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
cōnātus esset, cōnātī essent, cōnātus essem, cōnātī essēmus.

[1] Translate thus: *He orders him to try (that he try); them to try (that they try).*

Digitized by Google

5. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monet ut —
tueātur, tueantur, tuear, tueāmur.
6. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēbat ut —
tuērētur, tuērentur, tuērer, tuērēmur.
7. Quis dubitat quīn —
tuitus sit, tuitī sint, tuitus sim, tuitī sīmus?
8. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
tuitus esset, tuitī essent, tuitus essem, tuitī essēmus.

II.[1] 1. They will order him[2] (them, me, us) to imitate. 2. They have ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 3. Who doubts his[3] (their, my, our) having imitated? 4. They ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 5. Nobody doubted his (their, my, our) having imitated. 6. They advise him (them, me, us) to promise. 7. They advised him (them, me, us) to promise. 8. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had promised.

357. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of **regō (180)**, **audiō (223)**, **capiō (235)**.

358. The conjunction **nē**, *in order that not, that not, in order not to, so as not to, lest*, is used to denote a negative purpose, just as **ut** denotes a positive purpose. See **352, 353.**

359. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eum (eōs) monet ut —

regat,	regātur,	audiat,	audiātur,
regant,	regantur,	audiant,	audiantur.

2. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —

regat,	regātur,	audiat,	audiātur,
regant,	regantur,	audiant,	audiantur.

3. Eum (eōs) monēbat ut —

regeret,	regerētur,	audīret,	audīrētur,
regerent,	regerentur,	audīrent,	audīrentur.

[1] Imitate the arrangement in I. [2] Dative.
[3] That is, *that he, they, I, we, have imitated.*

Digitized by Google

4. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —
regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.
5. Tē (vōs) monet nē —
capiās, capiātis, capiāris, capiāminī.
6. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —
capiam, capiāmus, capiar, capiāmur.
7. Mē (nōs) monēbat nē —
caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.
8. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —
caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.

II. 1. They advise him (them) —
to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
2. They warn him (them) —
not to receive, not to be received.
3. They will advise him (them) —
to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
4. They were warning him (them) —
not to lead, find, receive,
not to be led, be found, be received.
5. Who doubted that he (they) —
had led, had found, had received,
had been led, been found, been received?

360. Learn the subjunctive of **eō** (**327**), and **ferō** (**321**).

361. EXERCISES

I. 1. Mē hortātur ut eam, feram. 2. Eōs hortāmur ut eant, ferantur. 3. Vōs hortantur ut eātis, ferātis. 4. Eum hortātī sunt ut īret, ferret. 5. Mē hortātī sunt nē eam, feram. 6. Tē hortābantur nē īrēs, ferrēs. 7. Eōs hortātī erant ut īrent, ferrent. 8. Nōn dubium erat quīn iissent, tulissent. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn ierit, tulerit. 10. Nēmō dubitābat quīn īret, ferrētur.

Digitized by Google

II. 1. He commands that he (they, I, we) go, bear, be borne. 2. He was commanding that he (they, I, we) should go, bear, be borne. 3. There is no doubt of his (their, my, our) having gone, borne, been borne. 4. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had gone, borne, been borne.

362. EXERCISES

I. 1. Imperātor exercitum in collem subdūxit, ut fortūnam bellī experīrētur. 2. Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbum faceret. 3. Illud facit ut hostēs circumveniantur. 4. Cōnsul cūrāvit ut plēbs agrōs coleret. 5. Nōn dubium erat quīn Rōmānī auxilium ferrent. 6. Manlius ēdīcit nē quis[1] extrā ōrdinem pūgnet. 7. Omnēs occīdentur ut vīrēs hostium frangantur, aut omnēs dīmittentur ut beneficiō obligentur. 8. Nōn est dubium quīn terror animōs omnium cīvium occupāverit. 9. Incidit[2] ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ad eundem portum venīret. 10. Scīpiō uxōrem ōrāvit nē corpus suum Rōmam referrētur.

II. 1. The ambassadors beg the senate to render aid to their[3] kingdom. 2. The ambassador begged the senate to render aid to his[4] king. 3. Nobody doubts that Hannibāl is brave. 4. Nobody doubted that Hannibal had fought bravely. 5. They did this that they might surround the enemy. 6. This they do in order to surround the enemy. 7. Scipio begs his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 8. Scipio begged his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 9. It turned out that the soldier received a wound on the head. 10. We will draw up the soldiers on a hill to try the fortune of war.

[1] **Nē quis,** *lest any one = that no one.*

[2] After verbs meaning *to happen, to turn out,* and the like, **ut** means *that,* but not *in order that.*

[3] **Suus,** because *their* means *their own,* and not *of them.*

[4] **Suus.**

Digitized by Google

363. VOCABULARY

circum-veniō, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *surround.*

collis, **-is**, M., *hill.* Cf. **mōns.**

cōnor, 1, *attempt.*

cūrō, 1 [**cūra**], *care for, take care.*

dī-mittō, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *send away, send off.*

ē-dīcō, 3, **-dīxī**, **-dictum**, *speak out, declare, proclaim.*

ē-veniō, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *come forth, turn out, happen.* Cf. **accidō.**

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, outside of.* Cf. **intrā.**

frangō, 3, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, *break.*

Hasdrubal, **-alis**, M., *Hasdrubal,* brother of Hannibal.

hortor, 1, *urge, encourage.*

in-cidō, 3, **-cidī**, **-cāsum** [**cadō**], *fall into, happen, befall.*

Manlius, **-ī**, M., *Manlius,* a Roman general.

mōnstrō, 1, *show, point out.*

ob-ligō, 1, *bind, put under obligation, oblige.*

oc-cīdō, 3, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [**ob**, **caedō**, *cut*], *cut down, kill.*

occupō, 1 [**ob**, **capiō**], *take possession of, seize.*

orbus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *bereaved, childless.*

ōrō, 1 [**ōs**, *mouth*], *pray, beg.*

plēbs, **-bis**, F., *the common people.*

senātus, **-ūs**, M. [**senex**], *council of elders, senate* (**345.** 14).

sub-dūcō, 3, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, *draw from under, draw up.*

uxor, **-ōris**, F., *wife.* Cf. **conjunx.**

vīs, **vīs**, F., *strength, power* (**262**).

CHAPTER LV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF *PURPOSE*

[It is suggested that the turning of English into Latin be now deferred till after the Reading Lessons, pages 211–222, have been finished.]

364. In all the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson in which **ut** and **nē** are used with the subjunctive, except **362.** I. 9, the dependent clause expresses a purpose. And, on the other hand, in the English sentences all the dependent clauses expressing purpose (" *to render aid,*" " *not to carry,*" etc.) had to be turned into Latin by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive. But the Latin often expresses a purpose by means of a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive. See the first six sentences below.

365. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ancus lēgātum mittit ut rēs repetat. 2. Ancus lēgātum mittit quī rēs repetat. 3. Lēgātī vēnērunt ut pācem

Digitized by Google

peterent. 4. Lēgātī vēnērunt quī pācem peterent. 5. Pater fīliō equum dedit ut equitāret. 6. Pater fīliō equum dabat quī eum veheret. 7. Ad singulās urbēs scrībēmus nē mūrōs dīruant. 8. Nōn dubium est quīn Catō ad urbēs scrīpserit. 9. Quis dubitāvit quīn Catō imperāvisset ut urbēs mūrōs dīruerent? 10. Rōmulus urbem fēcit quae asȳlum esset; Rōmulus urbem facit quae sit asȳlum.

II. 1. A horse was given to the boy by his father, for[1] him to ride. 2. A father sent a messenger to Rome to speak[2] to his son. 3. A father sends a messenger to Rome to speak[2] to his son. 4. Romulus makes proclamation that no one[3] shall leap[4] over his wall. 5. Romulus proclaimed that no one should leap over his wall. 6. We will warn them not to leap[5] over our walls. 7. Romulus sent messengers to invite[2] neighboring people to his games. 8. The father will give his son a horse for him to ride. 9. Who doubts that a kind father gives his son books? 10. Nobody doubted that the father had given his son many things.[6]

366. VOCABULARY

al-loquor, 3, **-locūtus** [**ad**], *speak to, address.*

Ancus, **-ī**, M., *Ancus*, a Roman king.

asȳlum, **-ī**, N., *a place of refuge, asylum.*

Catō, **-ōnis**, M., *Cato*, a famous Roman censor.

dī-ruō, 3, **-ruī**, **-rutum**, *tear asunder, destroy.*

equitō, 1 [**eques**], *act the* **eques**, *ride.*

fīnitimus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**fīnis**], *bordering on, neighboring.*

imperō, 1, *order, command*, with dative. Cf. **jubeō** with acc.

lūdus, **-ī**, M. [**lūdō**], *game, play.*

nūntius, **-ī**, M., *bearer of news, messenger.*

re-petō, 3, **-īvī** (**-iī**), **-ītum**, *seek again, demand back;* **rēs repetere**, *demand restitution.*

trān-siliō, 4, **-iī** (**-uī**), —— [**saliō**, *leap*], *leap over* or *across.*

[1] *That he might ride.*
[2] Translate in two ways.
[3] See **362**. I. 6, and note.
[4] Present subjunctive.
[5] See **362**. I. 10.
[6] *Many things*, **multa**.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Ut* and *Nē*

367. The subjunctive with **ut** to denote *purpose* has been illustrated (**352**). But the subjunctive with **ut** has other uses.

368. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Tantus est mīlitum ardor ut ad bellum dūcantur,** *so great is the ardor of the soldiers that they are led to war.*
2. **Accidit ut nōn domī essem,** *it happened that I was not at home.*
3. **Fabricius adeō inops dēcēssit ut nihil relīquerit,**[1] *Fabricius died so poor as to leave nothing.*

In these examples the dependent clause denotes a *result*. Compare the translation of **ut** and the subjunctive in *purpose* clauses and in *result* clauses. *That not* in *result* clauses = **ut nōn**. Cf. **358**.

369. Still another use of the subjunctive with **ut** and **nē** is illustrated in the following sentences: —

1. **Timeō ut veniat,** *I fear that he is not coming,* or *will not come.*
2. **Timeō ut vēnerit,** *I fear that he has not come.*
3. **Timēbam ut vēnisset,** *I feared that he had not come.*
4. **Timeō nē veniat,** *I fear that he is coming,* or *will come.*
5. **Timeō nē vēnerit,** *I fear that he has come.*
6. **Timēbam nē vēnisset,** *I feared that he had come.*

An inspection of the foregoing examples shows that **ut** and **nē** *seem* sometimes to exchange meanings.

After verbs of *fearing*, **ut** is translated *that not*, and **nē**, *that*.

Observe that in 1 and 4 the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

370. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pompējus ita ēgit ut ā Sūllā dīligerētur. 2. Is, ut Sūllae[2] subvenīret, mīlitēs collēgit. 3. Posteā in[3] Siciliam profectus est, ut eam prōvinciam ā Carbōne reciperet.

[1] An exception to **348**. [2] See **343**. [3] See **333**. 1.

Digitized by Google

4. Catilīnae exercitus adeō ācriter dīmicāvit ut nēmō superesset. 5. Accidit ut esset plēna lūna. 6. Atticus sīc Graecē loquēbātur ut Athēnīs nātus vidērētur. 7. Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit ut omnibus cīvibus esset cārissimus. 8. Nōn dubitō quīn nostrī mīlitēs hostēs superāverint. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn semper fidem servāveritis. 10. Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs. 11. Metuō nē malum cōnsilium capiās. 12. Metuō ut sustinueris labōrēs. 13. Quis metuit nē malum cōnsilium capiam?

Point out the *purpose* clauses in the above.

II. 1. The boy so acts that he is loved by all. 2. They so acted that they were loved by all. 3. He will so act as to be[1] loved by all. 4. He has so acted as to be loved by all. 5. They will not doubt our having come.[2] 6. They had not doubted our having come.[3] 7. I fear that you are not well. 8. I feared that you were not well. 9. I fear that you are sick. 10. I was afraid that you had been sick. 11. The enemy are fighting so spiritedly that no one will survive.[4] 12. They have fought so sharply that no one has survived. 13. We will set out for[5] Sicily in order to receive[6] that province.

371. VOCABULARY

ac-cidō, 3, **-cidī**, —— [**ad, cadō**], *fall upon, fall out, happen.* Cf. **ēveniō** and **incidō**.

ad-eō, adv., (*to this*), *thus far, so, so very.*

Atticus, -ī, M., *Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.

Carbō, -ōnis, M., *Carbo*, a Roman.

Catilīna, -ae, M., *Catiline*, a famous Roman conspirator.

col-ligō, 3, **-lēgī, -lēctum** [**com, legō**], *collect.* Also **conligō**.

dī-micō, 1, *fight, contend.*

Graecē, adv. [**Graecus**], *in Greek.*

loquor, 3, **locūtus**, *speak, talk.*

sub-veniō, 4, **-vēnī, -ventum**, *come to the aid of, aid, assist;* w. dat. Cf. **succurrō**.

sustineō, 2, **-tinuī, -tentum** [**sub, teneō**], *hold up, bear, endure.*

[1] *As to be*, ut, etc. [2] *That we have come.* [3] *That we had come.* [4] Present subjunctive. [5] See I. 3 and note. [6] Not infinitive.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Cum*

372. The subjunctive occurs very frequently in dependent clauses beginning with **cum**, meaning (1) *when*, *while*, *as*, of time; (2) *since*, *because*, *as*, of cause or reason; (3) *although*, of concession:

1. **Cum Servius in domō Tarquinī esset, mīrābile accidit,** *while Servius was in the house of Tarquin, a wonderful thing happened.*
2. **Cum Tarquinius occīsus esset, ējus uxor populum allocūta est,** *when Tarquin had been killed, his wife addressed the people.*
3. **Tullia, cum domum redīret, super corpus patris carpentum ēgit,** *Tullia, as she was returning home, drove her wagon over the body of her father.*

An inspection of the above examples shows that —

(1) The tenses of the subjunctive are the imperfect and pluperfect.

(2) The **cum** clause marks the time of the act of the principal clause, the verb of which is in the perfect.

(3) The sentences may be called *narrative sentences.*

373. RULE OF SYNTAX. — ***Cum* temporal, that is, *cum* in narrative clauses, is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to mark the time of the action in the principal clause.**

374. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Cum huīc lēgī senātus repūgnāret, Caesar rem ad populum dētulit,** *since the senate opposed this law, Cæsar referred the matter to the people.*
2. **Cum dē improvīsō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt,** *since he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors.*
3. **Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, amīcitiās parāte,** *since life is full of fear, form friendships.*
4. **Cum mē interrogāveris, respondēbō,** *as you have asked me, I will answer.*

Digitized by Google

5. **Nihil mē adjūvit cum posset,** *he gave me no aid (aided me in nothing), although it was in his power.*

Notice that —

(1) All the four tenses of the subjunctive are used.

(2) The **cum** clause states the cause or reason of the act of the principal clause; or denotes a concession, indicated in English by *though, admitting that,* etc.

375. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Cum* **causal or concessive is followed by the subjunctive in all its tenses.**

1. **Cum** followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal, and may be translated *since* or *as;* followed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is very often temporal.

2. **Cum** temporal and the subjunctive can often be translated in some other way better than by *when* or *as* with the indicative. Thus, in **372.** 2, we might translate, *After the killing of Tarquin,* etc.; and in 3, *Tullia, returning home,* or *Tullia, on her way home.*

376. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cum jūssī essent invicem dīcere, ūnus ōrsus est. 2. Pyrrhus, cum tot Rōmānōs mortuōs vidēret, manūs ad caelum sustulit. 3. Cum explōrātōrēs cēpisset, eōs per castra circumdūxit. 4. Quae cum ita sint,[1] perge. 5. Cum sit in nōbīs cōnsilium, cūr dubitāmus? 6. Cum dē improvīsō vēnerit Caesar, ad eum lēgātōs mittēmus. 7. Cum amīcī adsint, gaudēmus. 8. Cum[2] nox appropinquāret, abiērunt. 9. Cum nox appropinquāvisset, abiērunt. 10. Caesar, cum frūstrā mīsisset, sōlus nāviculam cōnscendit nē āgnōscerētur.

II. 1. When one had begun,[3] the rest became (*were*) silent. 2. Pyrrhus, having seen[4] the bravery of the Romans, spoke these words. 3. Since he has seen the bravery of the Romans, he raises his hands to heaven. 4. Since night is

[1] *Since these things are so = such being the case.*

[2] **Cum** may be translated as temporal or causal: *on the approach of night,* or *since night was approaching.*

[3] See **373.**

[4] *Pyrrhus, when he had seen.*

Digitized by Google

approaching, we will go off. 5. When our friends had arrived, we went to Boston. 6. On the arrival of our friends we went to Boston. 7. While Cæsar was embarking in a boat, no one recognized him. 8. As[1] Cæsar was alone, he was not recognized. 9. As[1] I was telling him a story, he suddenly laughed. 10. As[1] they had prudence, we did not hesitate.

377. VOCABULARY

ā-gnōscō, 3, **-gnōvī**, **-gnitum** [**ad**, **(g)nōscō**, *know*], *recognize*.
ap-propinquō, 1 [**ad**], *approach*.
Bostonia, **-ae**, F., *Boston*.
cēterī, **-ae**, **-a**, adj., *the rest*.
circum-dūcō, 3, **-xī**, **-ductum**, *lead around*.
cōn-scendō, 3, **-dī**, **-scēnsum** [**scandō**, *climb*], *ascend*, *embark*, *go on board*.
dubitō, 1 [**dubius**], *doubt*, *hesitate*.
dubius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *doubtful*.
gaudeō,[2] 2, **gāvīsus sum**, *be glad*, *rejoice*.
im-prō-vīsō, adv. [**videō**], *unexpectedly*.
in-vicem, adv., *by turns*, *in turn*.
jubeō, 2, **jussī**, **jūssum**, *bid*, *order*. Cf. **imperō**.
mortuus, **-a**, **-um** [P. of **morior**], *dead*.
nāvicula, **-ae**, F. [**nāvis**], *little vessel*, *boat*.
ōrdior, 4, **ōrsus**, *begin*, *undertake*.
pergō, 3, **perrēxī**, **perrēctum** [**per**, **regō**], *go on*, *continue*.
taceō, 2, **tacuī**, **tacitum**, *be silent*, *say nothing about*.
tollō, 3, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, *raise*, *lift up*.
tot, adj., indecl., *so many*. Cf. **quot**.

378. FOR TRANSLATION

The Battle of Cannæ — *Continued*

Aemilius Paullus tēlīs obrutus cecidit. Quem[3] cum mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre cōnspexisset

[1] The *as* of *reason*, or of *time*?

[2] Four common verbs, **audeō**, *dare*, **gaudeō**, *rejoice*, **soleō**, *be accustomed*, **fīdō**, *trust*, have the passive form in the perfect, and hence are called *semi-deponents*.

[3] Translate first mentally, taking the words as they stand, rendering **cum**, *when;* then recast this preliminary translation, beginning with **cum quīdam tribūnus**, and rendering **quem**, *him*.

Follow this method, when a Latin sentence appears difficult; but keep a sharp eye on the terminations of the words.

Digitized by Google

quīdam tribūnus mīlitum: "Cape," inquit, "hunc equum et fuge, Aemilī. Etiam sine tuā morte lacrimārum[1] satis lūctūsque est." Ad ea cōnsul:[2] "Tū quidem macte virtūte estō.[3] Sed cavē,[4] exiguum tempus ē manibus hostium ēvādendī perdās.[4] Abī, nūntiā patribus, ut urbem mūniant āc,[5] prius quam hostis victor adveniat, praesidiīs fīrment. Mē in hāc strāge meōrum mīlitum patere[6] exspīrāre." Alter cōnsul cum paucīs equitibus Venusiam[7] perfūgit. Cōnsulārēs aut praetōriī occidērunt[8] vīgintī, senātōrēs captī aut occīsī sunt trīgintā, nōbilēs virī trecentī, mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia, equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī. Hannibal in[9] testimōnium victōriae suae trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum Carthāginem mīsit, quōs dē manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum dētrāxerat.

CHAPTER LVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS

379. *Examine the following:* —

Direct	Indirect
1. **Quis est?** *who is he?*	**Sciō quis sit,** *I know who he is.*
2. **Ubi sumus?** *where are we?*	**Sciō ubi sīmus,** *I know where we are.*
3. **Cūr rīdēs?** *why do you laugh?*	**Sciō cūr rīdeās,** *I know why you laugh.*
4. **Quem vīdistī?** *whom have you seen?*	**Sciō quem vīderis,** *I know whom you have seen.*

[1] See **340. 5.**

[2] Supply **dīxit** or **respondit.** But it is livelier without a verb.

[3] Perhaps the literal translation of this phrase is, *be thou blessed in* (or *for*) *thy courage;* **macte** for **mactus,** because **tū** is here almost more of a vocative than a nominative.

[4] Supply **nē** after **cavē,** *beware lest you lose* = *beware of losing.*

[5] Connects **mūniant** and **fīrment.**

[6] Imperative from **patior.**

[7] Account for the case.

[8] From **occidō.** But **occīsī** in the next clause, from **occīdō.**

[9] *For;* **in** expresses purpose.

Digitized by Google

Compare each of the foregoing examples in the left-hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right-hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called INDIRECT QUESTIONS. Observe the mood, and how it is translated.

380. RULE OF SYNTAX.— **Indirect questions take the subjunctive.**

1. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are **quis**, *who?* **cūr**, *why?* **num**, *whether?* **ubi**, *where?* **quō**, *whither?* **unde**, *whence?* **quot**, *how many?*

381. EXERCISES

Read again the remarks and rule, page 165.

I. 1. Scit quid agās. 2. Scit quid ēgeris. 3. Sciēbat quid agerēs. 4. Sciēbat quid ēgissēs. 5. Audīvī quid agat. 6. Audīvī quid ēgerit. 7. Audīvī quid ageret. 8. Audīvī quid ēgisset. 9. Audīveram quid ageret. 10. Audīveram quid ēgisset.

II. 1. Volō scīre unde vēneris. 2. Dīc[1] mihi num meam sorōrem vīderis. 3. Nesciō unde veniant tot mīlitēs. 4. Quaeram num omnia fēlīciter ēvēnerint. 5. Speculābimur quot hominēs in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 6. Nāsīca hominem interrogāvit num manibus ambulāre solitus esset. 7. Quaerēbat quae[2] cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 8. Quīdam homō interrogātus est quae nāvēs essent tūtissimae. 9. Dīc mihi quid in manū habeās. 10. Caesar omnem equitātum mittit, quī videat[3] quās in partēs[4] hostēs iter faciant.

III. 1. He sees who is walking, has walked. 2. They see who are walking, have walked. 3. We shall see who walk, have walked. 4. We knew why he was laughing, had laughed. 5. You knew why I was laughing, had laughed.

[1] See page 150, note. [3] Compare **365**. I. 2 and 4.
[2] See **279**. 3. [4] *Into what parts = in what direction.*

Digitized by Google

6. They wondered why he was praised, had been praised. 7. They will wonder why I am praised, have been praised. 8. Do you not wonder why we are praised, have been praised? 9. I wonder whether he has been admonished, is being admonished. 10. They wondered whether we were admonished, had been admonished.

382. VOCABULARY

interrogō, 1, *ask, inquire.*
Nāsīca, -ae, M., *Nasica*, surname of one of the Scipios.
num,[1] interrog. adv., *whether*, introducing indirect questions.
rogō, 1, *ask, question.*
sciō, 4, **scīvī, scītum**, *know.*
soleō,[2] 2, **solitus**, *be accustomed.*
speculor, 1, *spy out, watch.*
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe.*

interrogō, *ask a question, inquire*, and nearly limited to that sense.
rogō, *ask a question*, but much more commonly *ask a favor, make a request.*
quaerō, *ask a question*, but much used in the sense of *seeking to gain* or *to know, searching into.*

CHAPTER LIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WISHES AND CONDITIONS

383. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Utinam pater veniat!** *would that father would come! I wish father would come! O that father would come!*
2. **Sī pater veniat, laetus sim,** *if father should come, I should be glad.*
3. **Utinam pater adesset!** *would that father were here!*
4. **Sī pater adesset, laetus essem,** *if father were here, I should be glad.*
5. **Utinam pater adfuisset!** *would that father had been here!*
6. **Sī pater adfuisset, laetus fuissem,** *if father had been here, I should have been glad.*

[1] Introducing direct questions, it does not usually admit of translation, but indicates that the answer *no* is expected. [2] See p. 177, n. 2.

Digitized by Google

(1) In 1 and 2 what time do the words *would come*, *should come*, *should be*, point to? Plainly not to the past, nor to the instant present, but vaguely to the future; and this vague future is expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive. The wish and the condition referring to the future *may be* fulfilled; the father *may* come.

(2) In 3 and 4 the wish and condition refer to the present; and this present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what is the fact;* the father *is*, in fact, *not present.*

(3) In 5 and 6 the tense of the subjunctive offers no difficulty. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what was the fact;* the father *was*, in fact, *not present.*

384. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **In wishes and conditions the present subjunctive is used of what *may come* true, the imperfect subjunctive of what *is not* true, the pluperfect subjunctive of what *was not* true. The same mood is regularly employed in the conclusion of such conditional sentences.**

The indicative is not used in wishes. The use of the indicative in conditional sentences is easily understood.

385. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Sī pater adest, bene est,** *if father is present, it is well.*
2. **Sī pater aderat, bene erat,** *if father was present, it was well.*
3. **Sī pater aderit, bene erit,** *if father shall be present,*[1] *it will be well.*

Observe that in examples 1 and 2 a condition is stated without implying anything. In example 3, as the time is future, that which is supposed *may be* fulfilled. This form, then, of stating a supposition is almost exactly equivalent to that of the present subjunctive in **383**; it is only a livelier way of putting it.

[1] In English we commonly use a present form in such conditions that refer to the future. Thus we say, *If he is (tomorrow, next week, etc.) present, it will be well.* Do not be deceived, when translating into Latin, by this apparent present. See if the conclusion contains a future.

Digitized by Google

386. EXERCISES[1]

I. 1. Sī victōriam certam videam, nunquam pūgnem. 2. Sī mē virum bonum jūdicārēs,[2] nōn mē corrumpere vellēs.[2] 3. Dictātor,[3] sī adfuisset, rem nōn melius gessisset. 4. Varrō, sī Carthāginiēnsium dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās dedisset.[4] 5. Sī patrem tuum crās videam, quid dīcat? 6. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Caesar jussisset. 7. Sī rēctē faciās, laudēris. 8. Sī maneat Mārcus, gaudeāmus; sīn autem eat, tamen eum laudēmus. 9. Sī leō accēderet,[5] omnēs fugerent. 10. Utinam frāter meus vīveret clāssemque iterum dūceret! 11. Utinam māter nōbīs fābulam nārret! 12. Utinam tēcum[6] in agrīs ambulāvissem!

II.[7] 1. Would that I were walking in the fields with you to-day! 2. I wish you had been walking[8] with me[6] yesterday. 3. O take[9] a walk with us in the fields to-morrow! 4. If you should see victory certain, my friend, would you not fight? 5. I should not now be setting out if Cæsar did not order it. 6. If you were acting rightly, you would be praised. 7. If you had acted rightly, you would have been praised. 8. I wish[9] you would act rightly, so as to[10] be praised. 9. If we should see a lion, we should flee.

[1] In translating these sentences, render the present subjunctive in such a way as to indicate vaguely future time; thus, **videam** ... pūgnem, *should see* . . . *should fight.*

[2] Compare **383**. 4, and read again **383** (2).

[3] Notice the position of this word, which is the subject of gessisset. It may be translated as it stands, first.

[4] *Given punishments of* = *paid the penalty for.*

[5] If a lion *were coming*, not *were to come*, which would be expressed by the present subjunctive.

[6] See **265**. 3.

[7] In turning these sentences into Latin, do not be misled as to the real time of the verbs; *were walking*, in the first sentence, denotes present time. Read again the examples, **383**, and the remarks. See also the varied translation of the first example.

[8] Compare I. 12.

[9] Compare **383**. 1.

[10] Ut. See **352**.

Digitized by Google

10. I wish I had seen a huge lion. 11. If my brother[1] were living, he would now be commanding the fleet. 12. Would that your brother were alive!

387. VOCABULARY

ac-cēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum** [**ad**], *go* or *come near, approach.*
cor-rumpō, 3, **-rūpī**, **-ruptum** [**com**], *break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe.*
dictātor, **-ōris**, M. [**dictō**, **dīcō**], *chief magistrate, dictator.*
immānis, **-e**, adj., *huge, immense.*
jūdicō, 1 [**jūdex**], *judge, deem.*
rēctē, adv. [**rēctus**], *rightly.*
sīn, conj. [**sī**, **nē**], *but if, if however, if.*
temeritās, **-ātis**, F. [**temerē**], *chance; rashness.*
uti-nam, adv., *would that, O that, I wish that.*

388. COLLOQUIUM

JŌHANNĒS ET JACŌBUS

Jo. Dīc mihi, Jacōbe, unde veniās, quid ēgeris.
have been doing

Ja. Rūre veniō, ubi fēriārum partem ēgī. Et tū?
vacation spent

Jo. Ego iter cum parentibus fēcī, neque sciō quandō domum revertar.
when return

Ja. Utinam ego quoque iter faciam! Sī parentēs adessent, iter mēcum facerent.

Jo. Ego itineris diūturnitāte sum dēfessus, et gaudērem sī in scholā essem.
length

Ja. Venī mēcum in scholam et ūnā ēdiscāmus.
together let us learn

Jo. Tēcum libenter in scholam ībō, sed cōgnōscere velim quī sit praeceptor.
know should like

Ja. Praeceptor est vir doctissimus. Vim Latīnī scit, atque semper est benīgnus, mōrōsus nunquam.
ever so much pleasant

Jo. Quid tē docet?

[1] Imitate the order in I. 3 and 4; the subject might, however, be placed after sī.

Digitized by Google

Ja. Docet nōs modum subjūnctīvum. Herī, exemplī causā,
for example
nōbīs dē subjūnctīvō in interrogātiōnibus indīrēctīs explicāvit.
questions

Jo. Multa dē interrogātiōnibus indīrēctīs audīvī, neque unquam intellegere potuī. Fēcitne praeceptor ut tū ista intellegerēs?

Ja. Sānē, mī amīce, et ego, ut opīnor, faciam ut tū quoque
yes indeed
eadem intellegās. Sī dīcam, *Ubi est frāter tuus?* interrogātum sit dīrēctum; sīn autem, *Nesciō ubi sit frāter,* interrogātum sit indīrēctum. Intellegisne?
question

Jo. Satis intellegō. Sed in hunc diem hāctenus.
so-so for enough

CHAPTER LX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE

389. Learn the future imperative, active and passive, of the regular and irregular verbs, and review the present imperative.

390. In the last lesson occurred the first illustrations of the subjunctive not in dependent clauses, that is, in wishes and in the principal clauses of conditional sentences. The subjunctive is similarly used in commands and appeals, and when so used is called the HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

391. *Examine the following paradigms:* —

COMMANDS AND APPEALS

POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
moneam, *let me advise.*	**nē moneam,** *let me not advise.*
monē, or **moneās,** *advise.*	**nē monueris,** *do not advise.*
moneat, monuerit, *let him advise,* or *he shall advise.*	**nē moneat, nē monuerit,** *let him not,* or *he shall not, advise.*
moneāmus, *let us advise.*	**nē moneāmus,** *let us not advise.*
monēte, *advise.*	**ne monueritis,** *do not advise.*
moneant, monuerint, *let them advise,* or *they shall advise.*	**nē moneant, nē monuerint,** *let them not,* or *they shall not, advise.*

Digitized by Google

(1) Observe that positive commands and appeals are expressed by the subjunctive only, except in the second person; and negative commands and appeals, by the subjunctive with **nē**.[1]

(2) Observe also that the present and perfect subjunctive, in the third person, are used without essential difference of meaning; and that in *negative commands and appeals in the second person* the perfect[2] only[3] is given.

(3) The future imperative is mostly confined to laws and maxims: **Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō,** *thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city.* **Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus īdem est,** *avoid a questioner, for he is a babbler too.*

(4) The preceding paradigms, with the meanings, should be thoroughly committed to memory.

392. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cotīdiē scrībe ad mē, mī fīlī, quid fēceris. 2. Puer ad patrem scrībit quid fēcerit. 3. Mittāmus nūntium ad Caesarem quī[4] eum moneat. 4. Nē mēcum in lītore hodiē ambulāveris. 5. Nē puerī incautī cultrōs habeant. 6. Imperātor cōnsilium cōnficiat. 7. Nōlīte, mīlitēs, hostium exercitum timēre. 8. Nē, mīlitēs, hostium exercitum timueritis. 9. Omnia sua[5] sēcum[6] incolae portāverint. 10. Mihi aurēs praebēte, discipulī, et dīligenter audīte quae dīcam. 11. Nē id quod est falsum dīxeris. 12. Leō dīxit: Restat pars quarta, at nē quisquam[7] audeat eam tangere.

II. 1. They shall not send[8] a messenger. 2. Let no one touch[9] the fourth part. 3. Touch not[10] the fourth part of the

[1] Prohibitions are more commonly expressed by **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with the infinitive. See **318**. I. 5 and 6.

[2] This form of the subjunctive in this use is here called the *perfect*, in deference to custom; it is really the *subjunctive of the future perfect.*

[3] The imperative so used is not common, and not to be imitated.

[4] Compare **365**. I. 2 and 4.

[5] **Omnia sua,** *their all.*

[6] See **265**. 3.

[7] *Let no one.* See **279**. 6.

[8] **Nē** with perfect subjunctive.

[9] See I. 12.

[10] Express in two ways.

Digitized by Google

booty. 4. Let the pupils listen attentively to the words of the master. 5. Do not listen,[1] boys, to the counsels of the bad. 6. Write daily to your parents what[2] you are doing. 7. Carry your books home[3] with you and study diligently. 8. Do not forget[1] what[4] has been said to you to-day. 9. Touch not[1] wine; let us not touch wine; they shall not touch wine. 10. Let us go out and carry our all with us.

393. VOCABULARY

at, conj., *but*. Cf. **autem (214)**.
audeō,[5] 2, **ausus sum**, *dare, be bold*.
cōn-ficiō, 3, **-fēcī, -fectum** [**com, faciō**], *make, accomplish, carry out*.
cotīdiē, adv. [**quot, diēs**], *daily*.
falsus, -a, -um, adj. [**fallō**, *deceive*], *deceptive, false*.
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [**caveō**], *incautious, heedless*.
re-stō, 1, **restitī**, ——, *stay behind, remain*.
tangō, 3, **tetigī, tāctum**, *touch*.

at, *but on the contrary, but for all that*.
sed, *but*, without special emphasis.
autem, *but*, often to be rendered *however;* weaker than **at** or **sed**.

394. FOR TRANSLATION

MĀRCUS PORCIUS CATŌ, PUER

M. Porcius Catō jam puer[6] invictum animī rōbur ostendit. Cum in domō Drūsī avunculī suī ēducārētur, Latīnī dē cīvitāte impetrandā[7] Rōmam vēnērunt. Popēdius, Latīnōrum prīnceps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit ut Latīnōs apud avunculum adjuvāret. Catō vultū cōnstantī

[1] Express in two ways.
[2] Compare I. 10.
[3] See **336**.
[4] **Id quod**.
[5] See page 177, note 2.
[6] **Jam puer**, *already a boy = even in boyhood*.
[7] **Dē cīvitāte impetrandā**, *respecting the citizenship to be obtained = to obtain citizenship*.

Digitized by Google

negāvit id sē factūrum.[1] Iterum deinde āc saepius interpellātus[2] in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc Popēdius puerum in excelsam aedium partem levātum tenuit,[3] et sē abjectūrum[4] inde minātus est, nisi precibus obtemperāret; neque hōc metū[5] ā sententiā eum potuit dīmovēre. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse[6] fertur:[7] "Grātulēmur[8] nōbīs,[9] Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum; sī enim senātor esset,[10] nē spērāre quidem[11] jūs[12] cīvitātis licēret.[10]

CHAPTER LXI

THE INFINITIVE

395. Learn the infinitives of the regular and irregular verbs (**73, 86, 112, 180, 223, 235,** etc.).

396. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Errāre est hūmānum,** *to err is human.*
2. **Possum vidēre,** *I am able to see.*
3. **Volō legere,** *I wish to read.*
4. **Eam sequī sē jubet,** *he orders her to follow him(self).*
5. **Sāturnus in Ītaliam vēnisse dīcitur,** *Saturn is said to have come into Italy.*

Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used in Latin precisely as in English. This use of the infinitive, as offering no difficulty, has been tacitly illustrated in some of the foregoing exercises.

[1] **Negāvit . . . factūrum,** *denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.*

[2] Perfect participle. See **amātus,** page 34.

[3] **Puerum . . . levātum tenuit,** *held the raised-up boy = raised up and held the boy.*

[4] **Sē abjectūrum,** *himself to be going to throw (him) down = that he would throw (him) down.*

[5] **Hōc metū,** *by this fear = by fear of this.*

[6] **Exclāmāsse = exclāmāvisse.**

[7] **Fertur = dīcitur.**

[8] **Grātulēmur,** *let us congratulate.* See **391.**

[9] **Nōbīs.** See **343.**

[10] **Esset . . . licēret.** See **383.**

[11] **Nē . . . quidem,** *not even.*

[12] **Jūs cīvitātis.** Cf. **cīvitāte,** line 2.

Digitized by Google

397. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cūr mē vīs corrumpere? 2. Timēre incipiēbat. 3. Soror flēre incipiēbat. 4. Vincere scīs,[1] victōriā[2] ūtī nescīs. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulisse dīcitur. 6. Pontem jubet rescindī. 7. Dulce est prō patriā mori. 8. Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat. 9. Puerōs decet tacēre. 10. Tūne Marium audēbis occīdere? 11. Nōbīs est in animō[3] per prōvinciam iter facere. 12. Caesar ab urbe proficīscī matūrat.

II. 1. Pyrrhus wanted to bribe Fabricius. 2. Fabricius could not[4] be turned from (the path of) honor. 3. Why did you begin to weep? 4. Did Hannibal know how[5] to conquer? 5. Tarquin was said to have besieged Rome. 6. Rome is said to have been besieged. 7. Seeing is believing.[6] 8. The consul was ordered[7] to tear down the bridge. 9. The bridge is said to have been torn down. 10. It is pleasant[8] to live for (one's) friends. 11. We intend to tear down the bridge. 12. He is said to have departed from Italy.

398. VOCABULARY

ā-vertō, 3, **-tī**, **-sum**, *turn away from, avert.*

crēdō, 3, **-didī**, **-ditum**, *trust, believe;* w. dat. (**343**).

decet, 2, **decuit**, ——, impers. (page 200), *it is becoming, fitting, proper.*

honestās, **-ātis**, F. [**honestus**], *honor, integrity, honesty.*

in-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [**capiō**], (*take in hand*), *begin.*

matūrō, 1 [**matūrus**, *ripe*], *hasten.*

morior,[9] 3, **mortuus**, *die.*

pōns, **pontis**, M., *bridge.*

re-scindō, 3, **-scidī**, **-scissum**, *tear away, tear down, break down.*

soror, **-ōris**, F., *sister.*

[1] *You know how.*

[2] See **304**.

[3] *It is in mind to us = we intend.*

[4] *Could not = was not able.*

[5] See I. 4.

[6] *To see is to believe.* Cf. I. 7.

[7] Use **jubeō**.

[8] Neuter. Cf. I. 7.

[9] **Morior** has future participle **moritūrus**.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LXII

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

Indirect Discourse

399. *Examine the following:* —

Direct

1. **Homō est,** *he is a man.*
2. **Īgnis calet,** *fire is hot.*
3. **Amīcus adest,** *(his) friend is present.*
4. **Mundus ā Deō regitur,** *the world is ruled by God.*

Indirect

1. **Dīcit sē hominem esse,** *he says that he is a man.*
2. **Sentīmus īgnem calēre,** *we perceive that fire is hot.*
3. **Putat amīcum adesse,** *he thinks that his friend is present.*
4. **Scīmus mundum ā Deō regī,** *we know that the world is ruled by God.*

Notice the difference between the direct and indirect forms of statement.

In the second group, compare the English with the Latin. Observe (1) that after the leading verb there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to the conjunction *that;* (2) that, while the English retains the nominative and indicative of the direct form, the Latin has instead the accusative and infinitive.

The second group illustrates the *indirect discourse*, so called because what some one says, thinks, or knows, is stated in the dependent clause *indirectly*.

400. Rule of Syntax. — **The accusative and infinitive are regularly used after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving,* and the like.**

401. Rule of Syntax. — **The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.**

Digitized by Google

402. Tenses of the Infinitive

Present

dīcit **dīcet** **dixit**	**tē scrībere,**	*he says that you are writing.* *he will say that you are writing.* *he said that you were writing.*
dīcit **dīcet** **dixit**	**epistulam scrībī,**	*he says that the letter is being written.* *he will say that the letter is being written.* *he said that the letter was being written.*

Future

dīcit **dīcet** **dixit**	**tē scrīptūrum esse,**	*he says that you will write.* *he will say that you will write.* *he said that you would write.*
dīcit **dīcet** **dixit**	**epistulam scrīptum īrī,**[1]	*he says that the letter will be written.* *he will say that the letter will be written.* *he said that the letter would be written.*

Perfect

dīcit **dīcet** **dixit**	**tē scrīpsisse,**	*he says that you wrote (have written).* *he will say that you wrote (have written).* *he said that you wrote (had written).*
dīcit **dīcet** **dixit**	**epistulam scrīptam esse,**	*he says that the letter was (has been) written.* *he will say that the letter was (has been) written.* *he said that the letter was (had been) written.*

A study of the above table will show that the present infinitive denotes the *same* time as that indicated by the tense of the leading verb; that the future infinitive denotes time *after* that indicated by the leading verb; and that the perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that indicated by the leading verb.

403. Rule of Syntax.—The tenses of the infinitive refer to present, future, or past time, *relatively* to the time of the leading verb.

[1] More commonly, fore ut epistula with subjunctive. Also see page 192, note 1.

Digitized by Google

404. EXERCISES

It will be best to translate each of the following sentences twice; first, literally, just as they stand, then into good English: thus, *History relates two sons to have been to Cornelia* = *history relates that Cornelia had two sons.* The eighth thus: *The ambassador said himself a public messenger to be of the Roman people* = *the ambassador said that he was*, etc.

I. 1. Historia nārrat duōs fīliōs fuisse Cornēliae. 2. Cornēlia dīxit fīliōs suōs esse ōrnāmenta sua. 3. Scīmus mātrēs fīliōs amāre. 4. Trāditum[1] est Caesarem ā Brūtō et Cassiō occīsum esse. 5. Certum est cāsū bonum fierī nēminem.[2] 6. Sciō haec vēra esse. 7. Mārcellus Hannibalem vincī posse docuit. 8. Lēgātus dīxit sē pūblicum nūntium esse populī Rōmānī. 9. Thalēs aquam dīxit esse initium rērum. 10. Trāditum est Homērum fuisse caecum. 11. Lēgātus dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī.

Before translating into Latin, cast each sentence mentally into the Latin form; thus the first sentence will be, *It is said two sons to have been to Cornelia*, or *Cornelia two sons to have had;* and the seventh, *We know you the truth to be about to tell.* This practice is of capital importance.

II. 1. It is said that Cornelia had two sons. 2. Have we not heard that Cornelia had jewels? 3. I think that you will have jewels. 4. We know that Cornelia loved her boys. 5. Do not[3] all mothers think that their sons are their jewels? 6. I think that the moon will be full to-morrow. 7. We know that you will tell the truth. 8. History relates that Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus. 9. It is related that Homer wrote poems. 10. I know that this has been done. 11. He said that the enemy held the mountain.

[1] In the compound tenses of the passive voice the perfect participle occasionally loses its idea of time and becomes virtually an adjective. Here **trāditum est** = *it is (a thing) related.*

[2] Subject of **fierī**.

[3] **Nōnne.**

Digitized by Google

405. **EXERCISES**

Read the first paragraph, page 191.

I. 1. Jūrāte vōs rem pūblicam nōn dēsertūrōs esse. 2. Vōx quondam audīta est Rōmam ā Gallīs captum[1] īrī. 3. Certum est Hannibalem ā Scīpiōne victum esse. 4. Ferunt[2] eō diē lūnam fuisse plēnam. 5. Cum Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnisset, servus dīxit Ennium domī nōn esse. 6. Nāsīca sēnsit illum[3] intus esse. 7. Posteā cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius, exclāmāvit ipse Nāsīca sē[3] domī nōn esse. 8. Catō dīcere solēbat acerbōs inimīcōs saepe vērum dīcere. 9. Abī, nūntiā tē vīdisse Gājum Marium in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem (*sitting*). 10. Mātrōna quaedam dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre.[4]

See second paragraph, page 191. The first sentence, expressed in the Latin idiom, will be, *Ennius says himself at home not to be;* the third, *He thinks himself at home to be about to be;* the fourth, *Cato thought his friends the truth not always to speak* (compare I. 8).

II. 1. Ennius says that he is not at home. 2. He said that he had not been at home. 3. He thinks that he shall be at home to-morrow. 4. Cato thought that his friends did not always tell him[5] the truth. 5. It is evident that the world was not made by chance. 6. We have sworn that we will not desert our leader. 7. The soldiers swore that they had not deserted the republic. 8. It was evident that the enemy was being defeated.[6] 9. Do you not know that the enemy are near? 10. It is certain that they are advancing towards the town.

[1] Captum, being a supine (433), does not change its form to agree with Rōmam.

[2] Ferunt = dīcunt.

[3] Observe the difference between illum in 6 and sē in 7.

[4] *To have thirty years = to be thirty years old.*

[5] *Him = himself;* not accusative.

[6] Notice that the time of the dependent verb is present, with reference to that of the leading verb.

Digitized by Google

406. VOCABULARY

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [**ācer**], *harsh, bitter.*

arbitror, 1, *think, suppose, believe.*

cōn-stat, 1, **-stitit,** ——, impers. (**415**), *it is evident, clear.*

dē-serō, 3, **-uī, -tum,** *desert, abandon.*

Ennius, -ī, M., *Ennius,* a Roman poet.

ex-clāmō, 1, *cry out, exclaim.*

Gallus, -ī, M., *a Gaul.*

historia, -ae, F., *history.*

in-imīcus, -a, -um, adj. [**amīcus**], *unfriendly, hostile;* noun, *an enemy* (**172**).

intus, adv. [**in**], *inside, within.*

jūrō, 1 [**jūs**], *swear, take an oath.*

Mārcellus, -ī, M., *Marcellus,* a Roman general.

mātrōna, -ae, F. [**māter**], *wife, lady, matron.*

nūntiō, 1 [**nūntius**], *announce, report.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, N. [**ōrnō**], *ornament, jewel* (**345**. 9).

populus, -ī, M., *people.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [**populus**], (*pertaining to the people*), *public* (**345**. 19).

quondam, adv., *once, formerly.*

sentiō, 4, **sēnsī, sēnsum,** *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.*

tantum, adv. [**tantus**], *only.*

Thalēs, -is, M., *Thales,* a Greek philosopher.

trā-dō, 3, **-didī, -ditum** [**trāns**], *give over, deliver; relate, recount.*

vērum, -ī, N. [**vērus**], *the truth.*

407. FOR TRANSLATION

Nāsīca et Ennius

Nāsīca,[1] cum ad poētam Ennium vēnisset,[2] eīque[3] ab ōstiō quaerentī[4] Ennium ancilla dīxisset eum domī[5] nōn esse, sēnsit illam[6] dominī jūssū dīxisse, et illum[7] intus esse. Paucīs post diēbus, cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius et eum ā[8] jānuā quaereret, exclāmat Nāsīca sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem," inquit,[9] "tuam?"

[1] Subject of **sēnsit.**

[2] **Ad . . . vēnisset,** *had come to,* that is, *to call on.*

[3] *To him,* dat. of **is.** See **270**. 2.

[4] Pres. part. of **quaerō,** in the dative with **eī,** *to him asking for.*

[5] See **336.**

[6] Refers to **ancilla,** and is the subject accusative of **dīxisse.**

[7] That is, **Ennius.**

[8] **Ā jānuā,** *at the door.*

[9] Observe the position of **inquit.**

Digitized by Google

Hīc[1] Nāsīca: "Homō es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaererem, ancillae[2] tuae crēdidī tē[3] domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?"[4]

CHAPTER LXIII

PARTICIPLES

408. Learn the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

1. For declension of a present active participle, see **165**. The ablative singular generally ends in *e*, but in *ī* when the participle is used as an adjective.

2. The other participles, ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, are declined like **bonus** (**71**).

409. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Fortissimē dīmicāns** { **cadit,** *he falls*; **cadet,** *he will fall*; **cecidit,** *he fell* } *fighting most bravely.*
2. **Hostēs adortus prōflīgāvit,** *he attacked and routed (having attacked, he routed) the enemy.*
3. **Eī advenientī aquila pilleum sustulit,** *an eagle took off his cap as he was approaching (to him approaching).*
4. **Leōnidās superātus cēdere nōluit,** *Leonidas, (though) overpowered, would not yield.*
5. **Rōmā expulsus Athēnās ībit,** *(if) expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.*
6. **Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit,** *he delivered the letter (which had been) intrusted to him.*
7. **Eā rē commōtus in Ītaliam rediit,** *he returned into Italy (because he was) alarmed at this event.*
8. **Nōs moritūrī tē salūtāmus,** *we, (who are) about to die, salute you.*
9. **Ob virginēs raptās,** *on account of the seizure of the maidens (maidens seized).*

[1] An adverb, *hereupon.*

[2] Dative after **crēdidī**. See **343**.

[3] Subject accusative of **esse**. See **401**.

[4] Emphasizes **mihi** (**270. 4.**)

Digitized by Google

Study the above examples with reference first to the tenses of the participles, and observe that the time of the participles is present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

Notice how the participle is translated in each example; only in the first is it best translated literally. What the Latin expresses by a participle we very often express by a clause beginning *as, though, if, because*, etc., by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with one following.

410. EXERCISES

It will be best to translate every sentence literally, then into good English.

I. 1. Remus irrīdēns mūrum trānsiliit. 2. Abī hinc, oblīta[1] frātrum, oblīta[1] patriae. 3. Lēgātō rēs repetentī[2] superbē respōnsum est[3] ā Latīnīs. 4. Faliscī statim beneficiō victī portās Rōmānīs aperuērunt. 5. Fīlius Manlī Latīnum ex equō excussum trānsfīxit.[4] 6. Rōmānī necessitāte victī lēgātōs mittunt. 7. Hunc Fabricius vinctum redūcī jussit. 8. Hannibal causam bellī quaerēns Saguntum ēvertit. 9. Eā rē commōtus in Ītaliam rediit armīs injūriam acceptam vindicātūrus.[5] 10. Missōs[6] ā senātū lēgātōs honōrificē excēpit.

Cast each of the following sentences into the Latin idiom before attempting to translate. Thus, *Romulus killed Remus laughing at* (accusative in agreement with *Remus*); *Horatius stabbed his sister forgetful* (**oblītam**); *to the ambassadors demanding*, etc.

II. 1. Romulus killed Remus because he laughed at his wall. 2. Horatius stabbed his sister with his sword because

[1] Feminine of the perfect participle **oblītus**, from **oblīvīscor**. Translate, *Thou who hast forgotten* (lit., *having forgotten*).

[2] *To the ambassador demanding* = *to the ambassador who demanded*, or *when the ambassador demanded.*

[3] **Respōnsum est**, *it was replied* = *answer was made.*

[4] **Excussum trānsfīxit**, *struck off and stabbed.* See **409. 2.**

[5] *About to avenge*, i.e., *in order to avenge.*

[6] Compare **409. 6.**

Digitized by Google

she was forgetful of her country. 3. The Latins answered the ambassadors[1] haughtily, when they demanded restitution. 4. The Gauls entered the open houses. 5. To the Romans, as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death[2] itself. 6. The old men went forth to meet[3] Manlius[1] as he was returning to Rome. 7.[4] They bound the prisoner and brought him back to the city. 8. The letter which had been written by the boy was delivered. 9. The Romans never despaired, though they were often defeated.[5] 10. Cæsar received the senate sitting,[6] when they came[7] to him.

411. VOCABULARY

com-moveō, 2, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, *shake, disturb, excite, alarm.*

dē-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, (*bring down*), *deliver.*

dē-spērō, 1, *be hopeless, despair.*

ē-vertō, 3, **-tī**, **-sum**, *overturn, overthrow, destroy.*

ex-cutiō, 3, **-cussī**, **-cussum** [**quatiō**], *shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.*

Faliscī, **-ōrum**, M., *the Faliscans,* a people of Etruria.

hinc, adv. [**hīc**], *from this place, hence.*

ir-rīdeō, 2, **-rīsī**, **-rīsum** [**in**], *laugh at, ridicule, jest, mock.*

Latīnus, **-a**, **-um** [**Latium**], *Latin;* noun, *a Latin.*

necessitās, **-ātis**, F. [**necesse**], *necessity, constraint.*

ob-viam, adv., *in the way;* with verb of motion, *meet;* w. dat.

pateō, 2, **-uī**, ——, *lie open, be open;* part. **patēns**, *open.*

porta, **-ae**, F., *gate, door.* Cf. **jānua.**

re-dūcō, 3, **-xī**, **-ductum**, *lead back, bring back.*

senior, **-ōris**, M. & F. (comp. of **senex**, *old*), *elder, old person.*

statim, adv. [**stō**], (*standing there*), *on the spot, immediately, at once.*

superbē, adv. [**superbus**], *proudly, haughtily.*

trāns-fīgō, 3, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum**, *pierce through, pierce, stab.*

vindicō, 1, *claim, avenge, punish.*

[1] Dative.

[2] See **211**, **212**.

[3] *To meet*, **obviam**.

[4] Compare I. 7.

[5] Not the last word: *the Romans, often defeated*, etc.

[6] In agreement with *Cæsar*.

[7] *Had come.* See **373**.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LXIV

PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

412. *Examine the following:* —

Sōle oriente, fugiunt tenebrae,	*the sun rising,* *when the sun rises,* *at the rising of the sun,*	*the shadows flee away.*
Datō sīgnō, virginēs raptae sunt,	*the signal having been given,* *when the signal was given,* *at the given signal,*	*the maidens were seized.*
Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est,	*he reigning,* *in his reign,* *while he was reigning,*	*a war arose.*
Cōnsul, bellō cōnfectō, Rōmam rediit,	*the war having been finished,* *when the war was finished,* *having finished the war,*	*the consul returned to Rome.*
Tē duce, hostēs vincēmus,	*you (being) leader,* *if you are our leader,* *with you for a leader,*	*we shall conquer the enemy.*
Messālā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus,	*M. and P. (being) consuls.* *when M. and P. were consuls.* *in the consulship of M. and P.*	
Serēnō caelō,	*the sky (being) clear.* *when the sky is clear.* *in a clear sky.*	

1. The foregoing examples illustrate the very common construction called the Ablative Absolute.

2. In the first four examples there is a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative, and a participle agreeing with it. In the last three there is no participle expressed, but instead, another noun or an adjective.

3. Carefully compare the Latin with the English translation, and observe that each ablative absolute may be rendered by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, or *if* (in other instances *because*, *although*, etc.), the Latin noun in the ablative becoming the subject of the clause in English, and that this noun refers to a *different person or thing* from the subject of the leading verb.

Digitized by Google

4. We may also sometimes translate the participle in the ablative absolute by a verb coördinate with a following verb. Thus the fourth might be translated, *The consul finished the war and returned.*

5. If I wish to express in the Latin, *While he was reigning, he carried on war, he* being the subject of both the principal and subordinate clauses, I say, **Is rēgnāns bellum gessit**; but if I wish to express, *While he was reigning, war arose, he* being subject of the subordinate clause, and *war* of the principal, I use the ablative absolute, thus, **Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est.**

6. In the fourth example notice the change of idiom. We might say, *The consul, having finished the war, returned to Rome;* but the Latin has no perfect active participle corresponding to *having finished;* therefore, in Latin the perfect passive participle must be used in the ablative with the noun **bellum**. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a **cum** clause. See **372**.

7. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English participle with *having* may be directly expressed in Latin, if there is a deponent verb of the right meaning; thus, *Cæsar, having encouraged his men,* **Caesar mīlitēs hortātus.**

8. Most instances of the so-called ablative absolute may be resolved as the ablative of *time, means, cause,* etc.

413. EXERCISES

Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as possible.

I. 1. Strictō gladiō, trānsfīxit puellam. 2. Expulsīs rēgibus, duo cōnsulēs creātī sunt. 3. Quō factō,[1] mūtāta est proelī fortūna. 4. Occupātā Siciliā, quid posteā āctūrus es? 5. Hannibal, vīsō frātris occīsī capite, dīxit: "Āgnōscō fortūnam Carthāginis." 6. Hīs parātīs rēbus, Caesar mīlitēs nāvēs cōnscendere jubet. 7. Hōc factō, tūtus eris. 8. Alpibus superātīs, Hannibal in Italiam vēnit. 9. Caesar, mortuō Sūllā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit. 10. Dēlētīs Teutonibus, C. Marius in Cimbrōs sē convertit.

[1] *When this had been done.* What is it literally?

Digitized by Google

Before trying to translate the following sentences, consider well in each case what the probable Latin form of expression, or idiom, would be for the subordinate clause, adverbial phrase, etc.; thus, *When he had stabbed the girl = the girl (having been) stabbed; When Numa was king = Numa (being) king; By hurling their javelins = by the javelins hurled.*

II. 1. When he had stabbed the girl, he put by his sword. 2. On the expulsion of King Tarquin, Brutus and Collatinus were made consuls. 3. When Numa was king, the temple of Janus was built. 4. Cæsar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompey. 5. On the death of Cato, there was no longer[1] a republic. 6. Having learned these facts (things), he hastened against the enemy. 7. The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke the enemy's line. 8. Having held a levy, the consul sets out immediately for (*ad*) the army. 9. O my country, thou hast overcome my anger by employing a mother's entreaties. 10. If we do[2] this, we shall all be safe.

414. VOCABULARY

ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*move up, towards*), *apply, employ.*

cōgnōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitum [**com, (g)nōscō**], *learn, recognize, know.*

Collātīnus, -ī, M., *Collatinus,* surname of L. Tarquinius.

con-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [**jaciō**], (*throw together*), *throw, hurl.*

con-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum, (*draw tight*), *exert one's self, strive, hasten; contend.*

con-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *turn round, turn, change;* **sē convertere,** *turn one's self, turn.*

dēlēctus, -ūs, M. [**dēligō,** *choose out*], *selection, levy.*

dē-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put down, put by, lay down.*

ex-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out* or *away, expel.*

Jānus, -ī, M., *Janus,* the two-faced god.

per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -frāctum [**frangō,** *break*], *break through, break.*

Rhodus, -ī, F., *Rhodes,* an island in the Ægean.

sē-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go apart, withdraw, retire.*

statuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum, *put, place; think, believe, determine.*

stringō, 3, -inxī, strictum, (*draw tight*), *graze; draw, unsheathe.*

[1] *No longer* = **nūlla jam.**

[2] *If we do this = this done.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LXV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

415. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Pluit,** *it rains.*
2. **Tonat,** *it thunders.*
3. **Mē pudet stultitiae meae,** *I am ashamed (it shames me) of my folly.*
4. **Eum paenitet sceleris,** *he repents (it repents him) of his crime.*
5. **Pūgnābātur,** *fighting was going on (it was being fought).*
6. **Caesarī[1] pārendum[2] est,** *Cæsar must be obeyed (it must be obeyed to Cæsar).*
7. **Tibi licet exīre,** *you may go out (it is permitted to you to go out).*
8. **Hōc nōs facere oportet,** *we ought to do this (it behooves us to do this).*
9. **Caesarī placuit ut lēgātōs mitteret,** *Cæsar determined (it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors.*

(1) Observe in each of the foregoing examples that the leading verb has no personal subject either expressed or implied. In 7, the subject of **licet** is the infinitive **exīre**; in 8, the phrase **hōc nōs facere** is the subject of **oportet**; in 9, the clause **ut lēgātōs mitteret** is the subject of **placuit**. In each of the first six the subject is contained in the verb itself.

(2) Some verbs, like **pluit, tonat, pudet, paenitet, licet,** the use of which is mostly confined to the third person singular, are called IMPERSONAL VERBS; many others, as in the examples **pūgnābātur, oportet, placuit,** are sometimes *used impersonally.*

(3) Examples 6 and 7 show one way of rendering *must* and *may* into Latin.

(4) In 3 and 4 notice the use of the accusative and genitive after the verbs.

416. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The impersonal verbs *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet* take the accusative**

[1] See 417. 2. [2] See 425 (4).

Digitized by Google

of the person and the genitive of the object or cause of the feeling.

Some examples of verbs used impersonally have already been given. See **362.** I. 9; **370.** I. 5; **410.** I. 3.

417. *Examine the following:—*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1. **Frātrī persuādet,** *he persuades his brother.*	**Frātrī persuādētur,** *his brother is persuaded.*
2. **Lēgibus pārēbant,** *they obeyed the laws.*	**Lēgibus pārēbātur,** *the laws were obeyed.*
3. **Crēdit mihi,** *he believes me.*	**Mihi crēditur,** *I am believed.*
4. **Amīcīs nocent,** *they injure their friends.*	**Amīcīs nocētur,** *their friends are injured.*

Observe that the verbs are intransitive. Compare the active and passive in the examples one by one. Observe that in each case the passive is expressed by putting the verb in the third person singular, leaving the indirect object of the active unchanged.

418. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive, the person or thing affected (the subject in English) being expressed by the dative.**

419. EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnēs decet rēctē agere. 2. Diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. 3. Sequitur ut falsum sit. 4. Eōrum nōs miseret.[1] 5. Taedet mē vītae. 6. Statuendum[2] vōbīs ante noctem est. 7. Licet mihi ex urbe ēgredī. 8. Nōs oportuit[3] hōc facere. 9. Trāditum est Scīpiōnem doctum fuisse. 10. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 11. Obsistitur illīs. 12. Cuī[4] parcī potuit? 13. Persuādētur cōnsulī.

[1] Compare **415.** 3 and 4.

[2] *The duty of deciding is to you = you must decide.* Compare **425.** 7.

[3] *It behooved us to do = we ought to have done.*

[4] See **343.**

Digitized by Google

Observe that the following sentences are modelled closely on the foregoing, and on the illustrative examples. Cast each one into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words; thus the fifth sentence will be changed to *It disgusts me of the folly*, etc.

II. 1. It becomes us all to live well. 2. The battle will be fought bravely. 3. It followed that[1] the enemy were defeated. 4.[2] He was ashamed of his cowardice. 5. I am disgusted with the folly of the men. 6. What must we do? 7. What ought we to have done?[3] 8.[4] May I take the book? 9. It was reported to Cæsar that the enemy were approaching. 10. It resulted[5] from these circumstances[6] that[1] all were silent. 11. The winds are opposed with difficulty. 12. Can the soldier be spared? 13. Are not the laws of the republic obeyed?

420. VOCABULARY

decet, 2, **decuit**, impers., *it is seemly, becoming, fitting.*

ē-gredior, 3, **-gressus** [**gradior**], *go out, go forth, march out.* Cf. **exeō.**

fortiter, adv. [**fortis**], *bravely, courageously.*

licet, 2, **-uit** (**-itum est**), impers., *it is permitted, it is lawful,* (*one*) *may.*

miseret, 2, **-itum est**, impers. [**miser**], *it makes miserable, it excites pity,* (*one*) *pities.*

ob-sistō, 3, **-stitī**, **-stitum**, *oppose, withstand, resist*; w. dat.

oportet, 2, **-uit**, impers., *it is necessary, it behooves,* (*one*) *must* or *ought.*

parcō, 3, **pepercī** (**parsī**), **parsum**, *spare*; w. dat.

piget, 2, **-uit** (**-itum est**), impers., *it disgusts,* (*one*) *is disgusted.*

pudet, 2, **-uit** (**-itum est**), impers., *it shames,* (*one*) *is ashamed.*

pūgnō, 1 [**pūgna**], *fight.*

stultitia, **-ae**, F. [**stultus**, *foolish*], *folly* (**345**. 11).

taedet, 2, **-uit** (**taesum est**), impers., *it disgusts, wearies,* (*one*) *is disgusted.*

vix, adv., *hardly, with difficulty.*

[1] A *result* clause, **ut**, etc.
[2] Compare **415**. 3.
[3] Compare I. 8.
[4] Compare **415**. 7.
[5] **Fīēbat.**
[6] **Rēs.**

Digitized by Google

421. FOR TRANSLATION

THE DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW

Lugete, o Veneres Cupidinesque,
Et quantumst[1] hominum[2] venustiorum.
Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
Passer, deliciae meae puellae,
Quem plus illa oculis[3] suis amabat:
Nam mellitus erat suamque[4] norat[5]
Ipsa[6] tam benė quam puella matrem
Nec sese a gremio illius[7] movebat,
Sed circumsiliens modo huc modo illuc
Ad solam dominam usque pipiabat.
Qui[8] nunc it per iter tenebricosum
Illuc unde negant redire quemquam.[9]
At vobis male sit,[10] malae tenebrae
Orci, quae omnia bella[11] devoratis:
Tam bellum mihi[12] passerem abstulistis.
O factum male![13] io miselle passer!
Tua nunc opera[14] meae puellae[15]
Flendo turgiduli rubent[16] ocelli. — *Catullus.*

[1] For **quantum est.** Translate, *all ye lovely ones, whoever ye are.* What is it literally?

[2] Depends on **quantum.** See **340.**

[3] Ablative after the comparative **plūs.** See **212.**

[4] Supply **dominam.**

[5] For **nōverat,** but with the meaning of the imperfect.

[6] With **puella.**

[7] That is, **puellae.**

[8] Refers to **passer.**

[9] Subject accusative of **redīre.** See **401** and **279. 6.**

[10] *Woe betide you!*

[11] From **bellus.**

[12] Translate *my.*

[13] **Factum male,** *woful deed.* What is it literally?

[14] *On your account.*

[15] Genitive after **ocellī.**

[16] **Turgidulī rubent,** *are all swollen and red.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LXVI

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE — GERUNDIVE

Review the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

422. The future active participle with the verb **sum** forms the FIRST, or ACTIVE, PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: **amātūrus sum, eram,** etc., *I am, was,* etc., *about to (going to, intending to) love.*

423. The gerundive with the verb **sum** forms the SECOND, or PASSIVE, PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: **amandus sum, eram,** etc., *I am, was,* etc., *to be loved; I deserve, ought,* etc., *to be loved.*

424. PARADIGMS

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	INDICATIVE	
PRES.	amātūrus sum	amandus sum
IMPF.	amātūrus eram	amandus eram
FUT.	amātūrus erō	amandus erō
PERF.	amātūrus fuī	amandus fuī
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram	amandus fueram
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō	amandus fuerō
	etc.	etc.

425. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Nōn dubitō quīn monitūrus sit,** *I do not doubt that he will advise.*
2. **Nōn dubitō quīn futūrum sit ut id fīat,** *I do not doubt that (it will happen that it be done) it will be done.*
3. **Sciēbam quid āctūrus essēs,** *I knew what you were going to do.*
4. **Pontem faciendum cūrat,** *he (cares for a bridge to be built) has a bridge built.*
5. **Dēlenda est Carthāgō,** *Carthage must be destroyed.*
6. **Caesarī omnia erant agenda,** *everything had to be done by Cæsar.*
7. **Mihi scrībendum est,** *(the duty of writing is to me) I must write.*

Digitized by Google

8. **Omnibus moriendum est,** (*the necessity of dying is to all*) *all must die.*

9. **Vōbīs jūdiciō ūtendum est,** (*the duty of using judgment is to you*) *you ought to use judgment.*

(1) The first three examples show how a future tense may be supplied for the subjunctive mood.

(2) Observe in the fourth example the use of the gerundive agreeing with a noun which is the object of **cūrō**, the whole expression denoting *to have a thing done.*

(3) The last five examples show some uses of the passive periphrastic conjugation. Notice that the idea of *necessity*, or *duty*, is prominent in these forms.

(4) In 7, 8, and 9 the verbs are used impersonally, that is, without any personal subject, the gerundive being in the nominative singular neuter. This impersonal use belongs to transitive verbs without an object expressed, and to intransitive verbs. For the case of **jūdiciō**, see **304**.

(5) In the last four examples, **Caesarī, mihi, omnibus,** and **vōbīs** denote in each case the person *to whom* there is a duty or necessity of doing something. This dative is most conveniently rendered with *by*, and is called the DATIVE OF AGENT.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person by whom the act must be done.**[1]

427. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis dubitat quīn futūrī sītis doctī? 2. Quis dubitat quīn lūdōs vīsūrī sīmus? 3. Nōn erat dubium quīn lūdōs vīsūrus esset. 4. Nōlī dubitāre quīn crās ventūrus sim. 5. Cōgnōvī quid āctūrus sit. 6. Audiam quid āctūrus sīs. 7. Cōgnōveram quid āctūrī essent. 8. Dux castra mōtūrus est. 9. Scrībenda est mihi epistula. 10. Scrībenda erat

[1] How is the agent with a verb in the passive otherwise and commonly expressed?

Digitized by Google

tibi epistula. 11. Oppidum mīlitibus oppūgnandum erit. 12. Hīc liber mihi legendus est.

II. 1. There is no doubt that you are going to be a hero. 2. I doubt not that you will see the games. 3. Do not doubt[1] that he will be present. 4. Do you know what he is going to do? 5.[2] We ought to cultivate virtue. 6.[2] I must give the signal. 7.[2] We ought to read the poets. 8. The commander must be obeyed.[3] 9. The boy is not to be believed. 10. The town had to be fortified.

428. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quaesīvit ex ōrāculō Croesus utrum ipse superātūrus esset. 2. Nōn erat dubium quīn Faliscī sēsē Rōmānīs dēditūrī essent. 3. Nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, plūra et graviōra dictūrī fuimus. 4. Māgnam in spem veniēbat fore[4] ut pertināciā dēsisteret hostis. 5. Cum Scīpiō, graviter vulnerātus, in hostium manūs jamjam ventūrus esset, fīlius eum perīculō līberāvit. 6. Hōc cēnseō et Carthāginem esse dēlendam. 7. Aemilius līberōs Graecīs litterīs ērudiendōs[5] cūrāverat. 8. Caesarī dandum erat tubā sīgnum. 9. Mihi ūtendum est jūdiciō meō.[6] 10. Ita nōbīs vīvendum est ut ad mortem parātī sīmus.

II. 1. I will ask of the general whether he is going to advance. 2. Who doubts that the Romans will surrender themselves to the Faliscans? 3.[7] If words had not failed, I was going to write a longer letter. 4. I think the enemy will be defeated. 5. When Cæsar was on the point of

[1] **Nōlī dubitāre.** How else may this be expressed?

[2] Express in two ways — by using **oportet**, and then by the gerundive.

[3] Lit., *it must be obeyed to the commander.* Cf. **415**. 6.

[4] **Fore = futūrum esse,** *to be about to be,* may be omitted in translation.

[5] Compare **425**. 4, and (2).

[6] See **425**. 9.

[7] Compare I. 3.

Digitized by Google

starting[1] for Rome, he received a letter from Pompey. 6. My opinion is[2] that the town ought to be besieged. 7. These things must not be despised by[3] us. 8. A wise man will have his boys trained[4] in Latin literature.[5] 9. The citizens[6] must obey the laws. 10. The soldiers must use their own judgment.

429. VOCABULARY

Aemilius, -ī, M., *Æmilius*, a Roman consul.

cēnseō, 2, **-uī, -um,** *estimate; think, deem, be of opinion.*

Croesus, -ī, M., *Crœsus*, king of Lydia.

dē-dō, 3, **-didī, -ditum,** (*put away from one's self*), *surrender, deliver up.*

dē-ficiō, 3, **-fēcī, -fectum** [**faciō**], (*make away from*), *revolt; fail, be wanting.*

dē-sistō, 3, **-stitī, -stitum,** (*stand off* or *apart*), *leave off, cease, desist.*

doctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **dōceō**], *learned.*

gravis, -ē, adj., *heavy, serious.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, seriously.*

ita, adv., *thus, so.*

jamjam, adv., *already;* **jamjam ventūrus,** *on the point of coming.*

jūdicium, -ī, N. [**jūdicō**], *judgment, opinion.*

op-pūgnō, 1 [**ob**], *attack, assault, besiege.*

ōrāculum, -ī, N. [**ōrō**], *oracle.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **parō**], *ready, prepared.*

pertināciа, -ae, F. [**pertināx,** *persistent*], *perseverance, obstinacy* (**345.** 11).

sīgnum, -ī, N., *mark, sign, signal.*

ūtor, 3, **ūsus,** *use, employ;* w. abl.

utrum, adv., *whether.* Cf. **num** (**382**).

jūdicō, cēnseō, exīstimō, arbitror, putō, and **opīnor,** all mean *think;* but the first four imply more deliberation and reflection — primarily *think* as a judge, a magistrate, an appraiser, an arbiter — hence, in general, of official, authoritative opinion. **Putō** and **opīnor** imply rather private, personal judgment or opinion.

[1] *On the point of starting* = *already about to start.*

[2] *This I think.* Cf. I. 6.

[3] See **425** (5).

[4] Cf. I. 7, and **425** (2).

[5] Compare **232.** I. 4.

[6] **Ā cīvibus,** to distinguish the agent from the indirect object.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LXVII

GERUND — GERUNDIVE — SUPINE

430. Learn the gerunds and supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

Gerund

431. *Examine the following:* —

G. **Caesar loquendī fīnem facit,** *Cæsar makes an end of speaking.*
Cupidus est tē audiendī, *he is desirous of hearing you.*

D. **Aqua ūtilis est bibendō,** *water is useful for drinking.*

Ac. **Inter pūgnandum trīgintā nāvēs captae sunt,** *during the fight (amid the fighting) thirty ships were taken.*

Ab. **Mēns discendō alitur,** *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

1. The above examples illustrate the use of the gerund in its several cases. It will be seen that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *ing*. The nominative is supplied in Latin by the infinitive; *e.g.*, **vidēre est crēdere,** *seeing is believing.*

Gerund and Gerundive

432. *Examine the following:* —

G. **Cōnsilia**	**urbem dēlendī,** / **urbis dēlendae,**	*plans for (of) destroying the city.*
D. **Operam dat**	**agrōs colendō (rare),** / **agrīs colendīs,**	*he devotes himself to tilling the fields.*
Ac. **Vēnērunt ad**	**pācem petendum (rare),** / **pācem petendam,**	*they came to sue for peace.*
Ab. **Occupātus sum in**	**litterās scrībendō (rare),** / **litterīs scrībendīs,**	*I was engaged in writing letters.*

1. What is to be particularly studied in the above examples is the difference between the gerund and the gerundive construction, as shown within the braces. Observe (1) that *the* ***gerund*** *is put in the required case, and has its object in the accusative;* (2) that *the* ***noun*** *is put in the required case, and the gerundive agrees with it.*

Digitized by Google

2. Except in the genitive, where the two constructions are about equally common, the gerundive construction is almost always preferred.

3. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad** denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

SUPINE

433. *Examine the following:* —

1. **Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum,** *ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.*
2. **Id perfacile est factū,** *that is very easy to do,* or *to be done.*

Observe in the first example that the supine **petītum** has the same meaning as **ut petant, quī petant,** or **ad petendam**; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

434. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.**

In the second example the supine in *ū* answers the question *in what respect?* **Perfacile factū,** *easy in respect to the doing.* This use is common after adjectives.

The supine in *ū* is really an *ablative of specification.* See **260.**

435. EXERCISES

I. 1. Multī convēnēre studiō[1] videndae novae urbis. 2. Ars puerōs ēducandī difficilis est. 3. Ea[2] aquae causā[3] hauriendae dēscenderat. 4. Brūtus ad explōrandum cum equitibus antecessit. 5. Mīlitēs ad domum custōdiendam ā rēge missī sunt. 6. Nēminī dubium est quīn Fabius rem Rōmānam cunctandō restituerit. 7. Is opportūnus vīsus est locus commūniendō praesidiō. 8. Omnis spēs ēvādendī adempta est. 9. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt auxilium rogātum. 10. Quod optimum est factū, faciam.

[1] *From a desire;* abl. of cause.
[2] *She.* See **270. 2.**
[3] The ablative **causā,** *for the sake of,* follows its genitive.

Digitized by Google

II. 1. You will have time to lead (of leading) out the army from that place. 2. He undertook the war for the sake[1] of destroying the republic. 3. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 4. While drinking[2] we conversed about many things. 5. Many leaders had assembled to see[3] Scipio. 6. Night put[4] an end to the fighting. 7. This seems (to be) a suitable place for building a house. 8. The enemy had entertained[5] the hope of getting possession of the camp.[6] 9. A multitude of men came together to witness[3] the games. 10. It is difficult to say what he will do.[7]

436. VOCABULARY

ad-imō, 3, **-ēmī**, **-ēmptum** [**emō**], *take away, remove.*

alō, 3, **-uī**, **-tum**, *nourish, strengthen, support.*

ante-cēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, *go before.*

auxilium, **-ī**, N. [**augeō**], *help, aid, support;* plur., *auxiliaries.*

col-loquor, 3, **-locūtus** [**com**], *speak together, converse.*

com-mūniō, 4, (*fortify strongly*), *secure, intrench.*

con-veniō, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventum** [**com**], *come together, assemble.*

cunctor, 1, *linger, hesitate.*

edō, **edere** or **ēsse**, **ēdī**, **ēsum** or **ēssum**, *eat.*

ex-plōrō, 1, *search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.*

Fabius, **-ī**, M., *Fabius*, a Roman general.

hauriō, 4, **hausī**, **haustum**, *draw* (*water*), *drain, drink up.*

opportūnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.*

re-stituō, 3, **-uī**, **-ūtum** [**statuō**], (*replace*), *give back, return, restore.*

sus-cipiō, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [**sub, capiō**], *undertake.*

[1] **Causā.** See page 209, note 3.

[2] **Inter bibendum.**

[3] Express in three ways.

[4] *Put an end to = make an end of.*

[5] *Entertain the hope = come into the hope.*

[6] What case with **potior**?

[7] Why must the subjunctive be used? What tense of the subjunctive to express future time? What form expresses the immediate future?

Digitized by Google

READING LESSONS

LETTERS: CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA

437. B.C. 49

Sī valēs, bene est, valeō.[1] Dā operam[2] ut convalēscās. Quod opus[3] erit, ut[4] rēs tempusque postulat, prōvideās[5] atque administrēs; et ad mē dē omnibus rēbus quam[6] saepissimē litterās mittās. Valē.

438. B.C. 49

S. V. B. E. E.[7] V. Valētūdinem tuam velim[8] cūrēs[9] dīligentissimē.[10] Nam mihi et[11] scrīptum et nūntiātum est tē[12] in febrim subitō incidisse. Quod[13] celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris litterīs certiōrem,[14] fēcistī mihi grātum. Item posthāc, sī quid[15] opus erit,[16] sī quid acciderit novī,[17] faciēs[18] ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē.

[1] The Romans often began their letters with these five words, or rather with the abbreviations S. V. B. E. V.

[2] *Give labor = try.*

[3] An indeclinable noun, *need;* **opus est,** *is necessary.*

[4] What indicates that **ut** does not mean *in order that?*

[5] The hortatory subjunctive. See **390**.

[6] **Quam** strengthens the superlative; **quam saepissimē,** *as often as possible.*

[7] For **ego.**

[8] *I could wish;* **volō,** *I wish.*

[9] Equivalent to **ut cūrēs.**

[10] Notice the emphatic position of the adverb, after the verb.

[11] **Et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

[12] Subject of **incidisse.** See **401.**

[13] *In that.*

[14] **Fēcistī . . . certiōrem,** *made more certain = informed.*

[15] *Anything;* **quid** is regularly used instead of **aliquid** after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num.**

[16] See note 3, above.

[17] *Of new;* partitive genitive.

[18] A future equivalent to the imperative. **Faciēs ut sciam,** *let me know.* What is it literally?

Digitized by Google

439. B.C. 46

SĪ valēs, bene est.[1] Cōnstituerāmus, ut[2] ad tē anteā scrīpseram, obviam Cicerōnem[3] Caesarī mittere; sed mūtāvimus cōnsilium, quia dē illīus[4] adventū nihil audiēbāmus. Dē cēterīs rēbus, etsi nihil erat novī,[5] tamen quid velīmus[6] et quid hōc tempore putēmus[6] opus[7] esse ex Siccā[8] poteris cōgnōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā[9] dīligenter. Valē.

440. B.C. 46

[10]S. V. B. E. V. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē litterīs quās Philotīmus habēre dīcitur, quidquam[11] adhūc certī[12] habēmus. Sī quid erit certī, faciam tē statim certiōrem.[13] Valētūdinem tuam fac[14] ut cūrēs. Valē.

[1] Compare this form of beginning a letter with those of the two preceding.

[2] Compare the use of **ut** in **437**, line 2.

[3] That is, his son Cicero.

[4] That is, Cæsar's.

[5] Genitive neuter of **novus** depending on **nihil**. Compare the same word in **438**, and the note.

[6] Translate the words **quid velīmus**, etc., just as they stand.

[7] Compare **opus erit** in **437** and **438**, and the note.

[8] A friend of Cicero.

[9] Compare with this the beginning and the ending of **438**.

[10] Observe how nearly this letter can be translated in the order of the Latin words.

[11] *Anything at all.* To express *anything at all*, after a negative word, as here after **neque**, the Romans used **quidquam**, not **aliquid**. See **279. 6.**

[12] Genitive neuter of **certus**, depending on **quidquam**. Compare **novī** in **438** after **quid**, and in **439** after **nihil**.

[13] Compare **fēcistī certiōrem** in **438**, and the note.

[14] See page 150, note. **Fac ut cūrēs**, *do take care.* What is the literal meaning? Compare with this the endings of the two preceding letters.

Digitized by Google

FABLES

441. Dē Vitiīs Hominum

Juppiter nōbīs[1] duās pērās imposuit: alteram,[2] quae nostrīs vitiīs replēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit; alteram[2] autem, quā[3] aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum[4] suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus quae[5] ipsī peccāmus; sī autem aliī peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

442. Mulier et Gallīna

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī[6] cotīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam[7] aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod[8] in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet.[9] Itaque dum mājōribus dīvitiīs inhiat,[10] etiam minōrēs[11] perdidit.

443. Vulpēs et Ūva

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta[12] ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne,[13] sī eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns, "At

[1] With **imposuit**; *has placed on us.*

[2] **Alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.*

[3] **Quā** = **in quā pērā.**

[4] Compare **ante pectus nostrum** with **post tergum nōbīs.**

[5] *What we sin = what sins we commit.* On **ipsī**, see **270. 4.**

[6] *For her.*

[7] **Illam** = **illam gallīnam**, subject of **cēlāre.**

[8] **Nisi quod** = **praeter id quod.**

[9] *Is wont = is usually.*

[10] *Gapes for = is greedy for.* Notice here a peculiarity of the Latin: the present is used after **dum**, though the perfect **perdidit** follows. The English idiom requires us to translate such a present by the imperfect, *was greedy for.*

[11] Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

[12] Perfect participle of **cōnspicor**, agreeing with **vulpēs.** Translate by the present participle.

[13] *With the exertion.*

Digitized by Google

nunc etiam," inquit, "acerbae[1] sunt, nec eās[1] in viā repertās[2] tollerem."[3]

444. Rūsticus et Canis Fidēlis

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Fīliolum, quī in cūnīs jacēbat, relīquit canī[4] fidēlī atque validō custōdiendum.[5] Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum exstīnctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus acūtīs, et, dum eum necāre studet,[6] cūnās simul ēvertit super exstīnctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rīctum vidēret,[7] īrā accenditur.[8] Temerē igitur custōdem fīliolī interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās restituit,[9] super anguem occīsum repperit puerum vīvum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris[10] sēra[11] fuit.

445. Puer Mendāx

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,[12] atque per jocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium ferrētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque[13] lupum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē ēlūsōs ā puerō vīdērunt. Deinde[14] cum ipse[15] lupus aggrederētur, et puer rē vērā[16] implōrāret

[1] The plural, as if **ūvae** had been used.

[2] **Eās repertās,** *them found* = *If I had found them.*

[3] *Would I pick them up.*

[4] The so-called dative of the agent with **custōdiendum.** Translate, *left for his . . . dog to guard.*

[5] Literally, *to be guarded.*

[6] See page 213, note 10.

[7] For the subjunctive, see **373.**

[8] Present for perfect, called *historical present.*

[9] Translate as if it were **restituerat**; after **ubi, ut,** and **postquam,** meaning *when*, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

[10] Translate, *for the deed.*

[11] *Too late.*

[12] The imperfect, denoting customary action; render, *used to tend.*

[13] *But . . . not.*

[14] See page 106, note 1.

[15] *Really.* See **270. 6.**

[16] **Rē vērā,** *in earnest.*

Digitized by Google

auxilium, nēmō gregī subvēnit,[1] et ovēs lupī praeda[2] sunt factae. Mendācī hominī[3] nōn crēdimus, etiam cum vēra dīcit.

446. SENEX ET MORS

Senex quīdam līgna in silvā cecīderat,[4] et, fasce in umerōs sublātō,[5] domum redīre coepit. Cum fatīgātus esset[6] et onere et itinere, dēposuit līgna, et, senectūtis[7] et inopiae[7] miseriās sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit mortem, ut sē omnibus malīs[8] līberāret. Mox adest[9] mors et interrogat quid vellet. Tum senex perterritus: "Prō! hunc līgnōrum fascem, quaesō, umerīs[10] meīs impōnās."[11]

447. VULPĒS ET LEŌ

Vulpēs nunquam leōnem vīderat. Cum huīc forte occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur[12] formīdine.[13] Eundem cōnspicāta est iterum. Tum extimuit illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut anteā. Cum tertiō[14] leōnī obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,[15] ut audēret[12] accēdere propius et colloquī cum eō.

[1] Cf. **succurrō**. See **343**. How does the meaning *help* come from the primitive meaning?

[2] Predicate nominative.

[3] Why dative? See **343**.

[4] From **caedō**, not **cadō**.

[5] From **tollō**, not **sufferō**.

[6] For the subjunctive, see **373**.

[7] Notice the order: the genitives coming first are made emphatic.

[8] Ablative of separation. See **130**.

[9] See page 214, note 8.

[10] **Umerīs . . . impōnās**, cf. **nōbīs . . . imposuit** in **441**.

[11] **Quaesō impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās.**

[12] Is this clause a *purpose* or a *result* clause? See illustrative examples, **352** and **368**.

Are the clauses beginning with **cum** *temporal* or *causal?* Read again the illustrative examples, **372** and **374**.

[13] *Of fright.*

[14] *The third time.*

[15] *To such a degree was not frightened = was so far from being frightened.*

Digitized by Google

448. CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR, I, 1–5. — B.C. 58

1. Gallia est omnis [1] dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam [2] Aquītānī, tertiam quī [3] ipsōrum linguā [4] Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,[5] īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē [6] differunt. Gallōs [7] ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae [8] longissimē absunt, minimēque [9] ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs [10] animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum [11] continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs [12] virtūte [13] praecēdunt, quod fere cotīdiānīs proeliīs [14] cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs [15] fīnibus eōs [16] prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus [17] bellum gerunt. Eōrum [18] ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā [19] flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab [20] Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae

[1] **omnis**: *as a whole.*

[2] **aliam**: **alteram** in the sense of **secundam** would be more common.

[3] **quī**: supply mentally **iī**, as antecedent.

[4] **ipsōrum linguā**: *in their own tongue.*

[5] **linguā**: **260.**

[6] **inter sē**: *from each other.* What literally?

[7] **Gallōs**: that is, the Celtic Gauls.

[8] **prōvinciae**: not reckoned a part of Gallia.

[9] **minimē . . . saepe**: *very seldom.*

[10] **effēminandōs**: **432. 3.**

[11] **quibuscum**: **265. 3.**

[12] **reliquōs Gallōs**: *the rest of the Gauls.*

[13] **virtūte**: see **linguā** and reference.

[14] **proeliīs**: **144, 145.**

[15] **suīs**: refers to **Helvētiī**, the subject.

[16] **eōs . . . eōrum**: refer to **Germānīs**; **ipsī**, to **Helvētiī.**

[17] **fīnibus**: *territories.*

[18] **Eōrum**: *of their country*, though grammatically referring to **Hī omnēs**, or **Hōrum**, above.

[19] **initium capit ā**: *begins at.*

[20] **ab**: *on the side of.*

Digitized by Google

ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam [1] pertinet, spectat [2] inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is M. Messālā [3] et M. Pisōne cōnsulibus rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī [4] persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse,[5] cum [6] virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō [7] potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit,[8] quod undique locī [9] nātūrā Helvētiī continentur; [10] ūnā ex parte [11] flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum [12] Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iurā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā [13] lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram [14] ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat [15] ut [16] et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs [17] bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte [18] hominēs [19] bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et

[1] **ad Hispāniam**: *next to Spain.*

[2] **spectat**: *it lies* or *faces.*

[3] **M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus**: **412**, 6th example. The Romans indicated the year by naming the consuls. This was in B.C. 61.

[4] **cīvitātī**: **342** and **343**.

[5] **perfacile esse**: (*saying that*) *it was very easy.* **403**.

[6] **cum . . . praestārent**: *since they surpassed.* **375**.

[7] **imperiō**: **304**.

[8] **id . . . persuāsit**: he persuaded this (id) to them (eīs) = *he persuaded them to this course the more easily on this account* (hōc).

[9] **locī**: *of their country.*

[10] **continentur**: has not the same meaning in chap. 1.

[11] **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side.*

[12] **agrum**: *country.*

[13] **tertiā**: *i.e.*, **tertiā ex parte**.

[14] **prōvinciam nostram**: see page 216, note 8.

[15] **Hīs rēbus fīēbat**: *the consequence of this was.* Lit., *it was coming about from these things.* **fīēbat**: **327**.

[16] **ut . . . vagārentur**: see **368**.

[17] **fīnitimīs**: **117**.

[18] **quā ex parte**: *and for this reason*, **quā** = et eā, **parte** = causā.

[19] **hominēs**: (*being*) *men.*

Digitized by Google

prō glōriā bellī[1] atque fortitūdinis angustōs[2] sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum[3] CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.[4]

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, cōnstituērunt ea quae[5] ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum[6] numerum coëmere, sēmentēs[7] quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad[8] eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt;[9] in tertium annum[10] profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi[11] lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,[12] Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūjus pater rēgnum[13] in[14] Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut[15] rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur[16] persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile[17] factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium

[1] **glōria bellī**: *renown in war.*

[2] **angustōs**: *too narrow.*

[3] **mīlia passuum**: *thousands of paces = miles.* **340.** The Roman **passus** was five feet, and a thousand of them made a Roman mile. Was this longer or shorter than our mile?

[4] **patēbant**: *extended.*

[5] **ea quae**: *such things as.*

[6] **quam māximum numerum**: *the greatest possible number.*

[7] **sēmentēs . . . facere**: *to make the greatest possible sowings = to sow as much land as possible.*

[8] **Ad . . . cōnficiendās**: **432. 3.**

[9] **dūxērunt**: *they thought.*

[10] **in tertium annum**: *for the third year.* Mark the force of **in.**

[11] **sibi**: *upon himself.*

[12] **Casticō**: see page 217, n. 4.

[13] **rēgnum**: *sovereignty.*

[14] **in**: *among.*

[15] **ut . . . occupāret**: *to seize;* depends on **persuādet.**

[16] **ut idem cōnārētur**: *to make the same attempt.*

[17] **Perfacile . . . perficere**: *to accomplish their undertakings* (**cōnāta perficere**) *he proves to them to be very easy to do* (**factū**). On **factū**, see **433. 2.**

Digitized by Google

obtentūrus esset:[1] nōn esse dubium[2] quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum[3] Helvētiī possent; sē[4] suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē[5] fidem et jūsjūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō,[6] per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae[7] sēsē[8] potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs[9] est Helvētiīs per indicium[10] ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinclīs[11] causam dīcere[12] coēgērunt. Damnātum[13] poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā[14] causae dictiōnis[15] Orgetorīx ad jūdicium[16] omnem suam familiam ad hominum mīlia decem undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē[17] causam dīceret sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem[18] incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque

[1] **obtentūrus esset**: *was about to get.* Observe that obtineō has not the same meaning as before.

[2] **nōn esse dubium**: depends upon a verb of saying, understood. **400.**

[3] **plūrimum . . . possent**: *were the strongest.*

[4] **sē**: *that he*, subject accusative of **conciliātūrum (esse)**. **401.**

[5] **inter sē . . . dant**: *they give among themselves = they exchange.*

[6] **rēgnō occupātō**: *if they should seize the supreme power.* **412.**

[7] **tōtīus Galliae**: find **potior** with the ablative in chap. 2.

[8] **sēsē**: subject accusative of **posse**.

[9] **Ea rēs**: *this conspiracy.* When **rēs** occurs, consider what word other than "thing" will best express the meaning. Note where it has already occurred.

[10] **per indicium**: that is, **per indicēs**, *through informers.*

[11] **ex vinclīs**: we should say, *in chains.*

[12] **dīcere**: *plead.*

[13] **Damnātum . . . cremārētur**: the clause **ut . . . cremārētur** explains **poenam**; *the punishment of being burned alive was bound* (**oportēbat**) *to follow, if he should be condemned.* With **damnātum** supply **eum**, which is the object of **sequī**, as **poenam** is the subject accusative.

[14] **Diē cōnstitūtā**: *on the day appointed.* **136.**

[15] **dictiōnis**: *for pleading.*

[16] **jūdicium**: *trial.*

[17] **nē . . . dīceret**: depends on **sē ēripuit**, *he escaped pleading his case.* He overawed the court.

[18] **rem**: *act.* See note 9.

Digitized by Google

hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent,[1] Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut[2] Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn[3] ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

5. Post ējus mortem nihilō minus[4] Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut[5] ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad[6] duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant[7] combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā[8] parātiōrēs ad[9] omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium[10] molita cibāria sibi quemque[11] domō efferre jubent. Persuādent[12] Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs utī eōdem ūsī[13] cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs[14] proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Norēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs[15] ad sē sociōs[16] sibi adscīscunt.

[1] **cōgerent**: after **cum**, like **cōnārētur**. **373**.

[2] **ut**: *as*.

[3] **quīn . . . cōnscīverit**: *but that he himself decreed death to himself = that he died by his own hand.*

The golden rule *for discovering the meaning* of a Latin sentence is, Take the words in the Latin order. Four-fifths of the following chapter may be read mentally this way. Try it. When once the meaning is clear, translate; that is, render into good English.

[4] **nihilō minus**: *none the less.*

[5] **ut . . . exeant**: *that is, to go forth from their country.*

[6] **ad**: *about.*

[7] **portātūrī erant**: **422**.

[8] **sublātā**: from **tollō**, *remove.*

[9] **ad . . . subeunda**: see **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**, chap. 3, and the note. **subeunda**, from **subeō**: **327**.

[10] **trium mēnsium**: *for three months.*

[11] **quemque**: **279. 4.**

[12] **Persuādent Rauracīs . . . utī . . . proficīscantur**: find the same constructions with **persuādeō** in chap. 3.

[13] **ūsī**: from **ūtor**. Translate, *to adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and set out with them.* But how literally?

[14] **cum iīs**: that is, with the Helvetii.

[15] **receptōs . . . adscīscunt**: it is best to translate **receptōs** as if it were **recipiunt et.**

[16] **sociōs**, *as allies*, predicate accusative to **Bōiōs.**

Digitized by Google

449. VOCABULARY

For words not found here, see General Vocabulary.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of accipiō], *acceptable, agreeable.*
ad-dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum, *influence, induce.*
ad-ficiō (af-), 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *move, affect.*
ad-scīscō, 3, -scīvī, -scītum, *take to one's self, take.*
Aeduī, -ōrum, M. (pl.), *the Æduans.*
Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., *Æduan.*
angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow.*
ante, adv., *before.*
Aquītānī, -ōrum, M. (plur.), *the Aquitanians.*
Aquītānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania*, a province of southern Gaul.
biennium, -i, N. [bis, annus], *space of two years.*
Bōiī, -ōrum, M. (plur.), *the Boii.*
Casticus, -i, M., *Casticus.*
Catamantaloedēs, -is, M., *Catamantaloedes.*
Celtae, -ārum, M. (plur.), *the Celts.*
cibārius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus], *pertaining to food;* as noun in plur., *provisions, supplies.*
co-emō, 3, -ēmī, -ēmptum [com], *buy up.*
com-būrō, 3, -bussī, -būstum [ūrō], *burn up, destroy.* [*sort.*
com-meō, 1, [eō], *come and go, re-*
com-parō, 1, *furnish, procure.*
con-ciliō, 1 [concilium, *meeting*], *bring together, gain over, win.*
con-dūcō, 3, -xi, -ductum [com], *lead together, collect.*
cōn-fīrmō, 1 [com], *establish, appoint, assure, assert.*
con-jūrātiō, -ōnis, F. [conjūrō, *conspire*], *conspiracy.*
cōn-scīscō, 3, -scīvī, -scītum [com], *adjudge.*
continenter, adv. [continēns], *continuously, incessantly.*
con-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [com, teneō], *bound, hem in.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. [quot, diēs], *daily.*
cremō, 1, *burn.*
cultus, -ūs, M. [colō, *cultivate*], *civilization, culture.*
cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō], *desirous.*
-dēligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō], *choose out, select.*
dictiō, -ōnis, F. [dīcō], *a saying, a pleading.*
dītissimus, -a, -um, same as **dīvitissimus**, *richest.*
Dīviciācus, -i, M., *Diviciacus.*
dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate.*
Dumnorīx, -igis, M., *Dumnorix.*
ef-fēminō, 1 [ex, fēmina, *a female*], *make effeminate, weaken.*
ex-sequor, 3, -secūtus, *follow out; assert, maintain.*
extrēmus, -a, -um [sup. of exter], *furthest, remotest, extreme.*
ex-ūrō, 3, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn up, consume.*
facile, adv. [facilis], *easily.*
familia, -ae, F. [famulus, *slave*], *household; dependents.*
Garumna, -ae, M., *the Garonne.*
Helvētiī, -ōrum, M., *the Helvetians.*
Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian.*
hūmānitās, -ātis, F. [hūmānus], *refinement.*
im-portō, 1 [in], *bring in, import.*

Digitized by Google

in-cendō, 1, -dī, -cēnsum [**candō**, *glow*], *set fire to, burn.*
in-citō, 1, *incite, arouse.*
in-dūcō, 3, -xī, -ductum, *bring into; arouse, persuade, induce.*
īnferior, -iōris, adj. [comp. of **īnferus**, *below*], *lower.*
īnstitūtum, -ī, N. [**īnstituō**], *custom, habit.*
jūmentum, -ī, N. [**jungō**], *beast of burden.*
Jūra, -ae, M., *Jura*, a mountain.
jūs-jūrandum, juris-jurandī, N. [**jūs**, **jūrō**], *oath.*
lātē, adv. [**lātus**], *widely, extensively.*
lātitūdō, -inis, F. [**lātus**], *breadth, width.*
Latobrīgī, -ōrum, M. (plur.), *the Latobrigi.*
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F. [**lēgō**, *depute*], *embassy.*
Lemannus, -ī, M., *Lake Geneva.*
longitūdō, -inis, F. [**longus**], *length.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, N. [**māter**], *marriage.*
Mātrona, -ae, M., *the Marne.*
mercātor, -ōris, M. [**mercor**, *trade*], *trader, merchant.*
Messāla, -ae, M., *Messala*, a Roman consul.
molō, 3, -uī, -ītum, *grind.*
nihilum, -ī, N., *nothing.*
nōbilitās, -ātis, F. [**nōbilis**], *the nobility, the nobles.*
Norēia, -ae, F., *Noreia.*
Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., *of Noricum.*
ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
ob-aerātus, -ī, M. [**aes**], *debtor.*
Orgetorīx, -īgis, M., *Orgetorix.*
per-facilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*
per-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō**], *make thoroughly, perform, accomplish.*
per-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move thoroughly, excite, arouse.*
per-suādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade, induce.*
per-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [**teneō**], *reach, extend; tend, concern.*
Pīsō, -ōnis, M., *Piso*, a Roman consul.
plūrimum, adv. [**plūrimus**], *most; very much.*
prae-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go before; surpass, excel.*
praeter-quam, adv., *beyond, except.*
prīncipātus, -ūs, M. [**prīnceps**], *preëminence, sovereignty.*
prīvātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **prīvō**], *private, isolated.*
probō, 1, *show, prove.*
profectiō, -ōnis, F. [**proficīscor**], *setting out, departure.*
propterea quod, *because.*
Rauracī, -ōrum, M. (plur.), *the Rauraci.*
reditiō, -ōnis, F. [**redeō**], *return.*
Rhodanus, -ī, M., *the Rhone.*
sēmentis, -is, F., *sowing.*
septemtriō, -ōnis, M., in plur., *the seven stars of the Great Dipper; north.*
Sēquana, -ae, F., *the Seine.*
Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. (plur.), *the Sequanians.*
Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian.*
sup-petō, 3, -īvī (-iī), -ītum [**sub**], *be at hand, in store.*
suspiciō, -ōnis, F. [**suspicor**], *suspicion.*
Tulingī, -ōrum, M. (plur.), *the Tulingi.*
ūnā, adv. [**ūnus**], *at the same time, together.*
vergō, 3, no perf. or sup., *turn, slope, lie.*
vinculum (vinclum), -ī, N. [**vinciō**], *bond, chain.*

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARIES

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

IN this vocabulary words enclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem.* It is on this ground that such instances will be found as *metus* referred to *metuō*, and *metuō* to *metus*. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem *metu*.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupil should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā or **ab**, prep. w. abl., *away from, by.*

ab-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *remove, conceal.* Cf. cēlō.

ab-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take off.* ABDUCT.

ab-eō, īre, -iī, -itum, *go from, go off, go away.* (327.)

ab-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw off, throw down.* ABJECT.

abies, -etis, F., *fir-tree.* (11.4.)

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, *be away, absent, distant;* with **ā** or **ab** and abl.

āc, conj., see atque.

ac-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum [ad], *go* or *come near, approach.* ACCEDE. Cf. appropinquō.

ac-cendō, 3, -dī, -cēnsum [ad, and supposed candō], *kindle, inflame.*

accidō, 3, -cidī, —— [ad, cadō], *fall upon, fall out, happen.* ACCIDENT. Cf. incidō and ēveniō.

accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad, capiō], (*take to*), *receive, accept; suffer.*

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen; active.* (150.) ACRID. Cf. acūtus.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [ācer], *bitter, sour, harsh.* ACERBITY.

aciēs, -ēī, F. [ācer], *edge; line of battle.*

ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly.*

acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [acuō, *sharpen*], *sharp.* Cf. ācer. ACUTE.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near.*

ad-eō, adv., *to this, thus far; so, so very.*

ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go to, approach, visit.* (327.)

Digitized by Google

ad-ferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl), *bear to, bring.* (321.)

ad-hūc, adv., *hitherto, up to this time.*

ad-flō, 1, *blow upon.* AFFLATUS.

ad-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], (*throw to* or *against*), *add, join to.* ADJECTIVE.

ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēmptum [emō], (*take to one's self from another*), *take away, remove.*

ad-ipīscor, 3, adeptus [apīscor], *get, obtain.* Cf. potior. ADEPT.

ad-jungō, 3, -jūnxī, jūnctum, *add, join.* ADJUNCT.

ad-juvō, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, *aid, help.*

ad-ministrō, 1, *manage, do, perform, administer.*

ad-mīror, 1, *wonder at, admire.*

ad-modum, adv., *very.*

ad-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (*move up* or *towards*), *apply, employ.*

ad-orior, 4, -ortus (*rise up against*), *attack.* Cf. aggredior.

ad-rēpō, 3, -rēpsī, -rēptum, *creep towards, steal slowly up.*

ad-spiciō (asp), 3, -spēxī, -spectum [ad, speciō], *look at; look.*

adspectus, -ūs, M. [adspiciō], *sight, appearance, aspect.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (affuī), *be present, stand by, side with,* w. dat.

adulēscēns, -entis, M. and F. [adolēscō, *grow*], *youth, young person.* ADOLESCENCE. Cf. juvenis.

ad-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *come to, arrive.* Cf. perveniō.

adventus, -ūs, M. [adveniō], *approach, arrival.* ADVENT.

ad-versus, prep. w. acc., *against, towards.*

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of advertō], *opposite, opposed, adverse;* rēs adversae, *adversity.*

aedificium, -ī, N. [aedificō], *building.* EDIFICE.

aedificō, 1 [aedis, faciō], *build.*

aedis (ēs), -is, F., *building, temple;* plur., *house.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick, weak, feeble.* (71.)

Aemilius, -ī, M., *Æmilius,* a Roman consul. (79.)

aequālis, -e, adj. [aequus], *equal;* noun, *equal in age, companion.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal; calm.*

āēr, āeris, M., *air.*

aereus, -a, -um [aes], *of copper, of bronze.*

aes, aeris, N., *copper, bronze; money.*

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer.*

aestus, -ūs, M., *tide.* ESTUARY.

aetās, -ātis, F., *age, time of life.* (105.)

af-flīgō, 3, -xī, -ctum [ad], *cast down, prostrate, ruin.* AFFLICT.

Āfrica, -ae, F., *Africa.*

Āfricānus, -ī, M. [Āfrica], *Africanus,* surname of Scipio.

Āfricus, -ī, M., *southwest* (*wind*).

ager, agrī, M., *field, territory.* Cf. campus. (65.) AGRARIAN.

agger, -eris, M. [ad, gerō], (*what is carried to,* i.e.) *materials for a mound; mound, rampart.*

aggredior, 3, -gressus [ad, gradior], *go to; attack.* AGGRESSIVE. Cf. adorior.

agitō, 1 [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, vex, chase.* AGITATE.

āgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize.* Cf. cōgnōscō.

agō, 3, ēgī, āctum, *drive, lead; act, do.*

Digitized by Google

agricola, -ae, M. [ager, colō], *farmer.*
agrī cultūra, -ae, F. [ager, colō], *agriculture.* Cf. agricola.
āla, -ae, F., *wing.* AISLE.
albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.* Cf. candidus. ALBUMEN.
Alexander, -drī, M., *Alexander*, king of Macedon.
aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius], *belonging to another; another's.* ALIEN.
alimentum, -ī, N. [alō], *nourishment, food, provisions.*
aliquandō, adv. [alius], *at some time, ever; formerly, once.* Cf. ōlim.
aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some.* (279.)
alius, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other;* alius . . . alius, *one . . . another.* (201.)
al-loquor (adl), 3, -locūtus [ad], *speak to, address.*
alō, 3, -uī, -itum (-tum), *nourish, support, strengthen; keep.*
Alpēs, -ium, F., *the Alps.*
alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two)*; alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other;* as num. adj., *second.* (200.)
altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*
ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., *both.*
ambulō, 1, *walk, take a walk.*
America, -ae, F., *America.*
amīcitia, -ae, F. [amīcus], *friendship.* AMITY.
amīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly;* noun, *friend.* AMICABLE.
ā-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send away, let go, lose.* Cf. perdō.
amnis, -is, M., *river.* (154, 172.)
amō, 1, *love, like, be fond of.* (319.)
amplus, -a, -um, adj., *large, splendid, renowned.* AMPLE.
an, conj., *or*, used in the second member of a double question.
ancilla, -ae, F., *maid-servant.*
ancora, -ae, F., *anchor.*
Ancus, -ī, *Ancus*, fourth king of Rome.
Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus.*
anguis, -is, M., *snake, serpent.* (154.)
angustiae, -ārum, F. [angustus, *narrow*], *narrow pass.* Cf. Eng. "narrows."
animal, -ālis, N. [anima, *breath*], *living being, animal.* (149.)
animus, ī, M., *mind, soul, spirit.* (273.)
annus, -ī, M., *year.* ANNUAL.
ānser, -eris, M., *goose.*
ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*
anteā, adv. [ante], *before.*
ante-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go before.* Cf. anteeō. ANTECEDENT.
ante-eō, -īre, -iī, ——, *go before, surpass.* Cf. antecēdō.
antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus.
ānulus, -ī, M., *ring, finger-ring.*
aper, aprī, M., *wild boar.*
aperiō, 4, -uī, -tum, *open.*
apertus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of aperiō], *uncovered, open.*
ap-pellō, 1 [ad], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.
ap-petō, 3, -īvī (-iī), -ītum [ad], *seek after, strive for.* APPETITE.
ap-propinquō, 1 [ad], *come near, approach.* Cf. accēdō.
aptō, 1, *fit, apply, adjust.* ADAPT.
apud, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*
Āpūlia, -ae, F., *Apulia*, a division of Italy.
aqua, -ae, F., *water.* AQUATIC.
aquila, -ae, F., *eagle.* AQUILINE.
āra, -ae, F., *altar.*

Digitized by Google

arātrum, -ī, N. [arō], *plough.*
arbitror, 1, *think, suppose, believe.* (429.)
arbor, -oris, F., *tree.*
arceō, 2, -uī, ——, *keep off.*
arcus, -ūs, M., *bow.* ARC, ARCHER.
Ariovistus, -ī, M., *Ariovistus,* king of a German tribe.
arma, -ōrum, N. [armō], *arms, weapons, tools.*
armō, 1 [arma], *arm, equip.*
arō, 1, *plough.*
Arpīnum, -ī, N., *Arpinum,* a town in Italy.
ars, artis, F., *art.*
arvum, -ī, N. [arō], *ploughed land, field.*
arx, arcis, F., *citadel.* (163.)
Ascalaphus, -ī, M., *Ascalaphus.*
Asia, -ae, F., *Asia.*
asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh, severe.* ASPERITY.
asylum, -ī, N., *place of refuge, asylum.*
at, conj., *but.* (393.)
āter, -tra, -trum, adj., *black, sable.*
Athēnae, -ārum, F., *Athens.*
Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., [Athēnae], *of Athens, Athenian.*
at-que (before vowels and consonants, **āc** before consonants only) [ad, *in addition*], *and also, and especially, and.* Cf. et and -que.
atrōx, -ōcis, adj. [āter], *savage, fierce, harsh, cruel.* ATROCIOUS.
Atticus, -ī, M., *Atticus,* a friend of Cicero.
attingō, 3, -tigī, -tāctum [ad, tangō], *touch, approach, arrive at, reach.*
auctor, -ōris, M. [augeō, *increase*], *maker, author.*
auctōritās, -ātis, F. [auctor], *counsel, advice, authority.*
audācter, adv. [audāx], *boldly.*
audāx, -ācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold.* (164.) AUDACIOUS.
audeō, 2, ausus [audāx], *dare, be bold.* (page 177, note 2.)
audiō, 4, *hear, listen.* (223.) AUDIENCE.
au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away.* (321.) ABLATIVE.
augeō, 2, auxī, auctum, *increase, enlarge.*
aureus, -a -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden.*
auris, -is, F., *ear.*
aurum, -ī, N., *gold.*
aut, conj., *or;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.* Cf. vel.
autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover.* (393.)
autumnus, -ī, M., *autumn.*
auxilium, -ī, N. [augeō], *help, aid, support;* plur., *auxiliaries.*
avārus, -a, -um, adj., *greedy, rapacious.* AVARICIOUS.
ā-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *turn away from, avert.*
avis, -is, F., *bird.* (154.)
avunculus, -ī, M. [diminutive of avus], (maternal) *uncle.*
avus, -ī, M., *grandfather.*

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous, barbarian.*
beātus, -a, -um, adj. [beō, *bless*], *blessed, happy.* BEATITUDE.
Belgae, -ārum, M., *the Belgæ,* a Gallic tribe.
bellō, 1 [bellum], *war, carry on war.* Cf. bellum gerō.
bellum, -ī, N. [bellō], *war.* (38.)
bellus, -a, -um, adj., *pretty, charming, lovely.* BEAU, BELLE.
bene, adv. [bonus], *well.*

Digitized by Google

beneficium, -ī, N. [bene, faciō], *benefit, favor.*
benīgnē, adv. [benīgnus], *kindly.*
benīgnus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus], (*of good birth*), *kind, good.* BENIGNANT.
bēstia, -ae, F., *beast.*
bibō, 3, bibī, pōtum, *drink.* IMBIBE.
bonum, -ī, N. [bonus], *good thing, blessing;* plur., *goods, possessions.*
bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. melior, superl. optimus; *good.* (71, 208.)
bōs, bovis, M. and F., *ox, cow.* (262.) BOVINE.
Bostonia, -ae, F., *Boston.*
bracchium, -ī, N., *arm.*
brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief.*
Britannī, -ōrum, M., *the Britons.*
Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain.*
Brūtus, -ī, M., *Brutus,* a Roman surname.

C., abbreviation for *Gājus.*
cachinnō, 1, *laugh aloud.* Cf. rīdeō.
cadō, 3, cecidī, cāsum, *fall.*
caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind.*
caedō, 3, cecīdī, caesum, *cut, cut to pieces; kill.*
caelum, -ī, N., *sky, heaven.*
caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [for caeluleus, from caelum], *dark-blue.*
Caesar, (**Julius**), -aris, M., *Julius Cæsar,* a famous Roman.
Cāius, -ī, M., see Gājus.
calathus, -ī, M., *basket.*
calcar, -āris, N. [calx, *heel*], *spur.* (149.)
callēns, -entis, adj. [P. of calleō, *be hard*], *hard, tough.*
calliditās, -ātis, F. [callidus, *cunning*], *shrewdness, cunning.*
calor, -ōris, M. [caleō, *be warm*], *heat, warmth.* CALORIC.
Campānia, -ae, F., *Campania,* a division of Italy.
campus, -ī, M., *field.* CAMP. Cf. ager.
candidus, -a, -um, adj. [candeō, *shine*], *bright, fair, white.* CANDID. Cf. albus.
canis, -is, M. and F., *dog.* (153.) CANINE.
Cannae, -ārum, F., *Cannæ,* a village in Apulia.
Cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], *of Cannæ.*
Cantium, -ī, N., *Kent,* in Britain.
cantō, 1 [canō], *sing.* CHANT.
cantus, -ūs, M. [canō], *singing, song.* (278.) CHANT.
capillus, -ī, M., *hair* (*of the head*). CAPILLARY.
capiō, 3, cēpī, captum, *take, seize* (235); cōnsilium capiō, *adopt a plan.* CAPTURE.
captīvus, -ī, M. [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*
caput, -itis, N., *head.* (105.) CAPITAL.
Carbō, -ōnis, M., *Carbo,* a Roman.
carcer, -eris, M., *prison.* INCARCERATE.
careō, 2, -uī, -itum, *be without, want.* CARET.
carmen, -inis, N., *song, poem.* (278.)
carō, carnis, F., *flesh.* CARNATION.
carpō, 3, -sī, -tum, *pluck.*
carrus, -ī, M., *wagon, cart.* CAR.
Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [Carthāgō], *of Carthage, Carthaginian.*
Carthāgō, -inis, F., *Carthage,* a town in Africa.
Carthāgō Nova, a town in Spain.

Digitized by Google

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious.* CHARITY.

castra, -ōrum, N., *camp.* CASTLE.

cāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō], *a falling; mischance, misfortune, chance.*

catellus, -ī, M. [diminutive of catulus], *little dog, puppy.*

Catilīna, -ae, M., *Catiline*, a famous Roman conspirator.

Catō, -ōnis, M., *Cato*, a celebrated Roman censor.

cauda, -ae, F., *tail.*

causa, -ae, F., *cause, reason;* causā (after a genitive), *for the sake.*

caveō, 2, cāvī, cautum, *beware, guard against.* CAUTION.

cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum, *go, depart, withdraw; grant.* CEDE.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift.* (179.) CELERITY.

celeriter, adv. [celer], *swiftly.*

cēlō, 1, *conceal.* Cf. abdō.

cēnseo, 2, -uī, -um, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.* CENSURE. (429.)

centum, num. adj., indecl., *hundred.* CENT.

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture. CEREAL.

certē, adv. [certus], *certainly, surely, of course.*

certō, 1, *contend, strive, vie with.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, determined, certain, sure;* certiorem faciō, *make (one) more certain, inform.*

[**cēterus**], -a, -um, adj. (usually in plur.), *the other, the rest.*

cibus, -ī, M., *food.* Cf. pābulum.

Cicerō, -ōnis, M., *Cicero*, a famous Roman orator.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, M., *the Cimbri*, a German tribe.

cingō, 3, cinxī, cīnctum, *bind, encircle, surround.*

circiter, adv. [circus, *circle*], *round about; about.*

circum-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead around.*

circum-siliō, 4, -iī, —— [saliō], *jump* or *hop around.*

circum-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround; circumvent.*

cīvis, -is, M. and F., *citizen.* (154.)

cīvitās, -ātis, F. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship.* CITY.

clādēs, -is, F., *destruction, defeat, disaster.*

clāmitō, 1 [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out.* Cf. exclāmō.

clāmor, -ōris, M. [clāmō], *shout, cry.* CLAMOR.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *clear, renowned, famous; loud.*

classis, -is, F., *class of citizens; fleet.* (154.)

cliēns, -entis, M., *client.* (163.)

coepī, coepisse (defective verb, tenses from pres. stem wanting), *began.*

coerceō, 2, -uī, -itum [co(m), arceō, *inclose*], *confine, check, restrain.*

cōgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, recognize, know.* Cf. āgnōscō.

cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [com, agō], *drive together, compel.* COGENT.

co-hortor, 1 [co(m), intensive], *exhort, urge, encourage.*

Collātīnus, -ī, M., *Collatinus*, surname of Lucius Tarquinius.

collēga (conl), -ae, M. [legō], (*one who is chosen with another*), *colleague.*

colligō (conl), 3, -lēgī, -lectum [com, legō], *collect.*

Digitized by Google

collis, -is, M., *hill.* (154.) Cf. mōns.

colloquium, -i, N. [colloquor], *conversation, colloquy.*

col-loquor, 3, -locūtus [com], *speak together, converse.*

colō, 3, coluī, cultum, *cultivate, till.* Cf. incola, agricola.

colōnia, -ae, F. [colōnus, *husbandman*, colō], *colony.*

color, -ōris, M., *color.*

columba, -ae, F., *dove.*

com (col, con, cor, co), primitive form of **cum**, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.

comes, -itis, M. and F. [comitor (com, eō)], *comrade, companion.*

comitor, 1 [comes], *accompany, attend.*

commeātus, -ūs, M. [commeō, *go to and fro*], *passage, trip, expedition.*

com-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, (*join together*), *commit;* proelium committere, *join battle, engage, begin fighting.*

com-modus, -a, -um, adj., (*that has proper measure*), *convenient, suitable.* COMMODIOUS.

com-moror, 1, *stay, linger, delay, remain.*

com-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate.* COMMOTION.

com-mūniō, 4, (*fortify strongly*), *secure, intrench.*

com-periō, 4, -perī, -pertum, *ascertain, learn, find out.*

com-pleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill out, fill up.* Cf. impleō.

com-primō, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō], *press together; check, suppress.*

con-cutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussum [com, quatiō], *shake violently.*

cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl), [com], *bring together, collect;* sē cōnferre, *betake one's self.* CONFER.

cōn-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out.*

cōn-fiteor, 2, -fessus [com, fateor], *confess.*

cōn-fligō, 3, -xī, -ctum [com], *contend, fight.* CONFLICT.

con-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [com, jaciō], (*throw together*), *throw, hurl.*

con-junx, -jugis, M. and F. [com, jungō, *join*], *spouse; wife, husband.* CONJUGAL.

cōnor, 1, *attempt, try.*

cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [com, scandō, *climb*], *ascend, embark; go on board.*

cōn-sequor, 3, -cūtus [com], *follow close upon; follow.*

cōn-sīdō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum [com], (*sit together*), *encamp.*

cōnsilium, -i, N. [cōnsulō, cōnsul], *advice, counsel, prudence; plan, design.*

cōn-similis, -e, adj., *very similar, quite like.*

cōn-spiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectum [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe, see, behold.*

cōn-spicor 1 [cōnspiciō], *see at a glance, descry, catch sight of.*

cōnstāns, -antis, adj. [P. of cōnstō], *firm, steady.* CONSTANCY.

cōn-stat, 1, -stitit, impers., *it is evident, clear.*

cōn-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [com, statuō], (*place* or *put together*), *station, place; determine.*

Digitized by Google

cōn-suēscō, 3, -suēvī, -suētum [com], *become accustomed;* in perf., *be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. [cōnsuētus], *habit, custom.*

cōnsul, -ulis, M. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul.* (134.)

cōnsulāris, -e, adj. [cōnsul], *pertaining to a consul, consular;* noun, *ex-consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], *office of consul, consulship.*

cōn-sūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum [com], *take up completely, consume.*

con-temnō, 3, -psī, -ptum [com], *despise.* CONTEMN.

contemplor, 1, *look at, observe.* CONTEMPLATE.

con-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum [com], (*draw tight*), *exert one's self, strive; hasten.* CONTEND.

contentiō, -ōnis, F. [contendō], *struggle, exertion, effort; contention.*

contentus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of contineō], *contented;* w. abl.

con-testor, 1 [com, testis, *witness*], *call to witness, invoke.*

con-tinēns, -entis, F. [P. of contineō, sc. terra], *continent.*

con-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [com, teneō], *hold together, hold, contain.*

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*

con-valēscō, 3, -valuī, ——, [com, valeō], *get well, grow strong.* CONVALESCENT. Cf. valeō.

con-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [com], *come together, assemble.*

con-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum [com], *turn around, turn, change.* CONVERT.

cōpia, -ae, F. [com, ops], *abundance, wealth;* plur., *troops, forces.*

cor, cordis, N., *heart.* CORDIAL.

cōram, prep. w. abl., *in presence of.*

Corinthus, -ī, F., *Corinth.* (11.4.)

Coriolānus, -ī, M., *Coriolanus,* surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.

Cornēlia, -ae, F., *Cornelia,* mother of the Gracchi.

Cornēlius, -ī, M., *Cornelius,* a Roman family name.

cornū, -ūs, N., *horn.*

corpus, -oris, N., *body.* (140.) CORPSE.

corrigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctum [com, regō], *make straight, reform, correct.*

corripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [com, rapiō], *seize, take hold of.*

cor-rumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum [com], *break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe.*

cortex, -icis, M. and F., *bark, shell, rind.* CORK.

cōrus, -ī, M., *northwest* (*wind*).

cotīdiē, adv. [quot, diēs], *daily.*

crās, adv., *to-morrow.*

Crassus, -ī, M., *Crassus,* a rich Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.

creātor, -ōris, M. [creō], *creator.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous.*

crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *trust, believe;* w. dat. CREDIT.

creō, 1, *make, create; choose, elect.*

Croesus, -ī, M., *Cræsus,* king of Lydia.

crūdēlis, -e, adj., *cruel, hard-hearted.*

crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis], *cruelly.*

cruentus, -a, -um, adj. [cruor], *stained with blood, bloody.*

cruor, -ōris, M., *blood, gore.* Cf. sanguis.

Digitized by Google

crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*
culpā, -ae, F. [culpō], *blame, fault.* CULPABLE. Cf. vitium.
culpō, 1 [culpa], *blame, find fault with.*
culter, -trī, M., *knife.* COULTER.
cum, conj., *when; since, as; though, although.* (372 ff.)
cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*
Cumae, -ārum, F., *Cumae,* a town in Campania.
cūnae, -ārum, F., *cradle.*
cunctātiō, -ōnis, F. [cunctor], *delaying, delay.*
cunctor, 1, *linger, hesitate.*
cupiditās, -ātis, F. [cupidus, cupiō], *desire, eagerness.* CUPIDITY.
Cupīdō, -inis, M. [cupidus], *Cupid,* god of love.
cupiō, 3, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, *desire, be eager for.* Cf. dēsīderō.
cūr, adv. [quā, rē], *why, wherefore.*
cūra, -ae, F. [cūrō], *care, anxiety.*
cūrō, 1 [cūra], *care for, take care.*
currō, 3, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*
currus, -ūs, M. [currō], *chariot, car.*
cursus, -ūs, M. [currō], *a running, course.*
curvus, -a, -um, adj., *curved, bent; bending.*
custōdiō, 4 [custōs], *guard, protect, defend.*
custōs, -ōdis, M. and F. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper.* CUSTODIAN.
cymba, -ae, F., *boat.* Cf. nāvicula.
Cyrus, -i, M., *Cyrus,* king of Persia.

Daedalus, -i, M., *Dædalus,* builder of the Labyrinth.
damnō, 1, *condemn.*
Dārēus, -i, M., *Darius,* king of Persia.
Dātis, -is, M., *Datis,* a Persian general.
dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of;* (of time), *in, during, about.*
dea, -ae, F., *goddess.* (page 8, n. 1.)
dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought.* DEBIT, DEBT.
decem, num. adj., indecl., *ten.*
December, -bris, M. [decem], *December.* Often as adj.
decem-plex, -icis, adj. [plicō], *tenfold.*
dē-cernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētum, (*separate from*), *decide, determine; decree.*
dē-cerpō, 3, -sī, -tum [carpō], *pluck off.*
decet, 2, decuit, impers., *it is becoming, fitting, proper.* DECENT.
decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], *tenth.* DECIMAL.
dē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, (*put from one's self*), *surrender, deliver up.*
dē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, draw down, launch.* DEDUCT.
dē-fatīgō, 1, *tire out, exhaust.*
dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -fēnsum [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect.*
dēfēnsor, -ōris, M. [dēfendō], *defender, protector.*
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, (*bring from*), *deliver; report.*
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired out, weary.*
dē-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], (*make away from*), *revolt; fail, be wanting.* DEFICIT, DEFECT.
dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly; base, disgraceful.*
de-inde, adv., (*from thence*), *then, afterwards.*

Digitized by Google

dēlectō, 1, *delight.*
dēlēctus, -ūs, M. [dēligō], *selection; levy.*
dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy.* DELETE.
dēliciae, -ārum, F., *delight, darling.*
dē-migrō, 1, *migrate from; emigrate, remove.*
Dēmosthenēs, -is, M., *Demosthenes,* a famous Athenian orator.
dēnique, adv., *finally, at last.*
dēns, dentis, M., *tooth.* DENTIST.
dē-pereō, 4, -iī, ——, *go to ruin, perish, be lost.*
dē-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put down, put by, lay down.* DEPONENT.
dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [scandō, *climb*], *come down, descend.*
dē-serō, 3, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon.*
dēsīderō, 1, *desire, long for, miss.* (319.) Cf. optō, volō, and cupiō.
dē-siliō, 4, -siluī, -sultum [saliō, *leap*], *leap down.* Cf. subsiliō and trānsiliō.
dē-sistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum [*stand off* or *apart*], *leave off, cease; desist.*
dē-spērō, 1 [spēs], *be hopeless, despair.*
dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be wanting, lack;* w. dat. Cf. dēficiō.
dē-trahō, 3, -trāxī, -trāctum, *draw off, take away.* DETRACT.
deus, -ī, M., *god.* (262.) DEITY.
dēvorō, 1, *swallow up, devour.*
Diāna, -ae, F., *Diana,* goddess of the chase.
dīcō, 3, dixī, dictum, *say, tell.*
dictātor, -ōris, M. [dictō, dīcō], *chief magistrate, dictator.*
dictātūra, -ae, F. [dictātor], *office of dictator, dictatorship.*
dictitō [frequentative of dictō, dīcō], *keep saying.*
diēs, -ēī, M. and F., *day.* (253.)
dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dilātum [dis], *scatter, separate, put off; differ.* (321.)
difficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis], (*far from easy*), *hard, difficult.* (207.)
digitus, -ī, M., *finger.* DIGIT.
dignitās, -ātis, F. [dignus], *worth, dignity; office.*
dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy.*
dīligēns, -entis, adj. [P. of dīligō], *diligent, careful.*
dīligenter, adv. [dīligēns], *diligently.*
dīligentia, -ae, F. [dīligēns], *diligence, carefulness.*
dī-ligō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [legō], *esteem, love.* (319.)
dīmicō, 1, *fight, contend.* Cf. pūgnō.
dī-midius, -a, -um, adj. [medius], *half.* DEMIGOD.
dī-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send away, let go.* DISMISS.
dī-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*move asunder*), *separate, drive away.*
dī-ruō, 3, dīruī, dīrutum, *tear asunder, destroy.* Cf. rescindō.
dis, dī (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions.* Cf. differō, discēdō, dissimilis, dīmittō, and dīruō.
Dīs, Dītis, M., *Dis,* another name of Pluto.
dis-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *depart, withdraw, go off.*
discipulus, -ī, M. [discō], *learner, scholar, pupil.* DISCIPLE.
discō, 3, didicī, ——, *learn.*
dis-similis, -e, adj., (*far from like*), *unlike, dissimilar.* (207.)
diū, adv., *for a long time, long.*

Digitized by Google

dīves, -itis, adj. (comp. dītior, superl. dīvitissimus), *rich.* (167. 3.)
dīvitiae, -ārum, F. [dīves], *riches, wealth.*
dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give; put.*
doceō, 2, -uī, -tum, *teach, show.*
doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], *learned.* DOCTOR.
dolor, -ōris, M., *pain, grief.* DOLOROUS.
dolus, -ī, M., *trick, deceit.*
domicilium, -ī, N. [domus], *home, abode.* DOMICILE.
domina, -ae, F. [dominus], *mistress.* MADONNA.
dominor, 1 [dominus], *be a lord and master, rule.* DOMINEER.
dominus, -ī, M. [domina], *lord, master.* (66.)
domus, -ūs, F., *house, home;* domī, *at home.* (262, 336.)
dōnō, 1 [dōnum], *give, present.* DONATE.
dōnum, -ī, N. [dō], *gift, present.*
dormiō, 4, *sleep.* DORMITORY.
Drūsus, -ī, M., *Drusus,* a Roman.
dubitō, 1 [dubius], *hesitate, doubt.* INDUBITABLE.
dubium, -ī, N. [dubius], *doubt.*
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful.* DUBIOUS.
ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred.*
dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductum [dux], *lead.*
Duīlius (C.), -ī, M., *Caius Duilius,* a Roman general.
dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.* DULCET. Cf. suāvis.
dum, adv., *while, as long as; until.*
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two.* (311. 4.) DUAL.
duo-decim, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *twelve.* DOZEN.
duo-dē-trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *twenty-eight.*
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard.* ENDURE. Cf. difficilis.
dux, ducis, M. and F. [dūcō], *leader, general.* DUKE. Cf. imperātor.

ē, see ex.
ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*
ē-dīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictum, *speak out, declare, proclaim.* EDICT.
edō, edere *or* ēsse, ēdī, ēsum *or* ēssum, *eat.* EDIBLE.
ēducō, 1, *bring up, train, educate.*
ē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, bring away.* EDUCE.
ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], *bear out, bring forth.* (321.) ELATE.
efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [ex, faciō], *bring to pass, effect, complete; make, construct.*
egēns, -entis, adj. [P. of egeō], *in want, needy, destitute.*
ego, pers. pron., *I.* (264.) EGOTIST.
ē-gredior, 3, ēgressus [gradior, *step*], *go out, go forth; disembark, land.* EGRESS. Cf. exeō.
ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], *remarkably, excellently.*
ē-gregius, -a, -um, adj. [grex], *remarkable, excellent.* EGREGIOUS.
ēlegāns, -antis, adj., *choice, elegant.*
elephantus, -ī, M., *elephant.*
ē-lūdō, 3, -sī, -sum, *deceive, mock; elude.*
ē-mergō, 3, -sī, -sum, *arise, come forth; emerge.*
emō, 3, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy, purchase.* PREËMPT.
enim, conj. (never the first word), *for.* Cf. nam.

Digitized by Google

Ennius, -i, M., *Ennius*, father of Roman poetry.

ē-nūntiō, 1, *say out, divulge, declare, report.* ENUNCIATE.

eō, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there.*

eō, īre, iī, itum, *go.* (327.)

eōdem, adv. [idem], *to the same place.*

Ēpīrus, -i, F., *Epirus*, a division of Greece.

epistula, -ae, F., *letter, epistle.*

eques, -itis, M. [equus], *horseman, knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques], (*pertaining to a horseman*), *equestrian.*

equitātus, -ūs, M. [equitō, eques], (*body of equites*), *cavalry.*

equitō, 1 [eques], (*be a horseman*), *ride.*

equus, -i, M., *horse.* EQUINE.

ergō, adv., *therefore, accordingly.* Cf. igitur and itaque.

ē-ripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [rapiō], *snatch out, seize and bear off.*

errō, 1, *wander; err, mistake.*

ē-rudiō, 4, [rudis, *rough*], *train, teach, instruct.* ERUDITION.

essedum, -i, N., *two-wheeled war-chariot.*

et, conj., *and;* et . . . et, *both . . . and.* Cf. atque, āc, and -que.

etiam, adv. and conj. [et, jam], (*and now*), *also, even.*

et-sī, conj., *though, although.*

Eurōpa, -ae, F., *Europe.*

ē-vādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum, *go forth, escape.* EVADE.

ē-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *come forth, turn out, happen.* EVENT. Cf. accidō and incidō.

ē-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *overturn, overthrow, destroy.*

ē-volō, 1, *fly away.*

ex or **ē**, prep. w. abl., *out of, from.*

exāminō, 1 [exāmen, *test*], *weigh out, weigh.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of excellō], *elevated, lofty, high.*

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], *take out, except; receive, welcome.*

ex-clāmō, 1, *cry out, exclaim.* Cf. clāmitō.

ex-cūsō, 1 [causa], *excuse.*

ex-cutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussum [quatiō], *shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go out, come out.* EXIT. Cf. ēgredior.

ex-erceō, 2 [arceō], *keep busy, employ; train.* EXERCISE.

exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō], (*the thing trained*), *army.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, small, slight.* EXIGUOUS.

expeditiō, -ōnis, F. [expediō], *excursion, expedition.*

ex-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out* or *away, expel.*

ex-perior, 4, -pertus, *make trial of, test.* EXPERT.

ex-plicō, 1, -āvī, -ātum (-uī, -itum), *unfold, explain.*

explōrātor, -ōris, M. [explōrō], *a searcher out, explorer; spy, scout.*

ex-plōrō, 1, *search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.*

ex-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put* or *set out, expose; draw up, marshal.*

ex-pūgnō, 1, *take by storm, assault.* Cf. oppūgnō.

Digitized by Google

ex-sistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum, (*stand forth*), *exist, appear.*

ex-spectō, 1, *await, wait for, expect.*

ex-spīrō, 1, *breathe out, breathe one's last, expire.*

ex-stinguō, 3, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, (*quench completely*), *extinguish; kill, destroy.*

ex-terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, *frighten, affright.*

ex-tīmēscō, 3, -timuī, —— [timeō], *fear greatly.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, outside of.* EXTRA. Cf. intrā.

ex-turbō, 1, *thrust out, drive away.*

faber, -brī, M., *worker, carpenter.* FABRIC.

Fabius, -ī, M., *Fabius,* a famous Roman general.

Fabricius, -ī, M., *Fabricius,* a famous Roman general.

fābula, -ae, F. [for, *speak*], *story, tale, fable.*

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō], (*that can be done*), *easy to do, easy.* FACILITY.

facinus, -oris, N. [faciō], (*the thing done*), *deed; crime.* Cf. scelus.

faciō, 3, fēcī, factum, *do, make.*

fāgus, -ī, F., *beech-tree.* (11. 4.)

Faliscī, -ōrum, M., *the Faliscans,* a people of Etruria.

falsō, adv. [falsus], *falsely.*

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, *deceive*], *deceptive, false.*

fāma, -ae, F. [for, *speak*], *rumor; fame, renown.*

famēs, -is, F., *hunger, famine.*

fās, N., indecl. [for, *speak*], *divine law;* often translated as adj., *right, lawful.*

fascis, -is, M., *bundle.* FASCINE.

fatīgō, 1, *tire out, weary.* FATIGUE.

fātum, -ī, N. [for, *speak*], (*that which is spoken*), *fate, destiny.*

faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable to, favor, befriend;* w. dat.

febris, -is, F. [ferveō, *be hot*], *fever.*

Februārius, -ī, M., *February.* Often as adj.

fēlīciter, adv. [fēlīx], *luckily, fortunately.*

fēlīx, -īcis, adj., *lucky, fortunate.*

fera, -ae, F. [ferus], *wild animal, wild beast.*

ferē, adv., *nearly, for the most part, almost, about.* Cf. paene.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring;* ferunt, *they say.* (321.) Cf. portō and vehō.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], *fierce, impetuous.* FEROCIOUS.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, -ī, N., *iron.*

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, savage, cruel.* FIERCE.

fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faithful.* FIDELITY. Cf. fīdus.

fidēliter, adv. [fidēlis], *faithfully.*

fidēs, -ēī, F. [fīdō, *trust*], *trust, faith.*

fīdus, -a, -um, adj. [fīdō, *trust*], *trusty, faithful.*

fīlia, -ae, F., *daughter.* (page 8, note 1.) Cf. nāta.

fīliolus, -ī, M. [diminutive of fīlius], *little son.*

fīlius, -ī, M., *son.* (79.) FILIAL.

fīniō, 4 [fīnis], *end, finish.* FINITE.

fīnis, -is, M., *end, boundary.* (154.)

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis], *bordering on, neighboring.*

fīō, fierī, factus (supplies pass. to faciō), *be made, become.* (327.)

fīrmō, 1 [fīrmus], *make strong.*

Digitized by Google

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj. [fīrmō], *steadfast, strong.* FIRM.
flagrō, 1, *burn.*
flectō, 3, -xī, -xum, *bend, turn.*
fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum, *weep, cry.*
flō, 1, *blow.*
flōs, flōris, M., *flower.* FLORAL.
flūmen, -inis, N. [fluō], (*that which flows*), *river, stream.* (172.)
fluō, 3, flūxī, fluxum, *flow.* FLUID.
fluvius, -i, M. [fluō], (*the flowing thing*), *river, stream.* (172.)
folium, -i, N., *leaf.* FOLIAGE.
fōns, fontis, M., *spring, fount, fountain.*
fore, for **futurum esse.**
formīdō, -inis, F., *fear, terror.*
forte, adv. [fors, *chance*], *perchance, perhaps, possibly.*
fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, courageous.*
fortiter, adv. [fortis], *bravely, courageously.*
fortitūdō, -inis, F. [fortis], *strength, bravery, endurance, fortitude.*
fortūna, -ae, F. [fors, *chance*], *fortune.*
forum, -i, N., *market-place; forum.*
frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctum, *dash in pieces, break.* FRACTION.
frāter, -tris, M., *brother.* FRATERNAL.
frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on, trusting to;* w. abl.
frīgidus, -a, -um, adj. [frīgeō, *freeze*], *cold, frigid.*
frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], *covered with leaves, leafy.*
frōns, frondis, F., *leaf, foliage; garland of leaves.* FROND.
frōns, -tis, F., *brow, forehead.* FRONT.
frūctus, -ūs, M. [fruor], *fruit.* Cf. frūmentum.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frūmentum], *pertaining to grain;* rēs frūmentāria, *grain-supply.*
frūmentum, -i, N. [fruor], *grain, corn.* Cf. frūctus.
fruor, 3, frūctus, *enjoy;* w. abl. (304.)
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.* FRUSTRATE.
(frūx), frūgis, F. (oftener plur.; gen. frūgum) [fruor], *fruit of the earth, fruits.* Cf. frūctus.
fuga, -ae, F. [fugiō, *flee*], *flight.*
fugiō, 3, fūgī, -itum [fugō, fuga], *run away.* FUGITIVE.
fugō, 1 [fugiō, fuga], *put to flight, chase, drive.*
fungor, 3, fūnctus, *perform, discharge;* w. abl. (304.) FUNCTION.

Gājus, gen. Gāī (also written Cāius), M., *Caius,* a Roman first name.
Galba, -ae, M., *Galba.*
Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul.*
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallus], *belonging to the Gauls, Gallic.*
gallīna, -ae, F. [gallus, *cock*], *hen.*
Gallus, -i, M., *a Gaul.*
gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus [gaudium], *be glad, rejoice.* (page 177, n. 2.)
gaudium, -i, N. [gaudeō], *joy, delight.* JEWEL.
gener, -erī, M., *son-in-law.*
gēns, gentis, F., *clan, family.* GENTEEL.
genū, -ūs, N., *knee.* (245.)
genus, -eris, N., *birth, race; kind, nature.* GENDER.
Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German;* noun, *a German.*
gerō, 3, gessī, gestum, *bear, carry; wage, manage, do.* GESTURE.

Digitized by Google

gladiātor, -ōris, M. [gladius], (*swordsman*), *gladiator.*
gladius, -ī, M., *sword.* GLADIOLUS.
glōria, -ae, F., *glory, fame, renown.*
gracilis, -e, adj., *slender.* (207.)
gradus, -ūs, M., *step.* (245.) GRADE.
Graecē, adv. [Graecus], *in Greek.*
Graecia, -ae, F., *Greece.*
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian, Greek;* noun, *a Greek.*
grāmen, -inis, N., *grass.*
grānum, -ī, N., *grain, seed.*
grātulor, 1 [grātus], *congratulate;* W. dat.
grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing.* GRATEFUL.
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, serious.* GRAVE.
graviter, adv. [gravis], *heavily, seriously.*
gremium, -I, N., *lap, bosom.*
grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd.*
gustō, 1, *taste, eat.*

habeō, 2, *have, hold.* HABIT.
habitō, 1 [frequentative of habeō], *inhabit; dwell, live.* (194.)
Hannibal, -alis, M., *Hannibal,* a famous Carthaginian general.
Hasdrubal, -alis, M., *Hasdrubal,* a Carthaginian general, brother of Hannibal.
hasta, -ae, F. *spear.*
haurīō, 4, hausī, haustum, *draw* (*water*), *drain.* EXHAUST.
Hector, -oris, M., *Hector,* chief of the Trojan warriors.
Henna, -ae, F., *Henna,* a city of Sicily.
herī, adv., *yesterday.*
hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this, this of mine;* abl., hōc, *on this account;* as pers. pron., *he, she, it.* (275.)
hiems (hiemps), hiemis, F., *winter; storm.*
hinc, adv. [hīc], *from this place, hence.*
Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain.*
Hispānus, -ī, M., *a Spaniard.*
historia, -ae, F., *history.*
hodiē, adv. [hōc, diē], *to-day.*
Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer,* the earliest and greatest Greek poet.
homō, -inis, M. and F., (*human being*), *man.* (138.)
honestās, -ātis, F. [honestus], *honor, integrity, honesty.*
honōrificē, adv., *honorably.*
honor, -ōris, M., *honor.*
honōrō, 1 [honor], *honor, respect.*
hōra, -ae, F., *hour.*
Horātius, -ī, M., *Horatius, Horace.*
horridus, -a, -um, adj. [horreō, *shudder at*], *frightful, rough, wild.* HORRID.
hortor, 1, *urge, exhort, encourage.*
hortus, -ī, M., *garden.* (38.)
hospes, -itis, M. and F., *host, guest, guest-friend.* HOSPITAL.
hostis, -is, M. and F., *enemy.* (149, 172.) HOSTILE.
hūc, adv. [for old form hōc], *to this place, hither.*
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homō], *human; cultivated, refined.*
humilis, -e, adj. [humus, *ground*], (*pertaining to* humus), *low, lowly, humble, poor.* (207.)

ibi, adv. [is], *in that place, there.*
Īcarus, -ī, *Icarus,* son of Dædalus.
īdem, eadem, idem, determ. pron. [is], *same.* (270.) IDENTICAL.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, proper.*

Digitized by Google

Īdūs, -uum, F. plur., *the Ides* of the month. The thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October; in those months the fifteenth. (244. 1.)

igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore, then.* Cf. ergō and itaque.

īgnāvia, -ae, F. [īgnāvus], *laziness, idleness, cowardice.*

īgnāvus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not*, gnāvus, *busy*], *lazy, idle, cowardly.*

īgnis, -is, M., *fire.* (149.) IGNITE.

īgnōrō, 1 [īgnārus, *ignorant*], *not know, be ignorant of.* IGNORE.

ille, -a, -ud, dem. pron., *that (yonder)*; as pers. pron., *he, she, it.* (275.)

illūc, adv. [ille], *to that place, thither, there.*

imāgō, -inis, F., *image, likeness, picture.* (134.)

imitor, 1, *imitate.*

immānis, -e, adj., *huge, immense, monstrous.* Cf. māgnus.

impediō, 4 [in, pēs], (*entangle the feet*), *impede, hinder, prevent.*

im-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum [in], *urge on, impel, prompt.*

imperātor, -ōris, M. [imperō], *commander, general.* EMPEROR.

imperium, -I, N. [imperō], *command, authority, power.* EMPIRE.

imperō, 1 [imperium], *order, command*; w. dat. IMPERATIVE.

impetrō, 1, *accomplish; gain, procure, obtain.* Cf. adipīscor.

impetus, -ūs, M. [impetō, *rush upon*], *attack, onset.* IMPETUOUS.

im-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [in], *fill up, fill full, fill.* Cf. compleō.

im-plōrō, 1 [in], *cry out to, beseech, implore.*

im-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum [in], *put* or *place upon.* IMPOSE.

improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not*, probus, *good*], *bad, wicked.* Cf. malus.

im-prō-vīsō, adv. [videō], *unexpectedly.* IMPROVISE.

im-pudēns, -entis, adj. [in], *shameless, impudent.*

in, prep. w. acc., *into, to, against, for*; w. abl., *in, on.* (333. 1, 2.)

in, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. "un-," "in-," *not.*

inānis, -e, adj., *empty, useless.*

in-cautus, -a, -um, adj., *incautious, heedless.*

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain.*

in-cidō, 3, -cidī, -cāsum [cadō], *fall into; happen, befall.* Cf. accidō and ēveniō. INCIDENT.

in-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], (*take in hand*), *begin.* Cf. ōrdior. INCEPTION.

in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*

incola, -ae, M. and F. [incolō], *inhabitant.*

in-colō, 3, -uī, —— [incola], *dwell in, inhabit, live, dwell.* Cf. habitō and vīvō.

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmed, safe.*

inde, adv. [is], *thence.*

indicium, -I, N., *discovery, disclosure.*

in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go in, enter; begin.* (327.)

īn-ferī, -ōrum, M. [īnferus, *below*], *inhabitants of the lower world, the dead.* INFERNAL.

Digitized by Google

īn-ferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum (inl) (*bear in* or *against*), *cause;* bellum īnferre, *make war upon;* w. dat. (321.)

īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, troublesome, dangerous.* INFEST.

īn-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *stain, color.* INFECT.

īn-fīnītus, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis], *boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast.*

īn-flectō, 3, -flēxī, -flexum, *bend; change, alter.* INFLECT.

in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior, *step*], *enter.* INGRESS.

in-hiō, 1, *gape at, long for.*

in-īmīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amīcus], *unfriendly, hostile;* noun, *enemy.* (172.) INIMICAL.

initium, -ī, N. [ineō], *beginning.* INITIAL.

injūria, -ae, F. [in, jūs], *injustice, injury, wrong.*

injūstē, adv. [injūstus], *unjustly.*

inopia, -ae, F. [inops, *without resources*], *want, poverty.*

inquam, defective verb, *say;* inquit (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he.*

īn-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō, *place*], *fix, determine, undertake.* INSTITUTE.

īnstrūctus, -a, -um [P. of īnstruō], *furnished, equipped.*

īn-struō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctum [struō, *build*], *build up, form, instruct, teach.*

īnsula, -ae, F., *island.* PENINSULA.

īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be in, among;* w. dat. and *in* w. abl.

intel-legō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [inter], *see into; understand.* INTELLECT.

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, amid.*

inter-dum, adv., *sometimes.*

inter-eō, -īre, -ī, -itum, *perish.*

inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *kill, put to death.* Cf. necō and occīdō.

interior, -us, adj. [no positive], *inner, interior.*

inter-pellō, 1, *interrupt; entreat, importune.*

inter-rogō, 1, *ask, inquire, question.* (382.) INTERROGATION.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be present at* or *among;* w. dat. (295.) Cf. adsum.

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.* Cf. extrā.

in-tueor, 2, *look towards, at,* or *upon.* INTUITION.

intus, adv. [in], *within, inside.*

in-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *come upon, find, meet with, discover.* INVENT. Cf. reperiō.

in-vicem, adv., *by turns, in turn, alternately.*

in-victus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquerable, invincible.*

invītō, 1, *invite.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant.*

in-vocō, 1, *call upon, invoke.*

iō, interj., *ah! oh!*

ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., *self, very.* (270.)

īra, -ae, F., *anger, wrath; ire.*

ir-rīdeō, 2, -rīsī, -rīsum [in], *laugh at, ridicule; jest, mock.*

is, ea, id, determ. pron., *that;* as pers. pron., *he, she, it.* (270.)

iste, -a, -ud, dem. pron., *that* (*of yours*). (275.)

ita, adv., *so, thus.* Cf. sīc.

Ītalia, -ae, F., *Italy.*

Digitized by Google

Italus, -a, -um, adj., *Italian.*
ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore.* Cf. ergō and igitur.
item, adv. [ita], *likewise, also.* ITEM.
iter, itineris, N. [eō], *way, road, march.* (262.) ITINERANT.
iterum, adv., *a second time, again.* ITERATION.
Ithaca, -ae, F., *Ithaca,* an island in the Ionian Sea.
Itius, M., *Itius,* a port in Gaul.

jaceō, 2, -uī, —— [jaciō], (*be thrown*), *lie.*
jaciō, 3, jēcī, jactum [jaceō], *throw, cast, hurl, fling.*
jam, adv., *already, now, at last.* Cf. nunc.
jamjam, adv., *already;* jamjam ventūrus, *on the point of coming.*
jānua, -ae, F. [Jānus], *door.* Cf. porta. JANITOR.
Jānus, -ī, M. [jānua], *Janus,* the two-faced god. JANUARY.
jējūnium, -ī, N. [jējūnus], *fast, hunger.*
jējūnus, -a, -um [jējūnium], *fasting, hungry, without food.*
jocus, -ī, M. (plur. jocī and joca), *joke, jest;* per jocum, *in jest, for a joke.*
Jōhanniculus, -ī, M., *little John, Johnny, Jack.*
jubeō, 2, jussī, jūssum, *bid, order, command.* Cf. imperō.
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant, agreeable.* JOCUND.
jūdex, -icis, M. [jūdicō], *judge.* (105.)
jūdicium, -ī, N. [jūdicō], *judgment, opinion; trial.*
jūdicō, 1 [jūdex], *judge.* (429.)
Jūlius, -ī, M., *Julius,* a Roman family name.
Juppiter, Jovis, M., *Jupiter,* the supreme deity of the Romans. (262.)
jūrō, 1 [jūs], *swear, take an oath.*
jūs, jūris, N., *right, justice.* (140.) Cf. fās.
jūssus, -ūs, M. [jubeō], *command, order.*
jūstē, adv. [jūstus], *rightly, justly.*
juvenis, -is, M. and F., *youth, young person.* Cf. adulescens.
juventūs, -ūtis, F. [juvenis], *the season of youth, youth.*

Labiēnus, -ī, M., *Labienus,* a lieutenant of Cæsar's.
labor, M., -ōris, *labor.*
labōrō, 1 [labor], *work, toil.*
labrum, -ī, N., *lip.*
lac, lactis, N., *milk.* LACTEAL.
Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, M., *the Lacedæmonians.*
lacrima, -ae, F., *tear.* LACRYMOSE.
lacus, -ūs, M., *lake, pond.*
Laevīnus, -ī, M., *Lævinus,* a Roman consul.
lapis, -idis, M., *stone.* LAPIDARY.
Latīnē, adv. [Latīnus], *in Latin.*
Latīnus, -a, -um, adj. [Latium], *Latin;* noun, *a Latin.*
lātrō, 1, *bark, bark at.*
latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber.* LADRONE.
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.* LATITUDE.
latus, -eris, N., *side.* LATERAL.
laudō, 1 [laus], *praise, laud.*
laus, laudis, F. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame.*
lēgātus, -ī, M. [lēgō, *depute*], *ambassador, lieutenant.* LEGATE.
legiō, -ōnis, F. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion.*

Digitized by Google

legō, 3, lēgī, lēctum, *gather; select; read.*
lēnis, -e, adj., *soft, smooth, gentle.*
leō, -ōnis, M., *lion.* (134.)
lepus, -oris, M., *hare.*
levis, -e, adj. [levō], *light.* (150.)
levō, 1 [levis], *lift up, raise, lighten.* ELEVATE.
lex, lēgis, F., *law.* LEGAL.
libenter, adv. [libet, *it pleases*], *willingly, gladly;* libenter videō, *I am glad to see.*
liber, -brī, M., *book.* LIBRARY.
līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.* (71.) LIBERAL.
Līber, -erī, M., *Bacchus*, god of wine.
līberē, adv. [līber], *freely, fearlessly.*
līberī, -ōrum, M. [līber], *children.* (60.)
līberō, 1 [līber], *set free, free, liberate;* w. abl.
lībertās, -ātis, F. [līber], *freedom, liberty.*
licet, 2, licuit *or* licitum est, impers., *it is permitted,* (*one*) *may.*
līgneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *of wood, wooden.*
lignum, -i, N., *wood;* plur., *sticks of wood.*
ligō, -ōnis, M., *mattock, hoe.*
lilium, -i, N., *lily.*
lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language.*
littera, -ae, F., *letter* of the alphabet; plur., *letter, epistle; literature.*
lītus, -oris, N., *shore, beach, bank.*
locus, -i, M. (plur. locī and loca), *place, position, spot.* LOCAL.
longē, adv. [longus], *far off; widely, greatly, much, by much.*
longus, -a, -um, adj., *long.* LONGITUDE.
loquor, 3, locūtus, *speak, talk.*
lūctus, -ūs, M. [lūgeō], *mourning, lamentation.*
lūcus, -i, M. [lūceō, *shine*], (*open place in a wood*), *wood, grove.*
lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum [lūdus], *play.* INTERLUDE.
lūdus, -i, M. [lūdō], *game, play.*
lūgeō, 2, lūxī, ——, *mourn, lament.*
lūmen, -inis, N. [lūceō, lūx], *light.* LUMINOUS.
lūna, -ae, F. [lūceō, lūx], *moon.* LUNA.
lupus, -i, M., *wolf.*
luscinia, -ae, F., *nightingale.*
lūx, lūcis, F. [lūceō, *shine*], *light, daylight.* LUCID.

M., abbreviation of *Marcus*, a Roman first name.
macte, adj. [voc. of mactus], *be honored, be blessed; hail! well done!* (page 178, note 3.)
maculō, 1, *stain.*
magis, adv. [māg(nus)], *more.*
magister, -trī, M. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* Cf. praeceptor.
magistrātus, -ūs, M. [magister], (*the office of a* magister), *magistracy, magistrate.*
māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], *splendid, magnificent.*
māgnitūdō, -inis, F. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., comp. mājor, superl. māximus, *great, large.* MAGNIFY.
mājor, -us, comp. of māgnus. MAJOR.
male, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (219.)
mālō, mālle, māluī, —— [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (316.)

Digitized by Google

malum, -i, N., *bad thing, evil.*
mālum, -ī, N., *apple.*
malus, -a, -um, adj., comp. pĕjor, superl. pessimus, *bad, evil; baleful.* (208.) Cf. improbus.
māne, adv., *in the morning.*
manĕō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, *stay, remain, await.*
mānēs, -ium, M., *departed spirits, souls.*
Manlius, -ī, M., *Manlius*, a Roman.
manus, -ūs, F., *hand; force, band.* (244, 1.) MANUAL.
Mārcellus, -ī, M., *Marcellus*, a Roman general.
mare, -is, N., *sea.* (149.) MARINE.
maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare], *belonging to the sea, bordering on the sea, maritime.*
Marius (C.), -ī, M., *Gājus Marius*, a famous Roman general.
Mārtius, -ī, M. [Mars], *March.* Often as adj.
māssa, -ae, F., *mass.*
māter, -tris, F., *mother.* MATERNAL.
māteria, -ae, F. [māter], (*mother-stuff*), *materials, timber.*
mātrōna, -ae, F. [māter], *matron, wife, lady.*
mātūrō, 1 [mātūrus, *ripe*], *hasten.*
māximē, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* (219.)
māximus, -a, -um, superl. of māgnus. (208.) MAXIMUM.
medicus, -ī, M. [medeor, *cure*], *physician.* MEDICINE.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj. [medius, terra], *midland, inland.* MEDITERRANEAN.
medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle;* often to be translated *midst.*
Meldī, -ōrum, M., *the Meldi*, a people of Gaul.
melior, -us, comp. of bonus. (208.) AMELIORATE.
mellītus, -a, -um, adj. [mel, *honey*], *honey-sweet, darling.*
memor, -oris, adj., *mindful.* (150.) MEMORABLE.
memoria, -ae, F. [memor], *memory.*
mendācium, -ī, N. [mendāx], *lying, falsehood.*
mendāx, -ācis, adj. [mentior], *lying, deceitful.* MENDACIOUS.
mēns, mentis, F., *mind, purpose.* (273.) MENTAL.
mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*
mēnsis, -is, M., *month.*
mentior, 4 [mendāx], *lie, deceive.*
Mercurius, -ī, M., *Mercury*, messenger of the gods. (79.)
mereō, **mereor**, } 2, *be worthy of, deserve, merit.*
merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. [merīdiēs], *of* or *belonging to midday, noon; meridian.*
Metellus, -ī, M., *Metellus*, a Roman general.
metuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [metus], *fear.* Cf. timeō.
metus, -ūs, M. [metuō], *fear, dread.* Cf. timor.
meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (voc. sing. masc. mī), *my, mine.*
migrō, 1, *migrate.*
mīles, -itis, M., *soldier.* (105.) MILITARY.
mīlle, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur. mīlia, -ium, *thousand.* (311, 6.)
Miltiadēs, -is, M., *Miltiades*, a Greek general.
Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom.
minimē, adv. [minimus], *least; no, by no means, far from it.*

Digitized by Google

minister, -trī, M. [minus], (*an inferior*), *servant*. (66.) MINISTER. Cf. magister.

minor, 1 [minae, *threats*], *threaten*.

minor, -us, comp. of parvus.

minus, adv. [minor], *less*. MINUS.

mīrābilis, -e, adj. [mīror, *wonder at*], *to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary*. MARVEL.

misellus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of miser], *poor little*.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unhappy, miserable*.

miseret, 2, -itum est, impers. [miser], *it makes miserable, it excites pity*, (*one*) *pities;* nōs miseret, *we pity*. (416.)

miseria, -ae, F. [miser], *wretchedness, misery*.

Mithridatēs, -is, M., *Mithridates*, king of Pontus.

mittō, 3, mīsī, missum, *send*. MISSION.

modestia, -ae, F. [modestus], *modesty*.

modius, -I, M. [modus], *measure; peck*.

modo, adv. [modus], *only;* modo . . . modo, *now . . . now*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs, *pile*], *troublesome*. MOLEST.

molliō, 4 [mollis], *soften*. MOLLIFY.

moneō, 2, -uī, -itum, *remind, advise, warn*. MONITOR. (112.)

mōns, montis, M., *mountain, hill*. Cf. collis.

mōnstrō, 1 [moneō], *show, point out*. DEMONSTRATE.

monumentum, -I, N. [moneō], (*that which reminds*), *memorial, monument*.

mora, -ae, F., *delay*.

Morinī, -ōrum, M., *the Morini*, a people of Gaul.

morior, 3, mortuus (fut. part. moritūrus) [mors], *die*.

mōrōsus, -a, -um, adj. [mōs], *fretful, cross; morose*.

mors, mortis, F. [morior], *death*.

mortālis, -e, adj. [mors], (*liable to death*), *mortal*.

mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of morior], *dead*.

mōs, mōris, M., *manner, habit, custom*. (140.) MORAL.

mōtus, -ūs, M. [moveō], *motion, movement; tumult, disturbance*.

moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtum, *move*.

mox, adv., *soon, presently*.

mulier, -eris, F., *woman*.

multitūdō, -inis, F. [multus], *multitude*.

multum, adv. [multus], *much*.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, superl. plūrimus, *much, many*. MULTIPLY.

mundus, -I, M., *world, universe*. MUNDANE. Cf. orbis terrārum.

mūniō, 4 [moenia, *fortifications*], *fortify, defend*.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F. [mūniō], *fortification*. MUNITION.

mūrus, -I, M., *wall*. MURAL.

mūtō, 1, *change, alter*. MUTATION.

nam, conj., *for*. Cf. enim.

nanciscor, 3, nanctus (nactus), *get, obtain; find, meet with*.

nārrō, 1, *tell, relate, report, narrate*.

nāscor, 3, nātus, *be born; be found*.

Nāsīca, -ae, M., *Nasica*, surname of one of the Scipios.

nāta, -ae, F. [P. of nāscor], *daughter*. Cf. fīlia.

nātūra, -ae, F. [nāscor], *nature*.

nauta, -ae, M. [for nāvita, from nāvis], *sailor*. NAUTICAL.

Digitized by Google

nāvicula, -ae, F. [diminutive of nāvis], *little vessel, boat.* Cf. cymba.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F. [nāvigō], *a sailing; navigation.*

nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail, set sail.*

nāvis, -is, F., *ship.* (154.) NAVAL.

nē, conj., *that not, lest;* W. hortatory subjunctive, *not.*

ne, interrog. adv., enclitic. (page 10, note 2.) Cf. nōnne and num.

nec, see neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necesse], *necessary.*

necessitās, -ātis, F. [necesse], *necessity, constraint.*

necō, 1, *kill, slay.* Cf. interficiō and occīdō.

nectō, 3, nexuī (nexī), nexum, *bind, weave.* CONNECT.

negō, 1 [nē, āiō, *say*], *say not, deny; refuse.* NEGATIVE.

nēmō, -inis, M. and F. [nē, homō], *no one.* For gen. and abl. use nūllīus, nūllō.

Neptūnus, -ī, M., *Neptune,* god of the sea.

nē-quāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

ne-que (nec), *and not;* neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*

nē-sciō, 4, *know not, be ignorant of.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither* (*of two*). (200.) NEUTRAL.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black.* NEGRO. Cf. āter.

nihil, N., indecl., *nothing.*

nimium, adv., *too, too much.*

ni-si, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nix, nivis, F., *snow.* (167, 2.)

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, famous; noble.*

noceō, 2, -uī, -itum, *do harm to, hurt, injure;* W. dat. Cf. obsum.

noctū, adv. [nox], *by night, in the night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [nē, volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish.* (316.)

nōmen, -inis, N. [nōscō], (*that by which a thing is known*), *name.* NOMINAL. (134.)

nōminō, 1 [nōmen], *name, call.*

nōn, adv. [nē, ūnum], *not.*

nōn-ne, interrog. adv., expecting an affirmative answer, *not?* Cf. -ne and num.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj., (*not none*), *some.*

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem], *ninth.*

nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtum, *learn, know.* P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj., *known.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our, ours.* Nostrī, *our men.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.* NOVELTY.

nox, noctis, F., *night.* (167. 2.) NOCTURNAL.

nūbēs, -is, F., *cloud.* (149.)

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus], *not any, no, none.* (200.) NULLITY.

num, interrog. adv., expecting a negative answer, *whether?* Cf. nōnne and -ne.

Numa, -ae, M., *Numa* (*Pompilius*), second king of Rome.

numerus, -ī, M., *number.*

nummus, -ī, M., *piece of money, coin.*

nunc, adv., *now.* Cf. jam.

nunquam, adv. [nē, unquam], *never.*

nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], *announce, report.*

nūntius, -ī, M. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger.*

Digitized by Google

nūsquam, adv. [nē, usquam], *nowhere.*

nūtriō, 4, *feed, nourish, support.* NUTRITION. Cf. alō.

ō, interj., *O, oh!*

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go to, reach, meet.*

ob-ligō, 1 [ligō, *bind*], *bind, oblige, put under obligation.*

oblīviscor, 3, oblītus, *forget.*

ob-ruō, 3, -uī, -utum, *overwhelm, cover, bury.*

obses, -sidis, M. and F. [ob, sedeō], (*one who sits* or *remains as a pledge*), *hostage.*

ob-sideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessum [sedeō], (*sit against*), *blockade, besiege.*

ob-sisto, 3, -stitī, -stitum, *oppose, withstand, obstruct;* w. dat.

ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be against, opposed to; injure;* w. dat.

ob-temperō, 1, *comply with, yield to;* w. dat.

ob-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [teneō], *hold fast, keep, occupy.* OBTAIN.

ob-viam, adv., *in the way, towards;* with verb of motion, *meet;* w. dat.

occāsus, -ūs, M. [occidō], (*a sinking*), *setting.*

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cāsum [ob, cadō], *fall down, fall.*

occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob, caedō, *cut*], *cut down, kill.* Cf. necō and interficiō.

occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], *take possession of, seize; occupy.* Cf. potior.

oc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [ob], *run to meet; meet, fall in with.* OCCUR.

ōceanus, -ī, M., *ocean.*

ocellus, -ī, M. [diminutive of oculus], *little eye.*

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō], *eighth.* OCTAVE, OCTAVO.

octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*

oculus, -ī, M., *eye.* OCULAR.

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum [ob], (*bring before*), *present, offer.* (321.)

officium, -ī, N. [opus, faciō], *service, duty, office.*

ōlim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], (*at that time*); *formerly, once; at some time or other; hereafter.* Cf. aliquandō and quondam.

omnis, -e, adj., *whole, all, every.* Cf. tōtus. OMNIBUS.

onus, -eris, N., *load, burden.* ONEROUS.

opera, -ae, F. [opus], *labor, care, attention;* operam dare, *try;* operā, *on account of.* OPERATE.

oportet, 2, -uit, impers. [opus], *it is necessary, it behooves;* (*one*) *must* or *ought.*

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], *of a town;* noun, *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, N., *town.*

op-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [ob], *fill up; cover.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.*

op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], *attack, assault, besiege.* Cf. expūgnō and obsideō.

[ops], opis, F., *aid, assistance;* plur., *power, strength, resources.*

optimē, adv. [optimus], *most excellently, best.* (219.)

optō, 1, *wish, desire, long for.* OPTION. Cf. cupiō and dēsīderō.

opus, -eris, N., *work, labor* (140); as indecl. noun, *need, necessity;* opus est, *it is necessary.*

ōrāculum, -ī, N. [ōrō], *oracle.*

Digitized by Google

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. [ōrō], *prayer, plea; speech, oration.*

ōrātor, -ōris, M. [ōrō], *orator, ambassador.*

orbis, -is, M., *circle, orb;* orbis terrārum, *earth, world.* (154.)

orbus, -a, -um, adj., *bereaved, childless.*

Orcus, -ī, M., *Orcus,* the lower world; also *Pluto,* the god of the lower world.

ōrdior, 4, ōrsus, *begin, undertake.* Cf. incipiō.

ōrdō, -inis, M., *row, rank; order, arrangement.*

orīēns, -entis, M. [P. of orior], *rising; east.* ORIENTAL.

orior, 4, ortus (pres. ind. of conj. 3, orĕris, orĭtur; impf. subj. orĭrer *or* orīrer; fut. part. oritūrus), *rise, appear; begin.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, N. [ōrnō], (*that which adorns*), *ornament, jewel.*

ōrnō, 1, *adorn, ornament.*

ōrō, 1 [ōs], *pray, beg.* ADORE. Cf. petō and rogō.

ōs, ōris, N., *mouth, face.* ORAL.

os-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum [ob(s)], (*stretch out before*), *show, display.*

ōstium, -ī, N. [ōs], *entrance, door.*

ovis, -is, F., *sheep.*

ōvum, -ī, N., *egg.* OVAL.

pābulum, -ī, N. [pāscō], *food, fodder.* Cf. cibus.

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.* Cf. ferē. PENINSULA.

paenitentia, -ae, F. [paeniteō], *repentance, penitence.* PENITENTIARY.

palūs, -ūdis, F., *swamp, marsh.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.* PAIR.

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō], *ready, prepared.*

parcō, 3, pepercī (parsī), parsum, *spare;* W. dat.

parēns, -entis, M. and F., *parent.* (167. 1.)

pāreō, 2, -uī, ——, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey;* W. dat.

parīō, 3, peperī, paritum (partum), *bring forth, lay.*

pariter, adv. [pār], *equally.*

parō, 1, *make ready, prepare, get.*

pars, partis, F., *part, piece, portion, share.*

partior, 4 [pars], *divide; part, share.*

Parus, -ī, F., *Paros,* an island in the Ægean Sea. (11. 4.)

parvus, -a, -um, adj., comp. minor, superl. minimus, *small, little.*

pāscō, 3, pāvī, pāstum, *feed, tend; pasture.*

passer, -eris, M., *sparrow.*

passus, -ūs, M. [pateō], (*a stretching out of the feet in walking*), *step, pace.*

pāstor, -ōris, M. [pāscō], *feeder, keeper; shepherd.* (134.) PASTOR.

pateō, 2, -uī, ——, *lie open, be open.* P. patēns, *open.* PATENT.

pater, -tris, M., *father.* (134.) PATERNAL.

patienter, adv. [patiēns], *patiently, with patience.*

patior, 3, passus, *bear, suffer, endure.* PASSION.

patria, -ae, F. [patrius, pater; sc. terra], *fatherland, native land, country.* EXPATRIATE.

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little.* PAUCITY.

paulō, adv. [paulus], *by a little, little.*

paulus, -a, -um, adj., *little.*

Digitized by Google

Paullus, -ī, M., surname of Æmilius.

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*. (167. 3.)

pāx, pācis, F. (no gen. plur.), *peace*. PACIFY.

peccātum, -ī, N. [peccō], *mistake, fault, sin*.

peccō, 1, *make a mistake, commit a fault, sin*.

pectus, -oris, N., *breast*. PECTORAL.

pecus, -oris, N., *cattle, herd*.

pedes, -itis, M. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.

pējor, -us, comp. of malus. (208.)

pellis, -is, F., *skin, hide*. PELT.

pēnsum, -ī, N. [P. of pendō], (*what is weighed out*, e.g. *wool, as a task for spinning*), *task; lesson, exercise*.

per, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of, on account of*.

pēra, -ae, F., *bag, wallet*.

per-agrō, 1 [ager], *wander through, pass over, traverse*.

per-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *destroy; lose*. Cf. amittō. PERDITION.

per-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead* or *bring through*.

per-eō, -īre, -iī, ——, *perish, be ruined*. (327.)

per-fodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossum; *dig through, pierce, stab*.

per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -frāctum [frangō], *break through, break*.

per-fugiō, 3, -fūgī, ——, *flee* (*for refuge*).

pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum [per, regō], *go on, continue*.

perīculum, -ī, N. [perior, *try*], *trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril*.

perītus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of perior, *try*], (*having tried*), *skilful*.

per-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *allow, grant, suffer, permit*. Cf. sinō.

per-paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *very few*.

Persae, -ārum, M., *the Persians*.

per-sequor, 3, -cūtus, *follow persistently, follow up*. PERSECUTE.

per-spiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectum, [speciō], *see through, see into; perceive, observe*. PERSPECTIVE.

per-stō, 1, -stitī, -stātum, *stand fast, persevere, persist*.

per-terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, *thoroughly frighten*.

pertinācia, -ae, F. [pertināx], *perseverance; obstinacy*. PERTINACITY.

per-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (*come through to the end*), *arrive*. Cf. adveniō.

pēs, pedis, M., *foot*. (105.) PEDAL.

petō, 3, -īvī (iī), -ītum, *seek, demand, beg*. PETITION. Cf. ōrō and rogō.

Philotīmus, -ī, M., *Philotimus*.

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *slow, lazy, indolent*.

piget, 2, -uit (-itum est), impersonal, *it disgusts*, (*one*) *is disgusted*. (416.)

pigritia, -ae, F. [piger], *laziness, sloth, indolence*.

pīlum, -ī, N., *javelin*.

pīpiō, 1, *chirp*.

placeō, 2, -uī, -itum [placidus], *please*; w. dat.

placidē, adv. [placidus], *softly, gently, quietly*. PLACIDLY.

placidus, -a, -um, adj. [placeō], *gentle, quiet, calm*. PLACID.

plānitiēs, -ēī, F. [plānus, *even, level*], (*a flatness*), *level ground, plain*.

plānus, -a, -um, adj. [plānitiēs], *even, flat, level, plain*.

Digitized by Google

Plataeēnsēs, -ium, M., *the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea.*

plēbs, plēbis, F., *the common people, multitude.* PLEBEIAN.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, *fill*], *full.* PLENTY.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj. (generally plur.), *very many, most, the greater part.*

plumbum, -ī, N., *lead;* plumbum album, *tin.* PLUMB.

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus. (208.) PLURAL.

Plūtō, -ōnis, M., *Pluto,* god of the lower world.

pōculum, ī, N., *cup, bowl.*

poēma, -ātis, N., *poem.*

poena, -ae, F. [pūniō], *quit-money, fine, punishment.* PENAL.

Poenī, -ōrum, M., *the Carthaginians.*

Poeniceus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian.* See Pūnicus.

poēta, -ae, M., *poet.*

polliceor, 2, *promise.* Cf. prōmittō.

Polyphēmus, -ī, M., *Polyphemus,* a Cyclops.

Pompējus, -ēī, M., *Pompey,* a famous Roman general.

pōmum, -ī, N., *fruit.*

pondus, -eris, N. [pendō, *weigh*], *weight.* PONDEROUS.

pōnō, 3, posuī, positum, *put, place, set.* POSITION.

pōns, -ntis, M., *bridge.*

Popēdius, -ī, M., *Popedius,* a Latin.

populus, ī, M., *people.*

Porcius, -ī, M., *a Roman family name.*

Porsena, -ae, M., *Porsena,* an Etruscan king.

porta, -ae, F., *gate, door.* PORTAL. Cf. jānua.

portō, 1, *carry, bring.* Cf. ferō and vehō. PORTABLE.

porticus, -ūs, F. [porta], *portico.*

portus, -ūs, M., *harbor, port.* (247.)

possum, posse, potuī, —— [potis, *able,* sum], *be able, can.* (292.)

post, prep. w. acc., *after, behind;* as adv., for posteā, *afterwards, after.*

post-eā, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., comp. posterior, superl. postrēmus (postumus) [post], *following, next.*

post-hac, adv., *after this time, hereafter, henceforth.*

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō diē], *on the day after, the following day.*

postulō, 1, *ask, demand.* Cf. quaerō and rogō. POSTULATE.

potēns, -entis, adj., [P. of possum], *able, powerful; potent.*

potior, 4 [potis, *able*], *become master of, get, get possession of;* w. gen. or abl. Cf. adipīscor.

praebeō, 2 [prae, habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish.*

praeceps, -ipitis, adj. [prae, caput], *head foremost, headlong; rash, precipitate.*

praeceptor, -ōris, M. [praeceptum], *teacher, preceptor.* Cf. magister.

praeceptum, -ī, N. [praeceptor], *maxim, precept.*

praeda, -ae, F., *booty, spoil, prey.* PREDATORY.

praedicō, 1 [prae, dicō, -āre, *make known*], *proclaim, boast.*

prae-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go before; be at the head.* (327. 2.)

praemium, -ī, N., *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.

praesidium, -ī, N. [prae, sedeō, *sit before*], *defence, help; troops, garrison.*

Digitized by Google

praestāns, -antis, adj. [P. of praestō], *preëminent, distinguished.*

prae-stō, 1, -stitī, -stitum (stātum), *stand before; surpass; fulfil, discharge, perform.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be before, at the head of, command;* w. dat.

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit.* (327.2.) PRETERITE.

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor], (*pertaining to a prætor*), *prætorian;* noun, *ex-prætor.*

prātum, -ī, N., *meadow.*

premō, 3, pressī, pressum, *press;* w. ōre, *bite, eat.*

[**prex**], precis, F. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. with comp. prior, no pos.], *first, foremost.* PRIME.

prīnceps, -ipis, adj. [prīmus, capiō], (*taking the first place*), *first, chief;* noun, *chief, leader.* (105.) PRINCE.

prius-quam, conj., *before that, before.*

prīvō, 1, *deprive;* w. abl.

prō, interj., *O!*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for; considering.*

prō-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. prōgredior.

procul, adv., *far, far from.*

prō-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *give forth; hand down; give up, betray.*

prō-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth.* PRODUCE.

proelium, -ī, N., *battle, combat.* Cf. pūgna.

proficīscor, 3, -fectus, *set out, march, go.* Cf. exeō and ēgredior.

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], *acknowledge, confess, declare.* PROFESS.

prō-flīgō, 1, *overthrow, destroy, ruin.* PROFLIGATE.

profundus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, profound.*

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior, *step*], *go forward, advance.* PROGRESS. Cf. prōcēdō.

pro-hibeō, 2 [habeō], (*hold in front of*), *hold back, check, hinder, prevent, prohibit.*

prō-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw forward, cast away, cast.* PROJECT.

prō-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, (*let* or *send forth*), *promise; let grow.* Cf. polliceor.

prope, prep. w. acc., and adv. (comp. propius, superl. proximē), *near, near to; nearly, almost.*

prō-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put before, set forth; make known, declare.* PROPOSE.

prōpositum, -ī, N. [prōpōnō], *purpose, design, resolution.* PROPOSITION.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., (*one's*) *own.* PROPER.

prō-pūgnō, 1, (*fight in front*), *rush out to battle, make sorties.*

prō-sequor, 3, -cūtus, *follow, pursue.* PROSECUTE.

Prōserpina, -ae, F., *Proserpina,* daughter of Ceres.

prō-sternō, 3, -strāvī, -strātum, *overthrow, destroy; prostrate.*

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, ——, *be useful to, benefit;* w. dat. (293.)

Digitized by Google

prō-vehō, 3, -vēxī, -vectum, *carry forward, convey;* pass., *ride, sail.*

prō-videō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsum, (*see forward*), *provide.*

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province.*

proximus, -a, -um (superl. with comp. propior, no pos.), *nearest, next.* PROXIMITY.

prūdēns, -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudently.* (164.)

prūdenter, adv. [prūdēns], *wisely, prudently.*

prūdentia, -ae, F. [prūdēns], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (*pertaining to the people*), *public.*

Pūblius, -ī, M., *Publius,* a Roman first name.

pudet, 2, puduit (puditum est), impers., *it shames,* (*one*) *is ashamed.*

puella, -ae, F. [diminutive of puer], *girl, maiden.*

puellāris, -e, adj. [puella], *girlish.*

puer, -erī, M., *boy, child.* PUERILE.

puerulus, -ī, M. [diminutive of puer], *little boy.*

pūgna, -ae, F. [pūgnō], *battle, contest.* PUGNACIOUS. Cf. proelium.

pūgnō, 1 [pūgna], *fight.* Cf. dīmicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, fair, comely.*

pulchritūdō, -inis, F. [pulcher], *beauty.*

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust.* PULVERIZE.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian, Punic;* mālum Pūnicum, *pomegranate.* See Poeniceus.

pūniō, 4 [poena], *punish.*

putō, 1, *think, believe, reckon.* (429.)

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Pyrenean, Pyrenees.*

Pyrrhus, -ī, M., *Pyrrhus,* king of Epirus.

quadrāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [quattuor], *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor, centum], *four hundred.*

quaerō, 3, quaesīvī (-iī), quaesītum, *seek, ask, inquire.* (382.)

quaesō, 3, -īvī (-iī), —— [old form of quaerō], *beg, pray.*

quam, adv.; interrog., *how, how much?* rel., *as much, as, than;* quam saepissimē, *as often as possible.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam], *how great, how much; as great as, as much as.* QUANTITY.

quā-rē, adv., (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore.*

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quattuor], *fourth.* QUART.

qua-si, adv., *as if.*

quater, num. adv. [quattuor], *four times.*

quattuor, num. adj., indecl., *four.*

quattuor-decim, num. adj. [decem], *fourteen.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and.* Cf. et, atque, and āc.

quercus, -ūs, F., *oak.* (11.4.)

quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., *who, which, what, that.* (279.)

quia, conj., *because.* Cf. quod.

quīdam, quaedam, quid(quod)dam, indef. pron., *certain, a certain one, a.* (279. 4.)

quidem, adv. (never the first word), *indeed, certainly, in truth;* nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

quīn, conj. [quī, nē], *but that, that.*

Digitized by Google

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., indecl. [quīnque, centum], *five hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [quīnque], *fifty.*

quīnque, num. adj., indecl., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quīnque], *fifth.* QUINTESSENCE.

quīntus decimus, num. adj., *fifteenth.*

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* (279.)

quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., *any, any one (at all).* (279. 4.)

quisque, quaeque, quid(quod)que, indef. pron., *each one, each, every.* (279. 4.)

quō, adv., *where, whither.*

quod, conj., *because.* Cf. quia.

quondam, adv., *once, formerly.* Cf. aliquandō and ōlim.

quoniam, adv. [cum (quom), jam], *since, because.* Cf. cum.

quoque, conj. and adv. (following the emphatic word), *also, too.*

quot, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl., *how many; as many as.*

radius, -ī, M., *beam, ray.*

rādō, 3, rāsī, rāsum, *shave.* RAZOR.

rāna, -ae, F., *frog.*

rapāx, -ācis, adj. [rapiō], *snatching, greedy, ravenous.* RAPACIOUS.

rapiō, 3, -uī, -tum [rapāx], *seize, snatch, drag away.* RAPTURE.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *far apart, dispersed, single.* RARE.

ratiō, -ōnis, F., *plan, method; reason.*

re-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], *take back, get again, receive;* sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat.*

recitō, 1, *read aloud, recite.*

re-creō, 1 [creō, *make*], *refresh, recreate.*

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], *rightly.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum [re(d)], *go back, return.* (327. 2.)

reditus, -ūs, M. [redeō], *return.*

re-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back.* REDUCE.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum, *carry back, bring back.* (321.) REFER. Cf. reportō.

re-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *make again; repair, restore, rebuild.* REFECTORY.

rēgīna, -ae, F. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, F., *region.*

rēgnō, 1 [rēgnum, rēx], *be king, rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī, N. [rēx], *kingdom.*

regō, 3, rēxī, rēctum [rēx], *rule.*

Rēgulus, -ī, M., *Regulus,* a Roman consul.

re-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw back, drive back.* REJECT.

re-linquō, 3, -līquī, -lictum [reliquus], *leave behind, leave.* RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō], *remaining, the rest.* RELIC.

re-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send back.* REMIT.

rēmus, ī, M., *oar.*

Remus, -ī, M., *Remus,* twin brother of Romulus.

re-pellō, 3, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repel, repulse.*

re-periō, 4, repperī, repertum [pariō, *procure*], *find, discover, ascertain.* REPERTORY. Cf. inveniō.

re-petō, 3, -petīvī (-iī), -petītum, *seek again, demand back;* rēs repetō, *demand restitution.*

Digitized by Google

re-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, (*fill again*), *fill up, fill.* REPLETE.

re-portō, 1, *bring back, carry back.* REPORT. Cf. referō.

re-prehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsum, *hold back, restrain, reprove.* REPREHENSIBLE.

re-putō, 1, (*count over*), *reckon; think over.* REPUTE.

rēs, reī, F., *thing, event, circumstance, affair* (254); rēs pūblica, *commonwealth, state, republic.*

re-scindō, 3, -scidī, -scissum, *tear away, break down.* RESCIND.

re-spondeō, 2, -dī, -spōnsum, (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond.*

re-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō], *replace; give back, return, restore.* RESTITUTION.

re-stō, 1, restitī, ——, *stop behind, stand still, remain.* REST.

re-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [teneō], *hold back, restrain, retain.*

re-vertor, 3, -tī, -sum (deponent in pres., impf., and fut.), *turn back, return.* REVERT.

re-vocō, 1, *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, M. [regō], (*ruler*), *king.* (105.) REGAL.

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, F., *Rhea Silvia,* mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine.*

Rhodus, -ī, F., *Rhodes,* an island in the Ægean Sea.

rīctus, -ūs, M. [ringor, *open the mouth*], *jaws wide open; jaws.*

rīdeō, 2, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh.* DERIDE. Cf. cachinnō.

rīsus, -ūs, M. [rīdeō], *laughter.*

rīvus, -ī, M., *brook, stream.* RIVAL.

rōbur, -oris, N., *strength.* ROBUST.

rogō, 1, *ask, question.* (382.) Cf. interrogō.

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], *Roman;* noun, *a Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, M., *Romulus,* first king of Rome.

rosa, -ae, F., *rose.*

rōstrum, -ī, N. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak of a vessel.* ROSTRUM.

rubeō, 2 [ruber], *be red.*

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [rubeō], *red.* RUBY.

ruīna, -ae, F. [ruō, *fall*], (*a falling down*), *downfall, disaster, ruin.*

rūpēs, -is, F. [ru(m)pō, *break*], (*the broken thing*), *cliff, rock.*

rūrsus, adv. [re-vorsus, revertō], (*turned back*), *back, again.*

rūs, rūris, N., *the country.* (336.)

rūsticus, -ī, M. [rūs], *countryman, peasant.* RUSTIC.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred.*

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.*

sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow.*

Saguntum, -ī, N., *Saguntum,* a town in Spain.

Sallustius, -ī, M., *Sallust,* a Roman historian.

salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety, welfare.* SALUTARY.

Samnīs, -ītis, M., *a Samnite.*

sanguis, -inis, M., *blood.* SANGUINARY. Cf. cruor.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sāpiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible.*

sapienter, adv. [sapiēns], *wisely.*

satis, adv., *enough.* SATISFY.

Sāturnus, -ī, M., *Saturn,* god of agriculture.

saxum, -ī, N., *rock.*

schola, -ae, F., *school.*

sciō, 4, scīvī, scītum, *know, know how.* SCIENCE.

Digitized by Google

Scīpiō, -ōnis, M., *Scipio*, a famous Roman general.

scrība, -ae, M. [scrībō], (*one who writes*), *clerk*. SCRIBE.

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptum [scrība], *write*. SCRIBBLE.

scrīptor, -ōris, M. [scrībō], *writer*, *author*.

scrīptum, -ī, N. [scrībō], *writing*, *written work*. SCRIPT.

scūtum, -ī, N., *shield*.

sē-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, *go apart*, *withdraw*, *retire*; *secede*.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following*, *next*; *second*; *favorable*.

sed, conj., *but*. (393.)

sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum, *sit*. SESSION.

sēdēs, -is, F. [sedeō], *seat*, *abode*.

semper, adv., *always*, *ever*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.

senātor, -ōris, M. [senex], *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, M. [senex], *council of elders*, *senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, F. [senex], *old age*.

senex, senis, adj., *old*; noun, *old man*. (262.) SENILE.

senior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of senex], *elder*, *old person*. SENIORITY.

sēnsus, -ūs, M. [sentiō], *feeling*, *sense*, *perception*.

sententia, -ae, F. [sentiō], *opinion*, *purpose*. SENTENCE.

sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsum [sēnsus], *feel*, *know* (*by the senses*), *see*, *perceive*. SENSIBLE.

septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

September, -bris, M. [septem], *September*. Often as adj.

septem-decim, num. adj. [decem], *seventeen*.

septiēs, num. adv. [septem], *seven times*.

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], *seventh*.

sequor, 3, secūtus, *follow*. SEQUENCE.

serō, 3, sēvī, satum, *sow*, *plant*.

serta, -ōrum, N. [serō, *plait*], *garlands*, *wreaths of flowers*.

sērus, -a, -um, adj., *late*.

serviō, 4 [servus], *be a slave to*, *serve*; W. dat.

servitūs, -ūtis, F. [servus], *slavery*, *servitude*.

servō, 1, *save*, *keep*; *preserve*.

servus, -ī, M. [serviō], *slave*, *servant*. (66.)

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty*. SEXAGENARIAN.

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth*. SEXTANT.

sī, conj., *if*, *whether*.

sīc, adv., *so*, *thus*, *in this manner*. Cf. ita.

Sicca, -ae, M., *Sicca*, a friend of Cicero.

Sicilia, -ae, F., *Sicily*.

sīdus, -eris, N., *star*, *constellation*. SIDEREAL. (301.)

sīgnum, -ī, N., *mark*, *sign*, *signal*.

silva, -ae, F., *wood*, *forest*. SILVAN.

similis, -e, adj. [simul], *like*, *resembling*, *similar*. (207.)

simplex, -icis, adj., *simple*, *plain*, *artless*.

simul, adv. [similis], *at the same time*. SIMULTANEOUS.

sīn, conj. [sī-nē], *but if*, *if however*.

sine, prep. W. abl., *without*.

singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *separate*, *single*, *one by one*. (311. 8.)

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left* (*hand*). SINISTER.

Digitized by Google

sinō, 3, sīvī, situm, *allow, permit.* Cf. permittō.

sinus, -ūs, M., *bosom, lap, folds of a garment.*

sitis, -is, F. (acc. -im, abl. -ī), *thirst.*

socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, M., *ally, companion.* ASSOCIATE.

Sōcratēs, -is, M., *Socrates,* a famous Greek philosopher.

sōl, sōlis, M. (no gen. plur.), *sun.* SOLAR.

soleō, 2, solitus, *be accustomed, wont.* (page 177, note 2.)

Solōn, -ōnis, M., *Solon,* the great lawgiver of Athens.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, single; sole.* (200.)

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtum, *loose, loosen; break; weigh anchor, set sail.* SOLVE.

somnus, -ī, M., *sleep.*

soror, -ōris, F., *sister.*

sors, -tis, F., *lot, condition.* SORT.

sortior, 4 [sors], *draw lots, obtain by lot.*

spargō, 3, -sī, -sum, *strew, scatter.* SPARSE.

Spartacus, -ī, M., *Spartacus,* a gladiator.

spatium, -ī, N., *room, space; period.*

spectō, 1 [speciō, *look*], *look at, behold, witness.* SPECTACLE.

speculor, 1, *spy out, watch.*

specus, -ūs, M., *cave, den.*

spērō, 1 [spēs], *hope, hope for.*

spēs, spei, F. [spērō], *hope, expectation.*

spoliō, 1, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*

statim, adv. [stō], (*standing there*), *on the spot, immediately, at once.*

statua, -ae, F. [statuō], (*the thing set up*), *statue.*

statuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum, *put, place; determine, think, believe.*

stella, -ae, F., *star.* (301.) STELLAR.

stō, 1, stetī, statum, *stand.* STATE.

strāgēs, -is, F., *slaughter, carnage.*

stringō, 3, -inxī, strictum, (*draw tight*), *graze; draw, unsheathe.*

studeō, 2, -uī, —— [studium], *be eager, strive earnestly for; study;* w. dat.

studium, -ī, N. [studeō], *zeal, eagerness; study.*

stultitia, -ae, F. [stultus], *folly.*

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *foolish, silly.*

suāvis, -e, adj., *sweet, delightful.* Cf. dulcis. SUAVITY.

suāviter, adv. [suāvis], *sweetly, delightfully.*

sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw from under, draw up.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go under* or *up to, enter; undergo.* (327.)

subitō, adv. [subeō], *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*move from beneath*), *remove, drive away.*

subsidium, -ī, N. [subsideō], *aid, support, relief, assistance.*

sub-siliō, 4, -uī, —— [saliō, *leap*], *jump up.* Cf. dēsiliō and trānsiliō.

sub-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, (*come to one's relief*), *help, aid, assist.* SUBVENTION. Cf. succurrō.

suc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [sub], (*run up to*), *help, aid, succor.*

suf-ferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum [sub], *bear up under, undergo.* SUFFER.

suī, reflex. pron., *of himself* (*herself, itself, themselves*). (264.)

Sūlla, -ae, M., *Sulla,* a famous Roman general and statesman.

sum, esse, fuī, ——, *be, exist.* (72.)

Digitized by Google

summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, *highest*. SUMMIT.
sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, take up; assume*.
super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, on top of*.
superbē, adv. [superbus], *proudly, haughtily*.
superbus, -a, -um, adj. [super], *proud*. SUPERB.
superior, -us, adj., comp. of superus, *higher, superior*.
superō, 1 [super], *pass over; surpass, overcome; conquer*. (186.)
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *remain over; survive, exist*.
suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, *highest; last*. SUPREME.
suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub, capiō], *undertake*.
sus-pendō, 3, -dī, -pēnsum [sub], *hang up, suspend, hang*.
suspicor, 1 [suspiciō, *look askance at*], *mistrust, suspect*.
sustineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [sub, teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; sustain*.
suus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [suī], *his, hers, her, its, theirs, their* (*own*).

taceō, 2, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent, be silent about*. TACIT.
taedet, 2, taeduit (taesum est), impers., *it disgusts, wearies; (one) is disgusted, wearied*. (416.)
tālea, -ae, F., *thin bar*.
tam, adv., *so;* tam . . . quam, *as . . . as*. Cf. ita and sīc.
tamen, adv., *yet, but, nevertheless*.
tandem, adv. [tam], (*just so far*), *at length, finally*. TANDEM.
tangō, 3, tetigī, tāctum, *touch*.
tantō, adv. [tantus], *by so much, so much the* (with comparatives).
tantum, adv. [tantus], *only*.
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great*.
Tarentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Tarentum, Tarentine*.
Tarquinius, -I, M., *Tarquin the Proud*, seventh king of Rome.
tēctum, -I, N. [tegō, *cover*], *covering, shelter, roof*.
tēlum, -I, N., *weapon*.
temerārius, -a, -um [temerē], *rash, inconsiderate*.
temerē, adv., *rashly, inconsiderately*.
temeritās, -ātis, F. [temerē], *chance; rashness, temerity*.
tempestās, -ātis, F. [tempus], (*state* or *condition of time*), *weather; stormy weather, storm, tempest*.
templum, -I, N., *temple*.
tempus, -oris, N., *time*. TEMPORAL.
tenebrae, -ārum, F., *darkness, shades*.
tenebricōsus, -a, -um, adj. [tenebrae], (*full of darkness*), *dark, gloomy*.
teneō, 2, -uī, -tum, *hold, keep, have;* memoriā tenēre, *remember*. TENACIOUS.
tener, -era, -erum, adj., *soft, delicate, tender*.
tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, light*.
ter, num. adv. [trēs], *thrice, three times*.
Terentius, -I, M., *a Roman family name*.
tergum, -I, N., *back*.
terra, -ae, F., *earth, land*. TERRACE.
terreō, 2 [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify*.
terror, -ōris [terreō], *terror, alarm*.
tertiō, adv. [tertius], *the third time*.
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third*.

Digitized by Google

tertius decimus, num. adj., *thirteenth.*

testimōnium, -i, N. [testor, *bear witness*], *witness, evidence, testimony.*

testūdō, -inis, F. [testa, *shell*], *tortoise; shed* or *covering to protect besiegers.*

Teutonēs, -um, M., *the Teutons,* a German tribe.

Thalēs, -is, M., *Thales,* a Greek philosopher.

Themistoclēs, -is, M., *Themistocles,* a famous Athenian.

Tīcīnus, -i, M., *the Ticinus,* a river of Italy.

tigris, -is (-idis), *tiger.*

timeō, 2, -uī, —— [timor], *fear, be afraid of.* TIMID.

Tīmoleōn, -ontis, M., *Timoleon,* a Corinthian general.

timor, -ōris, M. [timeō], *fear, dread, alarm.* TIMOROUS.

tolerō, 1, *bear, endure.* TOLERATE.

tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise, pick up; weigh* (*anchor*).

tot, adj., indecl., *so many.* Cf. quot.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire.* (200.) TOTAL.

tractō, 1 [trahō], *handle, manage, treat.*

trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [trāns], *give over, deliver; relate, recount.* TRADITION.

trahō, 3, trāxī, trāctum, *draw, drag; derive.* TRACTION.

trā-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], *throw across; pass over, cross.*

trājectus, -ūs, M. [trāiciō], *a crossing over, passage.*

tranquillitās, -ātis, F. [tranquillus], *calmness, tranquillity; a calm.*

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over.*

trān-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum [scandō, *climb*], *step* or *pass over; cross.* TRANSCEND.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go over, cross.* (327.) TRANSIT.

trāns-fīgō, 3, -fīxī, -fīxum, *pierce through, pierce, stab; transfix.*

trān-siliō, 4, -iī (-uī), —— [saliō, *leap*], *leap over* or *across.* Cf. dēsiliō and subsiliō.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred.*

tredecim, num. adj., indecl. [trēs, decem], *thirteen.*

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.* (311. 4.)

tribūnus, -i, M. [tribus, *tribe*], *tribune.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty.*

tripartītō, adv. [trēs, partior], *in three divisions.*

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy.*

triumphus, -i, M., *triumph.*

tū, pers. pron., *thou.* (264.)

tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet.* (14.)

tueor, 2, tuitus (tūtus), *look at; watch, defend, guard.* TUTOR, TUITION. Cf. dēfendō.

Tullia, -ae, F., *Tullia,* Cicero's daughter.

tum, adv., *at that time, then.*

tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time, then.*

turgidulus, -a, -um, adj., *swollen.* TURGID.

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful.*

turpiter, adv. [turpis], *foully, basely, shamefully.*

turpitūdō, -inis, F. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness.*

turris, -is, F., *tower.* (149.)

Digitized by Google

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of tueor], *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one).

tyrannus, -i, M., *tyrant.*

ubi, adv., *where, when.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus], *any, any one.* (200.)

ulterior, -us, adj., comp. (no positive), *further.*

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of ūlterior, *furthest, last.* ULTIMATE.

umerus, -i, M., *shoulder.*

unde, adv., *whence.*

undi-que, adv., *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūni-versus, -a, -um, adj., (*turned into one*), *all together.*

unquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *one; alone.* (200, 311. 3.) UNIT.

urbs, -is, F., *city.* (163.) SUBURBS.

urgeō, 2, ursī, ——, *press, drive, impel, urge.*

ūsque, adv., *all the time, continually.*

ut (utī), adv. and conj., *how, as; that, in order that, so that.*

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron., *which of two.* (200.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron., *each of two, both.* (200.)

uti, see ut.

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous.* UTILITY.

uti-nam, adv., *would that, O that, I wish that.*

ūtor, 3, ūsus, *use, employ;* w. abl.

utrum, adv., *whether;* used chiefly in double questions.

ūva, -ae, F., *grape, bunch of grapes.*

uxor, -ōris, F., *wife.* Cf. conjunx.

vagor, 1, *go to and fro, wander.* VAGRANT.

valeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *be strong* or *well;* valē, *farewell, good by.* VALUE. Cf. convalēscō.

valētūdō, -inis, F. [valeō], *state of health, health.*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy.* VALID.

vallis (valliēs), -is, F., *valley, vale.*

varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various.*

Varrō, -ōnis, M., *Varro,* a Roman consul.

vāstō, 1 [vāstus, *waste, desolate*], *lay waste, ravage.*

vehō, 3, vēxī, vectum, *carry, draw, convey;* pass., *ride, sail.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet, quick.* (179.) VELOCITY.

vēnātor, -ōris, M. [vēnor, *hunt*], *hunter.*

venēnum, -i, N., *poison.* VENOM.

venia, -ae, F., *indulgence, mercy, kindness.* VENIAL.

veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

ventus, -i, M., *wind.* VENTILATE.

Venus, -eris, F., *Venus,* goddess of love.

Venusia, -ae, F., *Venusia,* a town in Apulia.

venustus, -a, -um, adj. [Venus], *lovely, charming.*

vēr, vēris, N., *spring.* VERNAL.

verbum, -i, N., *word.* VERB.

vereor, 2, *reverence, respect, fear.*

vērō, adv. and conj. [vērus], *in truth, in fact, but in fact.*

Digitized by Google

vērum, -ī, N. [vērus], *the truth.*
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real.*
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *your, yours* (of more than one).
veterrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of vetus.
vestiō, 4 [vestis, *garment*], *clothe.*
vetō, 1, -uī, -itum, *forbid, prevent.* VETO.
vetus, -eris, adj., comp. vetustior, superl. veterrimus, *old.* (141, 208.) VETERAN.
vetustior, -us, adj., comp. of vetus.
via, -ae, F., *way, road, street.*
vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus], *near, neighboring.* VICINITY.
victor, -ōris, M. [vi(n)cō], *conqueror, victor.*
victōria, -ae, F. [victor], *victory.*
vīcus, -ī, M., *village.*
videō, 2, vīdī, vīsum, *see, perceive;* pass., *be seen, seem.* VISION.
vigil, adj. [vigeō, *be lively*], *watchful, wakeful.* (151. 4.)
vigilia, -ae, F. [vigilō, vigil], *a watching, watch,* i.e., *the fourth part of the night.*
vigilō, 1 [vigil], *watch.* VIGILANT.
vīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *twenty.*
vinciō, 4, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*
vincō, 3, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat.* (186.) VANQUISH.
vindicō, 1, *claim; avenge, punish.* VINDICATE.
vīnum, -ī, N., *wine.*
viola, -ae, F., *violet.*
vir, virī, M., *man, hero.* (138, 262.)
virgō, -inis, F., *maiden, virgin.*
virtūs, -ūtis, F. [vir], (*manliness*), *courage, bravery; virtue.*
vīs, vīs, F. (gen. and dat. rare), *strength, power.* (262.)
vīta, -ae [vīvō], *life.* VITAL.
vītis, -is, F. [vieō, *twist together*], *vine.*
vitium, -ī, N. [vītis], (*a moral twist*), *fault, blemish, vice.* Cf. culpa.
vītō, 1, *avoid, shun.*
vitrum, -ī, N., *woad,* a dye.
vituperō, 1, *blame, censure.* VITUPERATION. Cf. culpō.
vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum [vīvus], *live.* (194.) REVIVE.
vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], *alive, living.* VIVID.
vix, adv., *hardly, with difficulty.*
volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, be willing, desire, intend.* (316, 319.)
voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure, enjoyment.* VOLUPTUOUS.
vōx, vōcis, F. [vocō, *call*], *voice.*
vulnerō, 1 [vulnus], *wound, hurt, injure.* VULNERABLE.
vulnus, -eris, N. [vulnerō], *wound.*
vulpēs, -is, F., *fox.*
vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, looks, features.*

Zama, -ae, F., *Zama,* a town in Africa.

Digitized by Google

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

a, *commonly not translated;* quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (279. 5).
able (be), possum (292).
about, dē, *w. abl.*
absent (be), absum (297).
accept, accipiō, 3.
accompany, comitor, 1.
accord (of one's own), ipse, -a, -um (270. 6).
accuse, accūsō, 1.
across, trāns, *w. acc.*
act, agō, 3.
admire, admīror, 1.
admonish, moneō, 2 (112).
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
advise, moneō, 2 (112).
afar, longē.
affair, rēs, reī, F. (254).
afraid (be), metuō, 3; timeō, 2.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, F.
after, post, *w. acc.;* cum, *w. subj.;* postquam, *w. ind.*
afterwards, posteā, deinde.
again, iterum, rūrsus.
against, adversus, contrā, in, *w. acc.*
age (old), senectūs, -ūtis, F.
agriculture, agrī cultūra, -ae, F.
aid, auxilium, -ī, N.
air, āēr, āeris, M.
Alexander, Alexander, -drī, M.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um.
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (200).
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, F.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um (200).
aloud (read), recitō, 1.
altar, āra, -ae, F.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, M.; ōrātor, -ōris, M.
among, in, *w. abl.;* inter, *w. acc.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (141).
and, et; atque *or* āc; -que.
Androclus, Androclus, -ī, M.
anger, īra, -ae, F.
angrily, cum īrā (144).
animal, animal, -ālis, N. (149).
another, alius, -a, -ud (201); **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius.
another's, aliēnus, -a, -um.
answer, respondeō, 2, *w. dat.*
any, ūllus, -a, -um (200); aliquis, -qua, -quid *or* -quod (279); quis (page 211, note 15); quisquam, ——, quidquam (279. 6).
approach, appropinquō, 1, *w. dat., and w.* ad *and acc.*
arm, *n.*, bracchium, -ī, N.
arm, *v.*, armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, N.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M., *the general word; on the march*, agmen, -inis, N.; *in order of battle*, aciēs, -ēī, F.
Arpinum, Arpīnum, -ī, N.

Digitized by Google

arrangement, ōrdō, -inis, M.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
arrive, adveniō, 4; perveniō, 4.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
art, ars, artis, F.
as, ut; **as . . . as**, tam . . . quam; **same . . . as**, īdem . . . quī; (= *since*), cum; (= *when*), cum.
ashamed (be), pudet, 2 (415).
Asia, Asia, -ae, F.
ask of, quaerō, 3.
assemble, conveniō, 4.
at, in, *w. acc. or abl.;* ad, *w. acc.;* apud, *w. acc.; in combination w. verbs (wonder at, etc.), see the verbs; w. names of towns, locative case* (334).
Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -e.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, F.
attentively, dīligenter.
author, auctor, -ōris, M.
away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.
away from, ā *or* ab, *w. abl.;* ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*

back (bring or **carry)**, referō (321); reportō, 1.
bad, malus, -a, -um; improbus, -a, -um.
basely, turpiter.
battle, pūgna, -ae, F.; proelium, -ī, N.
be, sum (73).
bear, ferō (321); vehō, 3; tolerō, 1; **(off)**, auferō.
beast, bēstia, -ae, F.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
beauty, pulchritūdō, -inis, F.
because, quod, quia.
become, fiō (327); **it becomes**, decet, 2 (415).
beg, petō, 3; ōrō, 1.
begin, incipiō, 3; ōrdior, 4.
believe, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*
benefit, *n.*, beneficium, -ī, N.
benefit, *v.*, prōsum (293), *w. dat.*
besiege, obsideō, 2; oppūgnō, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, -us, *comp. of* bonus (208).
between, inter, *w. acc.*
big, māgnus, -a, -um.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, F. (154).
black, niger, -gra, -grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.
blame, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
blood, sanguis, -inis, M.; cruor, -ōris, M.
boar, aper, aprī, M.
boat, nāvicula, -ae, F.; cymba, -ae, F.
body, corpus, -oris, N.
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audācter.
book, liber, -brī, M.
booty, praeda, -ae, F.
born (be), nāscor, 3.
Boston, Bostonia, -ae, F.
both (= *each of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque (200); **both . . . and**, et . . . et.
bow, arcus, -ūs, M. (247).
boy, puer, -erī, M.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, F.
break, frangō, 3; **(through)** perfringō, 3.
breeze, ventus, -ī, M.; aura, -ae, F.
bribe, corrumpō, 3.
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, portō, 1; ferō (321); **(up)**, ēducō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brook, rīvus, -ī, M.

Digitized by Google

brother, frāter, -tris, M.
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, M.
build, aedificō, 1.
burden, onus, -eris, N.
but, at, autem, sed; (393); **(that)**, quīn.
buy, emō, 3.
by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*; (*denoting means or instrument*), *abl. alone.*

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, M.
call, nōminō, 1; appellō, 1; vocō, 1.
calm, aequus, -a, -um; placidus, -a, -um.
camp, castra, -ōrum, N.
Campania, Campānia, -ae, F.
can, possum (292).
care, cūra, -ae, F.
carefully, dīligenter; cum cūrā (144).
carry, portō, 1; ferō (321); **(back)**, referō; **carry on war**, bellum gerere.
cart, carrus, -ī, M.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, F.
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, M.
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quid(quod)dam (279.5); (= *sure*), certus, -a, -um.
chance, fors, -tis, F.; cāsus, -ūs, M.
change, mūtō, 1.
cherish, colō, 3.
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, M.
children, puerī, -ōrum, M. (60); līberī, -ōrum, M. (60).
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, M.
Cimbri, Cimbrī, -ōrum, M.
circumstance, rēs, reī, F.
citadel, arx, arcis, F.
citizen, cīvis, -is, M. *and* F. (154).
city, urbs, -is, F.
clerk, scrība, -ae, M.
cliff, rūpēs, -is, F.
clothe, vestiō, 4.
cold, *adj.*, frīgidus, -a, -um.
cold, *n.*, frīgus, -oris, N.
Collatinus, Collatīnus, -ī, M.
come, veniō, 4; **(down)**, dēscendō, 3; **(out)**, ēgredior, 3; **(together)**, conveniō, 4; **(off)**, abeō (327).
coming, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, M.
command, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; jubeō, 2, *w. acc.*; praesum, *w. dat.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.; dux, ducis, M.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.
companion, comes, -itis, M. *and* F.
compel, cōgō, 3.
comrade, comes, -itis, M. *and* F.
condemn, damnō, 1.
conquer, superō, 1 (186); vincō, 3 (186).
consul, cōnsul, -is, M.
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, M.
contemplate, contemplor, 1.
contented, contentus, -a, -um, *w. abl.*
converse, colloquor, 3.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, F.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
correct, corrigō, 3.
counsel, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
country (= *fatherland*), patria, -ae, F.; (= *not city*), rūs, rūris, N.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
covered with leaves, frondōsus, -a, -um.
cowardice, īgnāvia, -ae, F.
cowardly, īgnāvus, -a, -um.
create, creō, 1.
creator, creātor, -ōris, M.
cross, *tr.*, trānscendō, 3; *tr. and intr.*, trānseō (327).
cruelly, crūdēliter.
cultivate, colō, 3.
Cumae, Cūmae, -ārum, F.
cunning, *n.*, calliditās, -ātis, F.

Digitized by Google

cup, pōculum, -ī, N.
Cyrus, Cȳrus, -ī, M.

Dædalus, Daedalus, -ī, M.
daily, cotīdiē.
danger, perīculum, -ī, N.
daughter, filia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, -ēī, M. *and* F. (254).
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, -tis, F.
deep, altus, -a, -um; profundus, -a, -um.
defeat, *n.*, clādēs, -is, F.
defeat, *v.*, vincō, 3 (186); superō, 1 (186).
defend, dēfendō, 3.
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.
delay, mora, -ae, F.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
deliver, dēferō (321).
demand restitution, rēs repetō, 3.
Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is.
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō (327).
deprive, prīvō, 1, *w. abl.*
descend, dēscendō, 3.
desert, dēserō, 3.
deserve, mereō, mereor, 2.
design, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
desire, volō (316, 319); dēsīderō, 1 (319); cupiō, 3.
despair, dēspērō, 1.
despise, contemnō, 3.
destroy, dēleō, 2.
difficult, difficilis, -e (207).
difficulty (with), vix.
diligently, diligenter.
discharge, fungor, 3, *w. abl.*
disclose, ēnūntiō, 1.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disgusted (be), piget, 2 (416).
divide, dīvidō, 3; (= *share*), partior, 4.
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.
dog, canis, -is, M. *and* F.
doubt, *n.*, dubium, -ī, N.
doubt, *v.*, dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, F.
down (tear), rescindō, 3; **(come)**, dēscendō, 3.
draw, trahō, 3; **(up)**, subdūcō, 3.
drink, bibō, 3.
drive, agō, 3; **(off)**, submoveō, 2.
duty, officium, -ī, N.
dwell, habitō, 1 (194); vīvō, 3 (194).

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid(quod)que (279. 4); **(of two)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque (200).
eagle, aquila, -ae, F.
earth, terra, -ae, F.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e (207).
eat, edō, 3.
egg, ōvum, -ī, N.
eight, octō.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elegant, ēlegāns, -antis.
elephant, elephantus, -ī, M.
else, alius, -a, -ud (201).
embark, cōnscendō, 3.
employ, admoveō, 2; ūtor, 3, *w. abl.*
encircle, cingō, 3.
end, *n.*, fīnis, -is, M. (154).
end, *v.*, fīniō, 4.
endurance, fortitūdō, -inis, F.
endure, patior, 3; ferō (321); tolerō, 1.
enemy, hostis, -is, M. *and* F. (172); inimīcus, -ī, M. (172).
enjoy, fruor, 3, *w. abl.*
Ennius, Ennius, -ī, M.
enough, satis.
enter, ingredior, 3; ineō (327).

Digitized by Google

entertain the hope, veniō in spem.
entreaty, precēs, -um, F.
Epirus, Ēpīrus, -ī, F.
equally, pariter.
equanimity, aequus animus, M.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, F.
even, etiam; ipse (270. 6).
evident (it is), cōnstat, 1.
excellently, optimē.
explain, explicō, 1.
expulsion, *P. of* expellō.
eye, oculus, -ī, M.

Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, M.
fact, rēs, reī, F.
fail, dēficiō, 3; dēsum (297).
fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
faithful, fidus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e.
faithfully, fidēliter.
Faliscans, Faliscī, -ōrum, M.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far and wide, longē lātēque.
farmer, agricola, -ae, M.
father, pater, -tris, M.
father-in-law, socer, -erī, M.
fault, vitium, -ī, N.; culpa, -ae, F.; **find fault with**, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
favor, faveō, 2, *w. dat.*
fear, *n.*, metus, -ūs, M.
fear, *v.*, timeō, 2; metuō, 3.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, F.
field, ager, agrī, M.
fierce, atrōx, -ōcis; ferōx, -ōcis.
fiftieth, quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, pūgnō, 1; dīmicō, 1.
fill, impleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum; compleō, 2.
finally, dēnique.
find, reperiō, 4; inveniō, 4.
finger, digitus, -ī, M.
finish, fīniō, 4; cōnficiō, 3.
fire, ignis, -is, M.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
fit, aptō, 1.
five, quīnque.
five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.
flee, fugiō, 3.
fleet, classis, -is, F. (154).
flight, fuga, -ae, F.
flock, grex, gregis, F.
flow, fluō, 3.
flower, flōs, flōris, M.
fodder, pābulum, -ī, N.
follow, sequor, 3.
folly, stultitia, -ae, F.
food, cibus, -ī, M.
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, M.
for, *conj.*, nam, enim (*not the first word*).
for, *sign of dative; prep.*, dē, prō, *w. abl.; of time, space, purpose*, in, *w. acc.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F.
forget, oblīviscor, 3.
forgetful, oblītus, -a, um.
former (the), ille (275. 5).
forth (go), exeō (327); ēgredior, 3.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, F.
forty, quadrāgintā.
forum, forum, -ī, N.
forward (go), prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3.
foully, turpiter.
fourteen, quattuordecim.
fourth, quartus, -a, -um.
free, līber, -era, -erum (71).
free from, līberō, 1, *w. abl.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
frighten, terreō, 2.
frog, rāna, -ae, F.
from, dē, *w. abl.*; (= *away from*), ā *or* ab, *w. abl.*; (= *out of*), ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*; (**afar**), longē.

Digitized by Google

fruit, frūctus, -ūs, M.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.
furnish, praebeō, 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, M.
game, lūdus, -ī, M.
garden, hortus, -ī, M.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F.
Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, M.
general, dux, ducis, M. *and* F.; imperātor, -ōris, M.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, M.
get, adipīscor, 3; (**possession**), potior, 4, *w. abl.*; (**by lot**), sortior, 4.
gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
girl, puella, -ae, F.
give, dō, 1.
glory, glōria, -ae, F.
go, eō (327); (**forth** or **out**), exeō; (**off** or **away**), abeō; discēdō, 3; (**down**), dēscendō, 3.
God, Deus, -ī, M. (262).
goddess, dea, -ae, F.
gold, aurum, -ī, N.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um (71, 208).
good thing, bonum, -ī, N.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
great, māgnus, -a, -um.
greatly, māximē.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, F.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
guard, *n.*, custōs, -ōdis, M. *and* F.
guard, *v.*, custōdiō, 4.

hand, manus, -ūs, F.
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, M.
happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlīx, -īcis.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um; (= *difficult*), difficilis, -e.
hasten, contendō, 3.
haughtily, superbē.
have, habeō, 2.
he, is (270); hīc, ille (275).
head, caput, -itis, N.; **be at the head of**, praesum (297).
headlong, praeceps, -cipitis.
hear, audiō (223).
heart, cor, cordis, N.
heat, calor, -ōris, M.
heaven, caelum, -ī, N.
heavy, gravis, -e.
Hector, Hector, -oris, M.
hero, vir, virī, M. (262).
hesitate, dubitō, 1; cunctor, 1.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, M. (154).
himself, *see* self.
his, ējus (270); illīus (275); (**own**), suus, -a, -um.
history, historia, -ae, F.
hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2.
home, domicilium, -ī, N.; domus, -ūs, F. (262).
Homer, Homērus, -ī, M.
honor, *n.*, honestās, -ātis, F.
honor, *v.*, honōrō, 1.
hope, spēs, -eī, F.
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, M.
horn, cornū, -ūs, N.
horse, equus, -ī, M.
horseback (**ride**), in equō vehī; equitō, 1.
horseman, **horse-soldier**, eques, -itis, M.
hour, hōra, -ae, F.
house, domus, -ūs, F. (262).
how, quam; (**many**), quot.
huge, māgnus, -a, -um; immānis, -e; ingens, -entis.
human, hūmānus, -a, -um.
hundred, centum.
hunger, famēs, -is, F.
hunter, vēnātor, -ōris, M.
hurl, coniciō, 3.
hurtful (**be**), noceō, 2, *w. dat.*
hustle, exturbō, 1.

Digitized by Google

I, ego (264).
Icarus, Īcarus, -ī, M.
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.
ignorant (be), nesciō, 4; īgnōrō.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
imitate, imitor, 1.
immediately, statim.
in, in, *w. abl.*
increase, augeō, 2.
inhabit, habitō, 1; incolō, 3.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, M. *and* F.
injure, noceō, 2; obsum; *w. dat.*
instruct, ērudiō, 4; doceō, 2.
intend, in animō est, *w. dat.*
into, in, *w. acc.*
invite, invītō, 1.
iron (of), ferreus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, F.
it, is, ea, id (270).
Italian, Italus, -ī, M.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, F.
itself, *see* self.

Janus, Jānus, -ī, M.
javelin, pīlum, -ī, N.
jewel, ōrnāmentum, -ī, N.
joy, gaudium, -ī, N.
judge, jūdex, -icis, M. (105).
judgment, jūdicium, -ī, N.
Julius, Jūlius, -ī, M.
Jupiter, Juppiter, Jovis, M. (262).
justly, jūstē.

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
keep off, arceō, 2.
kill, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occīdō, 3.
kind, benīgnus, -a, -um.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.; imperium, -ī, N.
knife, culter, -trī, M.
know, know how, sciō, 4.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

labor, labor, -ōris, M.
lack, dēsum (297).
Lævinus, Laevīnus, -ī, M.
lake, lacus, -ūs, M. (247).
land, ager, agrī, M.; terra, -ae, F.
language, lingua, -ae, F.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, suprēmus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
latter (the), hīc, haec, hōc (275. 5.)
laugh, rideō, 2; **(at)**, irrideō, 2; **(aloud)**, cachinnō, 1.
law, lex, lēgis, F.
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lead, dūcō, 3; **(out)**, ēdūcō, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, M. *and* F.
leaf, folium, -ī, N.
leap over, trānsiliō, 4.
learn, discō, 3.
leg, crūs, crūris, N.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
lesson, pēnsum, -ī, N.
let, *sign of subj. or imperative.*
letter, epistula, -ae, F.; litterae, -ārum, F.
levy, dēlectus, -ūs, M.
life, vīta, -ae, F.
light, *adj.*, levis, -e (150).
light, *n.*, lūx, lūcis, F.; lūmen, -inis, N.
like, amō, 1.
likeness, imāgō, -inis, F.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, F.
lion, leō, -ōnis, M. (134).
listen, audiō, 4 (223).
literature, litterae, -ārum, F.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vīvō, 3 (194); habitō, 1 (194).
long, longus, -a, -um; **a long time**, diū.
longer (no), jam, *w. negative.*
look at, spectō, 1.
lose, āmittō, 3; perdō, 3.

Digitized by Google

lot (obtain by), sortior, 4.
loud (laugh out), cachinnō, 1.
love, amō, 1 (319).
low, humilis, -e.
lucky, fēlīx, -īcis.

maiden, puella, -ae, F.
make, faciō, 3; **(trial of)**, experior, 4.
man, vir, virī, M. (138, 262); homō, -inis, M. (138).
Manlius, Manlius, -ī, M.
manner, mōs, mōris, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -ī, M.
marshal, īnstruō, 3.
master, dominus, -ī, M.; magister, -trī, M.
may, licet, *w. dat.*
means (by means of), *use abl.*
meet, obeō (327); **go to meet**, obviam eō, *w. dat.*
memory, memoria, -ae, F.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
migrate, migrō, 1.
mind, animus, -ī, M. (273); mēns, mentis, F. (273).
mindful, memor, -oris (150).
mine, meus, -a, -um (266).
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, F.
miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
miss, dēsīderō, 1.
Mithridates, Mithridātēs, -is, M.
modesty, modestia, -ae, F.
month, mēnsis, -is, M.
monument, monumentum, -ī, N.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
more, plūs (208), magis.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (208).
mother, māter, -tris, F.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um (208).
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, F.
must, oportet, 2; *gerundive.*
my, meus, -a, -um (266).

name, nōmen, -inis, N.
nation, gēns, gentis, F.
native land, patria, -ae, F.
near, prope, *w. acc.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, M.
never, nunquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, F.
nightingale, luscinia, -ae, F.
ninety, nōnāgintā.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, M. *and* F. (286); **that no one** (*neg. purpose*), nē quis.
no longer, jam, *w. negative.*
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
nourish, alō, 3; nūtriō, 4.
now, nunc, jam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, M.
number, numerus, -ī, M.
nurture, nūtriō, 4.

oak, quercus, -ūs, F.
obey, pāreō, 2, *w. dat.*
obtain, adipīscor, 3; potior, 4, *w. abl.*; **(by lot)**, sortior, 4.
ocean, ōceanus, -ī, M.
of, *sign of genitive;* dē, *w. abl.*; **out of**, ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*
offer, prōpōnō, 3; offerō (321); praebeō, 2.
often, saepe.
old, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (141); **(man)**, senex, -is (262); **(age)**, senectūs, -ūtis, F.
on, in, *w. abl.*; (*of time*), *abl.*

Digitized by Google

one, ūnus, -a, -um (200); **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.
open, *adj.*, patēns, -entis.
open, *v.*, aperiō, 4.
opinion, jūdicium, -I, N.
oppose, obsistō, 3, *w. dat.*
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, M.
order (in order to), ut, *w. subj.*
order, *v.*, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; jubeō, 2, *w. acc.*
other, alius, -a, -ud (201); **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī; (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2 (415); *gerundive.*
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, *see* self.
out, *in combination w. verbs* (**lead out**, *etc.*), *see the verbs.*
out of, ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*
over, *in combination w. verbs* (**leap over**, *etc.*), *see the verbs.*
overcome, vincō, 3 (186); superō, 1 (186).
owe, dēbeō, 2.
own, proprius, -a, -um; (**his, her, their**), suus, -a, -um; (**my**), meus, -a, -um; (**our**), noster, -tra, -trum; (**your**), vester, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), tuus, -a, -um.

pain, dolor, -ōris, M.
parent, parēns, -entis, M. *and* F.
part, pars, partis, F.
pass (narrow), angustiae, -ārum, F.
pass by, praetereō (327).
patience (with), patienter; cum patientiā (144).
patiently, patienter.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -I, M.; (**common**), plēbs, -is, F.
peril, perīculum, -I, N.
perish, pereō (327).
Persians, Persae, -ārum, M.
physician, medicus, -I, M.
place, *n.*, locus, -I, M., *in plur.* M. *and* N.
place, *v.*, pōnō, 3.
plain, planitiēs, -ēī, F.
plan, cōnsilium, -I, N.
pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, F.; (**with**), libenter.
pledge, fidēs, -eī, F.
plough, *n.*, arātrum, -I, N.
plough, *v.*, arō, 1.
poem, poēma, -atis, N.
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
point (be on the), *see* 422.
Polyphemus, Polyphēmus, -I, M.
Pompey, Pompējus, Pompēī, M.
poor, miser, -era, -erum; pauper, -eris (167. 3).
possess, habeō, 2; potior, 4, *w. abl.*
possession (get possession of), potior, 4, *w. abl.*; adipīscor, 3.
postpone, differō (321).
power, imperium, -I, N.
praise, *n.*, laus, laudis, F.
praise, *v.*, laudō, 1.
precept, praeceptum, -I, N.
prefer, mālō (316).
present (be), adsum, *w. dat.*
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
prevent, prohibeō, 2.
prisoner, captīvus, -I, M.; captīva, -ae, F.
proceed, prōcēdō, 3.
proclamation (make), ēdīcō, 3.
promise, polliceor, 2; prōmittō, 3.
property, bona, -ōrum, N.
proud, superbus, -a, -um.
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.

Digitized by Google

prow, rōstrum, -ī, N.
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, F.
punish, pūniō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, F.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, M.
purpose (for the purpose of), ut *or* quī, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund or gerundive; supine.*
put (to flight), fugō, 1; **(off)**, differō (321); **(by)**, dēpōnō, 3; **(an end to)**, fīniō, 4.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, M.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, F.
quickly, celeriter.

raise, tollō, 3; levō, 1.
rather (wish), mālō (316).
read, legō, 3; **(aloud)**, recitō, 1.
receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3.
recite, recitō, 1.
recognize, āgnōscō, 3.
red, ruber, -bra, -brum.
refresh, recreō, 1.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, M.
reign, rēgnō, 1.
relate, trādō, 3; nārrō, 1.
relieve, līberō, 1, *w. abl.*
remain, maneō, 2; restō, 1.
remember, memoriā teneō.
remove (= *emigrate*), dēmigrō, 1.
Remus, Remus, -ī, M.
render aid, auxilium ferō (321).
renown, fāma, -ae, F.
renowned, amplus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um.
report, nūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.
respect, vereor, 2.
respects (in all), omnibus rēbus.
rest (the), cēterī, -ae, -a.
restitution (demand), rēs repetō, 3.
restrain, coerceō, 2.
results (it), fit (327).
retain, retineō, 2.
retreat, sē recipiō, 3.
return, redeō (327).
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, M.
rich, dīves, -itis (167. 3).
ride, *pass. of* vehō, 3; equitō, 1.
rightly, rēctē.
rise, orior, 4.
river, amnis, -is, M. (172); fluvius, -ī, M. (172); flūmen, -inis, N. (172).
road, via, -ae, F.
rob, spoliō, 1; prīvō, 1; *w. abl.*
robber, latrō, -ōnis, M.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
rose, rosa, -ae, F.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
ruddy, ruber, -bra, -brum.
rule, regō, 3 (180); rēgnō, 1.

sad, trīstis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sagacious, prūdēns, -entis.
sail, *pass. of* vehō, 3; nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
sake (for the sake), causā, *w. gen.*
Sallust, Sallustius, -ī, M.
same, īdem, eadem, idem (270).
Samnite, Samnīs, -ītis.
Saturn, Sāturnus, -ī, M.
save, servō, 1.
say, dīcō, 3; **keep saying**, dictitō, 1.
scare, terreō, 2.
school, schola, -ae, F.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, M.
sea, mare, -is, N.

Digitized by Google

second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō, 2; (**through**), perspiciō, 3.
seek, petō, 3; quaerō, 3.
seem, videor, 2.
seize, rapiō, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um (270); suī (264).
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
send, mittō, 3; (**back**), remittō, 3.
September, September, -bris, M.
servant, minister, -trī, M. (66); servus, -ī, M. (66).
set out, proficīscor, 3.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
share, partior, 4.
sharply, ācriter.
she, ea, ējus, F.
sheep, ovis, -is, F.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, M.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, -is, F. (154).
shore, lītus, -oris, N.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, M.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum (71).
side, latus, -eris, N.
signal, sīgnum, -ī, N.
silent (be), taceō, 2.
since, cum, *w. subj.*
sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1.
sister, soror, -ōris, F.
sit, sedeō, 2.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
skilful, perītus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -ī, M. (66).
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, F.
slay, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occīdō, 3.
sleep, *n.*, somnus, -ī, M.
sleep, *v.*, dormiō, 4.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smith, faber, -brī, M.
Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, M.
soldier, mīles, -itis, M.
Solon, Solōn, -ōnis, M.
some one, aliquis, -qua, (-quid) -quod (279. 2); quīdam, quaedam, quod(quid)dam (279. 5); **some . . . others**, alii . . . aliī; (*of two parties*), alterī . . . alterī; *often not expressed.*
something, aliquid.
son, fīlius, -ī, M.
song, cantus, -ūs, M.; carmen, -inis, N. (278).
son-in-law, gener, -erī, M.
soon, mox.
soothe, molliō, 4.
source, fōns, fontis, M.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
spare, parcō, 3, *w. dat.*
speak, loquor, 3; dīcō, 3; **speak to**, alloquor, 3.
spear, hasta, -ae, F.
spiritedly, ācriter.
spring, fōns, fontis, M.
spy, explōrātor, -ōris, M.
stab, trānsfīgō, 3.
stain, maculō, 1.
star, stella, -ae, F. (301).
start (= *set out*), proficīscor, 3.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, F.
statue, statua, -ae, F.
step, gradus, -ūs, M. (245).
story, fābula, -ae, F.
street, via, -ae, F.
strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
study, *n.*, studium, -ī, N.
study, *v.*, studeō, 2, *w. dat.*
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
successfully, optimē, fēlīciter.
suddenly, imprōvīsō.
suffer, patior, 3; tolerō, 1; sufferō (321).
suitable, opportūnus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, F.

Digitized by Google

summon, invītō, 1.
sun, sōl, sōlis, M.
surpass, superō, 1 (186); vincō, 3 (186).
surrender, dēdō, 3.
surround, cingō, 3; circumveniō, 4.
survive, supersum (297).
swear, jūrō, 1.
sweet, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -e.
swift, vēlōx, -ōcis (179); celer, -eris, -ere (179).
sword, gladius, -ī, M.

table, mēnsa, -ae, F.
tail, cauda, -ae, F.
take, capiō, 3; sūmō, 3; **take a walk**, ambulō, 1.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarentine, Tarentīnus, -ī, M.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, M.
task, pēnsum, -ī, N.
teach, doceō, 2.
teacher, magister, -trī, M.; praeceptor, -ōris, M.
tear down, rescindō, 3.
tedious, longus, -a, -um.
tell, nārrō, 1; dīcō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, N.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreō, 2.
terror, terror, -ōris, M.
than, quam; *abl.* (212).
that, *conj.* (*in purpose or result clauses*), ut; (*after verbs of fearing*), nē; (**not**), nē; (*after expressions of doubt*), quīn; (*after verbs of saying and the like*), *not translated.*
that, *pron.* (*determ.*), is, ea, id (270); (*dem.*), ille, -a, -ud (275); iste, -a, -ud (275); (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod (279).
their, *gen. plur. of* is; (**own**), suus, -a, -um.
themselves, *see* self.
then, tum, deinde.
there, ibi; *as an expletive, not translated.*
thing, rēs, -eī, F.
think, arbitror, 1 (429); putō, 1 (429).
thirst, sitis, -is, F. (154).
thirty, trīgintā.
this, *determ.*, is, ea, id (270); *dem.*, hīc, haec, hōc (275).
thou, tū.
though, cum, *w. subj.*
thousand, mille (311. 6).
three, trēs, tria (311. 4).
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per, *w. acc.*
throw, jaciō, 3; coniciō, 3.
thrust forth, exturbō, 1.
time, tempus, -oris, N.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, *sign of dative;* ad, in, *w. acc.;* (*expressing purpose*), ut, *w. subj.;* ad, *w. gerund or gerundive; supine.*
to-day, hodiē.
together with, cum, *w. abl.*
toil, labōrō, 1.
to-morrow, crās.
too, quoque; (**much**), nimium.
touch, tangō, 3.
towards, ad, in, *w. acc.*
tower, turris, -is, F. (149).
town, oppidum, -ī, N.
townsman, oppidānus, -ī, M.
train, exerceō, 2.
tree, arbor, -oris, F.
trial (**make**), experior, 4.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.
truth, vērum, -ī, N.
try, experior, 4; cōnor, 1.

Digitized by Google

turn, convertō, 3; (**from**), āvertō, 3; (**out**), ēveniō, 4.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, -ae, -o (311. 4); (**which of**), uter, -tra, -trum; (**each of**), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, M.

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
undertake, suscipiō, 3; cōnor, 1.
unwilling (**be**), nōlō (316).
up, *in combination w. verbs* (**draw up**, *etc.*), *see the verbs.*
upon, in, *w. acc. or abl.*
use, ūtor, 3, *w. abl.*
useful, ūtilis, -e.

vain (**in**), frūstrā.
valley, vallis (*or* vallēs), -is, F.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
very, *superl. degree;* admodum.
victorious, victor, -ōris, M.
victory, victōria, -ae, F.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

wage (**war**), gerō, 3.
wagon, carrus, -ī, M.
walk (= *take a walk*), ambulō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
wander, vagor, 1.
want (= *lack*), careō, 2.
want (= *wish*), volō (316); dēsīderō, 1.
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warn, moneō, 2.
watch, vigilō, 1.
watchful, vigil, -is (151. 4).
water, aqua, -ae, F.
way, via, -ae, F.; (= *respect*), rēs, reī, F.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.
weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
weep, fleō, 2.
welcome, excipiō, 3.
well, bene.
well (**be**), valeō, 2.
what, *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid (quod) (279); (= *that which*), id quod.
when, cum.
whether, num, utrum.
which, quī, quae, quod (279); (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum (200).
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um; candidus, -a, -um.
who, *rel.*, quī, quae; *interrog.*, quis, quae (279).
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (200).
why, cūr.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, F.
wild, ferus, -a, -um.
wild beast, fera, -ae, F.
wind, ventus, -ī, M.
wine, vīnum, -ī, N.
wing, āla, -ae, F.
winter, hiems, -is, F.
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō (316).
with, cum, *w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.*
without, sine, *w. abl.*
witness, spectō, 1.
wonder, mīror, 1; (**at**), admīror, 1.
wooden, līgneus, -a, -um.
woods, silva, -ae, F.
word, verbum, -ī, N.
work, *n.*, labor, -ōris, M.; opus, -eris, N.
work, *v.*, labōrō, 1.
world, mundus, -ī, M.
worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
would rather, mālō (316).
would that, utinam.

Digitized by Google

wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, N.
wound, *v.*, vulnerō, 1.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, 3.
writing, scrīptum, -I, N.
wrong, injūria, -ae, F.

year, annus, -I, M.
yesterday, herī.
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (275. 3).
you, *sing.*, tū; *plur.*, vōs.
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, M.; juvenis, -is, M.
your, *sing.*, tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*, vester, -tra, -trum.

Zama, Zama, -ae, F.
zeal, studium, -I, N.

Digitized by Google

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM

ablative, ablātīvus, -ī, M.; (*of instrument*) īnstrūmentī; (*of agent*) agentis; (*of manner*) modī; (*of specification*) respectūs; (*of separation*) sēparātiōnis; (*of description*) quālitātis.
absolute, absolūtus, -a, -um.
accent, accentus, -ūs, M.
accusative, accūsātīvus, -ī, M.
active, āctīvus, -a, -um.
adjective, adjectīvum, -ī, N.
adverb, adverbium, -ī, N.
agent, agēns, -entis, M.
agree, congruō, 3, *w. abl.*; concordō, 1.
agreement, concordātiō, -ōnis, F.
alphabet, alphabētum, -ī, N.
answer, *n.*, respōnsum, -ī, N.
answer, *v.*, respondeō, 2.
antecedent, antecēdēns, -entis, N.
apposition, appositiō, -ōnis, F.; **(be in)**, *pass. of* appōnō, 3.

cardinal, cardinālis, -e.
case, cāsus, -ūs, M.
clause, clausula, -ae, F.
common or **appellative**, appellātīvus, -a, -um.
comparative, comparātīvus, -a, -um.
comparison, comparātiō, -ōnis, F.
compound, compositus, -a, -um.
concessive, concessīvus, -a, -um.
condition, hypothesis, -is, F.; conditiō, -ōnis, F.
conditional, hypotheticus, -a, -um; conditiōnālis, -e.
conjugation, conjugātiō, -ōnis, F.
conjunction, conjūnctiō, -ōnis, F.
consonant, littera cōnsonāns, -antis, *or* cōnsonāns, -antis, F.
construction, cōnstrūctiō, -ōnis, F.
conversation, colloquium, -ī, N.
correct, *adj.*, rēctus, -a, -um.
correct, *v.*, corrigō, 3; ēmendō, 1.
correctly, rēctē.

dative, datīvus, -ī, M.
declension, dēclīnātiō, -ōnis, F.
declinable, dēclīnābilis, -e.
decline, dēclīnō, 1.
defective, dēfectīvus, -a, -um.
degree, gradus, -ūs, M.
demonstrative, dēmōnstrātīvus, -a, -um.
deponent, dēpōnēns, -entis.
derive, trahō, 3.
description (*abl. of*), quālitās, -ātis, F.
determinative, dēfīnītus, -a, -um.
difference, discrīmen, -inis, N.
diminutive, dēminutīvum, -ī, N.
diphthong, diphthongus, -ī, M.
direct, dirēctus, -a, -um; rēctus, -a, -um.
discourse, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
discuss, trāctō, 1.

Digitized by Google

dissyllable, dissyllabus, -ī, M.
distributive, distribūtīvus, -a, -um.

end, *v.*, dēsinō, 3.
English, Anglicus, -a, -um.
English (in), Anglicē.
etymology, etymologia, -ae, F.
example, exemplum, -ī, N.; **(for)**, ut; exemplī causā.
exception, exceptiō, -ōnis, F.

feminine, fēmininus, -a, -um.
finite, fīnītus, -a, -um.
formation, formātiō, -ōnis, F.
future, futūrum, -ī, N.
future perfect, futūrum exāctum.

gender, genus, -eris, N.
genitive, genetīvus, -ī, M.
gerund, gerundium, -ī, N.
gerundive, gerundīvum, -ī, N.
govern, regō; *pass. of* jungō *or* conjungō, *foll. by* cum *w. abl.*
grammar, grammatica, -ae, F.

imperative, modus imperātīvus *or* imperātīvus, -ī, M.
imperfect, imperfectum, -ī, N.
impersonal, impersōnālis, -e.
increase, crēscō, 3.
indeclinable, indēclīnābilis, -e.
indicative, modus indicātīvus, *or* indicātīvus, -ī, M.
indirect, indirēctus, -a, -um; oblīquus, -a, -um.
infinitive, modus īnfīnītīvus *or* īnfīnītīvus, -ī, M.
instrument, īnstrūmentum, -ī, N.
interjection, interjectiō, -ōnis, F.
interrogative, interrogātīvus, -a, -um.
intransitive, intrānsitīvus, -a, -um.
irregular, irrēgulāris, -e; anōmalus, -a, -um.

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
Latin (in), Latīnē.
lesson, pēnsum, -ī, N.
letter, littera, -ae, F.
limit, *v.*, limitō, 1.
liquid, liquidus, -a, -um.
locative, locātīvus, -ī, M.
long, longus, -a, -um; prōductus, -a, -um.

manner, modus, -ī, M.
masculine, masculīnus, -a, -um.
mean, sīgnificō, 1.
meaning, sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, F.
mistake, *n.*, error, -ōris, M.
mistake, *v.*, errō, 1.
monosyllable, monosyllabum, -ī, N.
mood, modus, -ī, M.
mute, mūtus, -a, -um.

negative, negātīvus, -a, -um.
neuter, neuter, -tra, -trum.
nominative, nōminātīvus, -ī, M.
noun, nōmen, -inis, N.; substantīvum, -ī, N.
numeral, numerālis, -e.

object, objectum, -ī, N.
ordinal, ordinālis, -e.

paradigm, paradīgma, -atis, N.
participle, participium, -ī, N.
particle, particula, -ae, F.
partitive, partītīvus, -a, -um.
passive, passīvus, -a, -um.
perfect, perfectum, -ī, N.
person, persōna, -ae, F.
personal, persōnālis, -e.
phrase, phrasis, -is, F.
pluperfect, plūsquamperfectum, -ī, N.
plural, plūrālis, -e.
positive, positīvus, -a, -um.

Digitized by Google

preposition, praepositiō, -ōnis, F.
present, praesēns, -entis, N.
principal, prīncipālis, -e.
pronoun, prōnōmen, -inis, N.
proper, proprius, -a, -um.

quantity, quantitās, -ātis, F.
question, interrogātiō, -ōnis, F.

reflexive, reciprocus, -a, -um; reflexīvus, -a, -um.
regular, rēgulāris, -e.
relative, relātīvus, -a, -um.
remember, memoriā teneō.
review, recōgnōscō, 3; (**lesson**), pēnsum recōgnōscendum, -i, N.
root, rādīx, -īcis, F.
rule, rēgula, -ae, F.

school, schola, -ae, F.
sentence, sententia, -ae, F.
separation, sēparātiō, -ōnis, F.
sequence, cōnsecutiō, -ōnis, F.
short, brevis, -e; correptus, -a, -um.
sibilant, sībilus, -a, -um.
singular, singulāris, -e.
sound, sonus, -i, M.
specification, respectus, -ūs, M.
speech (*part of*), ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
stem, basis, -is, F.
study, *n.*, studium, -i, N.
study, *v.*, studeō, 2.

subject, subjectum, -i, N.
subjunctive, modus subjunctīvus *or* subjunctīvus, -i, M.
substantive, substantīvum, -i, N.
substantively, substantīvē.
superlative, superlātīvus, -a, -um.
supine, supīnum, -i, N.
syllable, syllaba, -ae, F.
syntax, syntaxis, -is, F.

teacher, praeceptor, -ōris, M.; magister, -trī, M.; magistra, -ae, F.
tense, tempus, -oris, N.
termination, terminātiō, -ōnis, F.
transitive, trānsitīvus, -a, -um.
treat (= *discuss*), trāctō, 1.

verb, verbum, -i, N.
vocabulary, vōcābulārium, -i, N.
vocative, vōcātīvus, -i, M.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.; genus, -eris, N.
vowel, littera vōcālis *or* vōcālis, -is, F.

wish, optātiō, -ōnis, F.
word, verbum, -i, N.; vōcābulum, -i, N.; vōx, vōcis, F.

yes, certē, certissimē; vērō; etiam; sanē ita est, ista sunt; *verb of question repeated.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

INDEX

THE general vocabularies are to be used as an index to *words* (with some exceptions) for which reference is needed. Full-face figures refer to sections, not pages. A superior figure (*e.g.*, 10^{5}) indicates a footnote. Most abbreviations will readily be understood: **ff.** = and following; **imv.** = imperative.

A

Ā or **āb**, **61**, **62**.

ā-verbs, **86**.

ABBREVIATIONS beginning letters, **437**[1], **438**.

ABLATIVE, translation of, **14**[2], **59**[1]; of *agent*, **61**, **62**; of *means* or *instrument*, **90**, **91**; of *material*, **92**. II. 8[1]; of *separation*, **128–130**; of *time*, **135**, **136**; of *manner*, **144**, **145**; w. comparatives, **211**, **212**; of *specification*, **259**, **260**; w. **ūtor**, etc., **303**, **304**; w. preps., **333**; of *place*, **335**. 3; *descriptive*, **341**, p. 222[3,4]; *absolute*, **412**; abl. sing. of vowel stems in 3d decl., **151**. 2.

ABSTRACT NOUNS, **168**[1].

-ābus, in dat. and abl. plur., **19**[1].

ACCENT, **7**; before enclitics, **7**. (1).

ACCUSATIVE, *direct obj.*, **25**, **26**; *predicate*, **92**. I. 5[2], **93**. II. 7[4], **171**. II. 3[1], **250**. II. 4[3]; *two accs.*, **131**. I. 8[2], **197**. II. 10[3]; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, **305**, **306**; of *extent*, **312**, **313**; w. preps., **333**. 4; of *limit*, **334**, **335**. 2; w. inf., **400**, **401**: w. some impers. verbs, **415**. 3, 4, **416**.

AD, w. gerunds and gerundives, **432**. 3.

ADJECTIVES, of 1st and 2d decls., **44**, **71**; of 3d decl., **105**, **134**, **141**, **150**, **164**; irregular, **200**; comparison of, **205** ff.; poss. adj. prons., **266**; interrog., **279**. 3; numeral, **311**; agreement with nouns, **45**. II. 1[1], **53**, **54**; used as nouns, **117**; of one, two, or three terminations, **155**; agreement with understood subject, **197**. I. 8[6]; order w. prep. and noun, **64**. I. 7[1]; order w. gen. and noun, **124**. I. 6[3]; method of declining, **44**[2].

ADVERBS, formation of, **216** ff.; comparison of, **219**; numeral, **311**. 8.

AGENT, abl. of, **61**, **62**; dat. of, **425**. (5), **426**, **444**[4], cf. **428**. II. 9[6].

Aliquod as adj., **279**. 2.

ALPHABET, **1**.

AND, omitted, **57**. II. 6[3], **227**. II. 1[1], cf. p. 220[8]; inserted, **35**. II. 5[6,7], **50**. II. 8[4], **57**. I. 8[4].

ANTECEDENT of rel. pron., **280** ff.; omitted, **287**. I. 10[3], p. 221[10].

ANTEPENULT, **5**. 5.

Anything at all, **quidquam**, not **aliquid**, **279**. 6, **440**[11].

APPOSITION, **118**. I. 2[1], **157**, **158**, **197**. II. 8[7].

Augustus et Iūlus (Coll.), **9**.

Digitized by Google

B

Battle of Cannæ (for trans.), **339**, **378**.
Battle of Marathon (for trans.), **291**.

C

Cæsar's Gallic War, Bk. I, ch. 1–5 (for trans.), **448**.
Cardinal numerals, **311**.
Cases, names of, **10**; alike in form, **16**.
Cause, expressed by cum clause, **375**; by part., **409**. 7, **412**. 3.
Charōn et Mercurius (Coll.), **187**.
Cōgnōmen, **195**, **204**.
Collective nouns, **168**[2].
Colloquia, Augustus et Iūlus, **9**, **58**, **80**; Pater et Fīliolus, **95**, **222**, **302**; Frāter et Sorōrcula, **111**, **162**, **269**, **274**; Praeceptor et Discipulus, **126**, **133**, **195**, **204**, **234**, **261**; Magister et Discipulus, **139**; Duo Puerī, **148**; Father and Son, **173**; Charōn et Mercurius, **187**; Jacōbus et Augustus, **242**; Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus, **290**; Tityrus et Meliboeus, **332**; Jōhannēs et Jacōbus, **388**.
Commands and appeals, **391**.
Comparative degree, formation of, **206**. (1), **219**; with and without quam, **211**, **212**; trans. by *too*, p. 220[5].
Comparison of adjs., **205** ff.; of advs., **219**.
Compound tenses, **97**.
Concession, expressed by cum clause, **372**, **375**, p. 219[11]; by part., **409**. 4, **412**. 3.
Conditions, **383** ff.; expressed by part., **409**. 5, **412**. 3, p. 214[2].
Conjugations: 1st, **86** ff., **351** ff.; 2d, **112** ff., **351** ff.; review of 1st and 2d, **127** ff.; 3d, **180** ff., **357** ff.; review of 1st, 2d, and 3d, **196**, **197**; 4th, **223** ff., **357** ff.; 3d in *-iō*, **235** ff., **357** ff.; review of the four conjs., **240**, **241**; periphrastic, **422** ff.
Consonants, **3**; sounds of, **4**.
Consonant stems, **104**, **134**, **140**.
Cum, conj., temporal, causal, and concessive, **372** ff.
Cum, prep., w. mē, tē, etc., **265**. 3; w. abl. of manner, **144**, **145**.

D

Dative of *possessor*, **32**; *indirect obj.*, **31**. I. 7, 8, 9, II. 2, 6, 10, **33**, **34**; w. comps. of sum, **295**; of *service*, **291**[1], **296**. II. 7[3], **344**; w. certain verbs, **342**, **343**; of *service*, *double dative*, **344**; w. intransitives, **417**, **418**; of *agent*, **425**, **426**; not to be taken for abl., **184**. 6.
Death of the Pet Sparrow (for trans.), **421**.
Declension, paradigms of: 1st, **14**; 2d in *-us* and *-um*, **38**; in *-er*, **59**, **65**; adjs. of 1st and 2d, **71**; 3d, mute stems, **105**; liquid stems, **134**; sibilant stems, **140**, **141**; *i*-stems, **149**, **150**; mixed stems, **163–165**; comparatives, **209**; 4th, **245**; 5th, **254**; special, **262**; prons., **264**, **270**, **275**, **279**; duo and trēs, **311**. 4.
Definitions, sometimes not given in vocabs., **57**. I. 1[1].
Demonstrative pronouns, **275**.
Deponent verbs, 1st and 2d conjs., **298** ff.; 3d and 4th conjs., **303** ff.

Digitized by Google

DERIVATION, **345**.
DESCRIPTIVE abl. and gen., **341**; abl., p. 222[3,4].
DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS, **270**; used like adjs., **270**. 1.
Dīc, imv. of **dīcō**, p. 150[1].
DIPHTHONGS, **4**; quantity of, **6**. 2.
DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS, **311**. 8.
-dō, nouns in, **168**.
DOUBLE CONSONANTS, **3**.
DOUBLE DATIVE, **344**.
Dūc, imv. of **dūcō**, p. 150[1].
DUM w. pres. ind., **263**[13], **442**[10].
Duo Puerī (Coll.), **148**.

E

ē-verbs, **112**.
ĕ-verbs, **180**, **235**.
ENCLITICS, **7**. (1).
ENGLISH METHOD of pronunciation, **8**.
-er, nouns and adjs. of 2d decl. in, **67**; comparison of adjs. in, **206**. (1), (3).
-ēvī, perfects in, **119**[2].
EXTENT, accusative of, **312**, **313**.

F

FABLES (for trans.), **441–447**.
Fac, imv. of **faciō**, p. 150[1].
FATHER AND SON (Coll.), **173**.
FEMININE GENDER, **11**. 2. 4; in 1st decl., **13**; in 3d decl., **168**. 2; in 4th decl., **244**. 1; in 5th decl., **253**.
Fer, imv. of **ferō**, p. 150[1].
Ferō, compounds of, **322**.
FIFTH DECLENSION, **252** ff.
FIRST CONJUGATION, **86** ff., **351** ff.; first periphrastic conj., **442**.
FIRST DECLENSION, **12** ff., **52** ff.
FOURTH CONJUGATION, **223** ff., **357** ff.
FOURTH DECLENSION, **243** ff.
Frāter et Sorōrcula (Coll.), **111**, **162**, **269**, **274**.
FUTURE translated by Eng. pres., **116**. I. 1[3], **385**. 3[1]; fut. imv., **391**. (3); equivalent to imv., **438**[18].

G

GENDER, general rules of, **11**; in 1st decl., **13**; in 2d decl., **37**; in 3d decl., **168**; in 4th decl., **244**; in 5th decl., **253**. Agreement in, **45**. II. 1[1], **53**, **54**, **281**.
GENITIVE, like Eng. possessive, **30**. I. 6[1]; of nouns in *-ius* und *-ium*, **79**; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, **305**, **306**; *partitive*, **340**, **438**[17], **439**[5], **440**[12]; *descriptive*, **341**; w. certain impers. verbs, **415**. 3, 4, **416**; order w. adj. and noun, **124**. I. 6[3].
GERUND, **430–432**; nom. of, supplied by inf., **431**. 1.
GERUNDIVE, p. 34[2]; **423**, **432**; diff. between gerund and gerundive construction, **432**.
-gō, nouns in, **168**.

H

Hīc, demon. of 1st pers., **275**. 1; in contrast with **ille**, **275**. 5.
HISTORICAL TENSES, **347**; pres., **444**[8].
HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE, **390**, **391**.

I

i-stems, **149** ff.
ī-verbs, **223**.
Ille, demon. of 3d pers., **275**. 3; in contrast with **hīc**, **275**. 5.
IMPERATIVE, **389** ff.; not common in prohibitions, **391**. (2)[3].

Digitized by Google

IMPERFECT, denoting continuance, **115**. I. 5[2]; of customary action, **445**[12].
IMPERSONAL VERBS and verbs used impersonally, **415** ff., **425**. (4).
IN not always to be translated by in, **146**. I. 2[1], **185**. II. 7, **296**. II. 10[5].
In omitted, **291**[7].
INCREASE in the gen., **152**. 1[1].
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, **279**.
INDICATIVE in cond. sentences, **385**.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, **399** ff.
INDIRECT OBJECT, **31**. I. 7, 8, 9, II. 2, 6, 10, **33**, **34**.
INDIRECT QUESTIONS, **379** ff.
INFINITIVE as in Eng., **395** ff.; w. sub. acc., **399** ff.; tenses of, **402–403**; fut. pass., **402**[1], **405**. I. 2[1].
INSTRUMENT, abl. of, **90**, **91**.
INTERROGATIVE pronoun, **279**; adj., **279**. 3; advs., **380**. 1.
INTRANSITIVE VERBS used impersonally in the passive, **417**, **418**.
-iō, nouns in, **168**; verbs in, of 3d conj., **235**.
Ipse, distinguished from sē, **270**. 4. 5; how translated, **270**. 6.
IRREGULAR adjs., **200** ff.; verbs, **72** ff., **292** ff., **316** ff.
Is as pers. pron., **270**. 2; *this* or *that*, **275**. 6.
ISLANDS, names of, **334**[2].
IT, expletive, **35**. I. 1[1], **56**. I. 7[2].
-ium in gen. plur., **151**. 3.
-ius in gen. sing. of adjs., **200**.
-ius and -ium, gen. of nouns in, **79**; voc. of nouns in -ius, **79**.
-ivī, perfects in, often drop *v*, **231**. I. 9[1,2], **327**. 2.

J

Jacōbus et Augustus (Coll.), **242**.
Jōhannēs et Jacōbus (Coll.), **388**.

L

LETTERS (for trans.), **437–440**.
LIMIT, acc. of, **335**. 2[3].
LIQUIDS, **3**.
LIQUID STEMS, **134** ff.
-lis, superlative of adjs. in, **207**.
LOCATIVE, **10**. 3, **334**, **335**. 1; in 1st decl., **14**. 2; in 2d decl., **40**; in 3d decl., **175**.

M

Magister et Discipulus (Coll.), **139**.
MANNER, how expressed, **144**, **145**.
Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer (for trans.), **394**.
MASCULINE GENDER, **11**. 1. 3; in 2d decl., **37**; in 3d decl., **168**. 1; in 4th decl., **244**; in 5th decl., **253**.
MATERIAL, how expressed, **92**. II. 8[1].
MEANS, abl. of, **90**, **91**.
MIXED STEMS, **163** ff.
MOTION, verbs of, foll. by acc. with and without prep., **333–335**.
MUTES, **3**.
MUTE STEMS, **105** ff.

N

NARRATIVE SENTENCES, **372**. (3).
Nāsica et Ennius (for trans.), **407**.
Ne, enclitic, **7**. (1), **26**. 1[2], **51**. 3[3], **58**[6].
Nē, **358**, **369**, **391**. (1); omitted after cavē, p. 178[4].
NEUTER GENDER, **11**. 5; in 2d decl., **37**; in 3d decl., **168**. 3.
Nōlī in prohibitions, **391**. (1)[1].
Nōmen, **195**, **204**.
NOMINATIVE, sub., **24**; pred., **46**, **47**, **92**. I. 6[3], **93**. II. 6[3].
Nōnne, **51**. 3[3].

Digitized by Google

-ns, nouns in, **167**. 1.
Numeral adjs., **311**; advs., **311**. 8.

O

Ō, w. voc., **56**. II. 1[4].
Object, direct, **25**, **26**; indirect, **31**. I. 7, 8, 9, II. 2, 6, 10, **33**, **34**.
Of = because of, **330**. II. 2[3].
Omission of *my*, *thy*, *his*, etc., **100**; of ut, **438**[9], **446**[11]; of in, **291**[7]; of nē, p. 178[4]; of fore in trans., **426**. I. 4[4].
Order of words in sentence, **23**; **35**. 1; **56**. I. 10[3]; **64**. I. 7[1]; **69**. I. 10[1]; **77**. I. 5[5]; **93**. I. 9[2]; **124**. I. 6[3]; **202**. I. 6[5]; **215**[11]; quisque, **287**. I. 6[2]; ferē, **329**. I. 6[1]; **386**. I. 3[3]; **404**; **410**. II. 9[5]; **438**[10]; **440**[10]; **446**[7]; p. 216[3]; p. 217[6]; p. 219[13].
Ordinal numerals, **311**.
Ought, of past time, **419**. I. 8[3].

P

Participles, **408** ff.; in principal parts, **86**[1]; decl. of pres. act., **165**, **408**. 1, of perf. and fut., **408**. 2; perf. in comp. tenses as adj., **192**. I. 7[1], **404**. I. 4[1]; part. and verb trans. by two coördinate verbs, **409**. 2, **410**. I. 5[4], **412**. 4; abl. absolute, **412**, **413**; Eng. perf. act. part., how rendered, **412**. 6, 7; used as nouns, **291**[3].
Partitive genitive, **340**, **438**[17], **439**[5], **440**[12].
Passive to be distinguished from progressive form in Eng., **69**. II. 8[5], **123**. II. 3[1].
Pater et Filiolus (Coll.), **95**, **222**, **302**.
Penult, **5**. 5.
Perfect, sometimes distinguished from pres. by long penult, **119**[5], **191**. I. 2[1], **232**. I. 1[1]; *definite* and *indefinite*, **347**; perf. subj. in prohibitions, **391**. (2); perf. part. trans. by pres., **442**[12], p. 217[3]; w. ubi, ut, etc., **444**[9]; perf. subj. really fut. perf., **391**. (2)[2].
Periphrastic conjugations: act., **422**; pass., **423**; paradigms, **424**.
Personal pronouns, **264**, **265**; when nom. of, is expressed, **265**. 2.
Place, expressions of, **334** ff.
Possessive adjective pronouns, **266**; when omitted, **100**.
Possessor, dat. of, **32**, cf. **441**[4].
Praeceptor et Discipulus (Coll.), **126**, **133**, **195**, **204**, **234**, **261**.
Praenōmen, **195**, **204**.
Predicate nom., **46**, **47**, **92**. I. 6[3], **93**. II. 6[3]; acc., **92**. I. 5[2], **93**. II. 7[4], **171**. II. 3[1].
Prepositions, **333**; order w. adj. and noun, **64**. I. 7[1].
Present, translation of, **43**[1]; denoting continuance, **115**. I. 5[2]; Eng. pres. for Lat. fut., **116**. I. 1[3], **385**. 3[1]; for Lat. fut. perf., **413**. II. 10[2]; sometimes distinguished from perf. by short penult, **119**[5], **191**. I. 2[1]; w. dum, **263**[13], **442**[10]; *historical*, **444**[8]; pres. subj. trans. as fut., **369**. 1. 4.
Primary tenses, **347**.
Principal parts of verbs, **86**[1].
Principal tenses, **347**.
Progressive form in Eng. to be distinguished from passive, **69**. II. 8[5], **123**. II. 3[1].
Prohibitions, **391**. (1), (2).
Pronunciation, Roman method, **4**; English method, **8**.

Digitized by Google

Prōserpina (for trans.), **199**, **215**, **263**.
Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō (for trans.), **188**.
PURPOSE, expressed by **ut** w. subj., **352**, **353**; **quī** w. subj., **364**; fut. part., **410**. I. 9[5]; **ad** w. gerundive, **432**. 3; supine, **433**, **434**; **causā** w. gen. of gerund or gerundive, **435**. I. 3, p. 221[5].

Q

QUANTITY of vowels and diphthongs, **6**. 1, 2; of syllables, **6**. 3, 4, 5.
Quīn, w. subj., **349**, **350**.
Quis, indef. pron. w. **sī**, etc., **362**. I. 6[1], 438[15].

R

r, as sign of passive, **87**[1]; for s, 73[1,3,4], **142**.
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, **264**, **265**.
RELATIVE PRONOUN, **279**; agreement, **280** ff.; in purpose clause, **364**.
REST, verbs of, foll. by abl., **333**–**335**.
RESULT, w. **ut**, **368** ff.; to be distinguished from *purpose*, **352**, **368**, 447[12].
ROMAN METHOD of pronun., **4**.
-rs, nouns in, **167**. 1.

S

-s, monosyllables in, **167**. 2.
SECONDARY TENSES, **347**.
SECOND CONJUGATION, **112** ff., **351** ff. Second periphrastic conj., **423**.
SECOND DECLENSION, in *-us* and *-um*, **36** ff., **52** ff.; in *-er*, **59** ff.
SEMI-DEPONENTS, p. 177[2].
SEPARATION, how expressed, **128** ff.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES, **347** ff.
SERVICE, dat. of, **291**[1], **296**. II. 7[3], **344**.
SIBILANT, **3**.
SIBILANT STEMS, **140** ff.
Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus (Coll.), **290**.
SOUNDS of letters, **4**.
SPECIFICATION, abl. of, **259**, **260**, p. 218[6].
STEM, 12[1]; in 2d decl., **36**, **42**; in verbs, **86**[1]; in 3d decl., **103**, **104**, **107**, **151**. 1, **152**, **166**, **167**; in 4th decl., **243**; in 5th decl., **252**. Perf. stem w. long vowel, 119[5].
SUBJECT nom., **24**; acc. **401**: omitted, **50**. I. 9[1].
SUBJUNCTIVE of *purpose*, **352**, **353**, **364**; of *result*, **368**; w. cum, **372**; in *indir. questions*, **379** ff.; in *wishes* and *conditions*, **383** ff.; *hortatory*, **390**; perf. really fut. perf., **391**. (2)[2]; fut. tense of, **425**. (1). Meanings not given in paradigms, p. 26[1].
SUPERLATIVE degree, formation of, **206**. (2), (3); strengthened by **quam**, 437[6].
SUPINE, **433**, **434**.
S. V. B. E. V., 437[1].
SYLLABLES, **5**; quantity of, **6**. 3, 4, 5.
SYNONYMOUS WORDS: **puerī**, **līberī**, **60**; **magister**, **dominus**, **66**; **minister**, **servus**, **66**; **homo**, **vir**, **138**; **amnis**, **flūmen**, **fluvius**, **172**; **hostis**, **inimīcus**, **172**; **celer**, **vēlōx**, **179**; **superō**, **vincō**, **186**; **habitō**, **vīvō**, **194**; **animus**, **mēns**, **273**; **cantus**, **carmen**, **278**; **sīdus**, **stella**, **301**; **amō**, **dīligō**, **volō**, **dēsīderō**, **319**; **interrogō**, **rogō**, **quaerō**, **382**; **at**, **sed**, **autem**, **393**; **jūdicō**, **cēnseō**, **existimō**, **arbitror**, **putō**, **opīnor**, **429**.

Digitized by Google

T

TERMINATIONS, **15**.
THERE, expletive, **35**. I. 2[2]; **56**. I. 7[2]; **220**. I. 1[2].
THIRD CONJUGATION, **180** ff., **357** ff.; verbs in *-iō*, **235** ff., **357** ff.
THIRD DECLENSION, mute stems, **105** ff.; liquid stems, **134** ff.; sibilant stems, **140** ff.; i-stems, **149** ff.; mixed stems, **163** ff.
TIME when or within which, **135**, **136**; how long, **312**, **313**; expressed by cum clause, **372**, **373**, by part., **409**. 1, 2, 8, **412**; relative time in tenses of inf., **402**, **403**, **405**. II. 8[6], of part., **409**.
Tityrus et Meliboeus (Coll.), **332**.
TOWNS, names of, **334**, **335**.
TRANSLATION, passages for: Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō, **188**; Prōserpina, **199**, **215**, **263**; Battle of Marathon, **291**; Maxims, **320**; Battle of Cannæ, **339**, **378**; Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer, **394**; Nāsīca et Ennius, **407**; Death of the Pet Sparrow, **421**; Letters, **437–440**; Fables, **441–447**; Cæsar's Gallic War, Bk. I, ch. 1–5, **448**.

U

-ubus in dat. and abl. of 4th decl., **247**.
ULTIMA, **5**. 5.
Ut, of purpose, **352** ff.; of result, **367** ff.; w. ind., **437**[4], **439**[2]; omitted, **438**[9], **446**[11].

V

v, sometimes dropped, **231**. I. 9[1,2], **327**. 2, **421**[5].
VOCABULARIES following exercises, **75**. 2.
VOCATIVE, **10**. 2; in 2d decl., **39**; of filius, etc., **79**.
VOWELS, how marked, **2**; sounds of, **4**; quantity of, **6**. 1, 2.

W

WISHES, **383** ff.
WITH not always to be translated by cum, **185**. II. 5[2].

X

-x, monosyllables in, **167**. 2.

Y

YOU, sing. or plur., **73**[2].

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TEXT-BOOKS
FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School, Boston, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston

	List price	*Mailing price*
Collar and Daniell's First Year Latin. xiv + 311 pages. Illustrated	$1.00	$1.10
Teacher's Manual to accompany First Year Latin. 12mo. Paper. 43 pages	15.	
Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book. 286 pages. Illustrated	1.00	1.10
Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Latin Book. 283 pages	1.00	1.10
Latine Reddenda. The English-Latin exercises from "The Beginner's Latin Book." With Glossarium Grammaticum. 41 pages	.20	
With Glossarium Grammaticum and English-Latin Vocabulary. 58 pages	.30	.33
Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Greek Composition. Based mainly upon Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I. 201 pages. Illustrated	.90	.95

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR

Collar's Via Latina. A new Latin Reader. 203 pages	.75	.85
Collar's New Gradatim. Revised. 189 pages	.50	.55
Collar's Practical Latin Composition. 268 pages	1.00	1.10
Collar's Gate to Caesar. 141 pages	.40	.45
Caesar, Gallic War. Book II. Edited, with Notes and a Vocabulary. 96 pages. *Latin and Greek School Classics*	.35	.40
Vergil's Aeneid. Book VII. Issued both with and without translation. Illustrated. *Latin and Greek School Classics*	.45	.50
Collar's Shorter Eysenbach. Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar. Revised and largely written, with Notes to the Exercises and Vocabularies. Revised by CLARA S. CURTIS. 242 pages	1.00	1.10
Collar's German Lessons. Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar. Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes, Selections for Reading, and Vocabularies. 360 pages	1.20	1.30
Collar's English into German. The English Exercises from Collar's Eysenbach's German Lessons. 51 pages	.25	.30

GINN & COMPANY PUBLISHERS

Digitized by Google

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S
NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

By J. B. Greenough, late Professor of Latin in Harvard University; George Lyman Kittredge, Professor of English in Harvard University; A. A. Howard, Professor of Latin in Harvard University; and Benjamin L. D'Ooge, Professor of Latin in the Michigan State Normal College.

12mo. Half leather. 490 pages. List price, $1.20; mailing price, $1.30.

THIS well-known Latin grammar, although in a new form, still remains the Allen and Greenough Grammar in scope and general plan, and retains the characteristic qualities that have given the book a world-wide distinction. But the book has been revised in every detail to bring it into harmony with the latest results of scholarship the world over, and has been rearranged where necessary to make it as convenient for use as is possible.

The authors have been assisted on details by the most eminent specialists, among whom are Professor Sheldon of Harvard University and Professor Morris of Yale University. The book therefore is thoroughly trustworthy. All the most recent grammatical theories have been considered, and if they have not been adopted it is because the old ones are better. The paragraphs have been renumbered throughout, and the typography of the book has been completely changed. A new scheme of type display unquestionably marks the highest typographical achievement in books of this character.

GINN & COMPANY Publishers

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

3 2044 097 05

JOHNSON-BUTLER COMPANY
BOOKS STATIONERY OFFICE SUPPLIES
HOLYOKE MASSACHUSETTS

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google